New

Bit by Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

# Hello!

2024

الصف الثاني الإعدادى  الفصل الدراسى الأول



QR CODES
Listen to Vocabulary & Texts

2nd Prep.
First Term


دار غزة للطبع والنشر والتوزيع

التوزيع : ١٠ شارع كامل صدقى - الفجالة - القاهرة. ت : 25919165

للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والاقتراحات -الإدارة : تليفون : 25880102

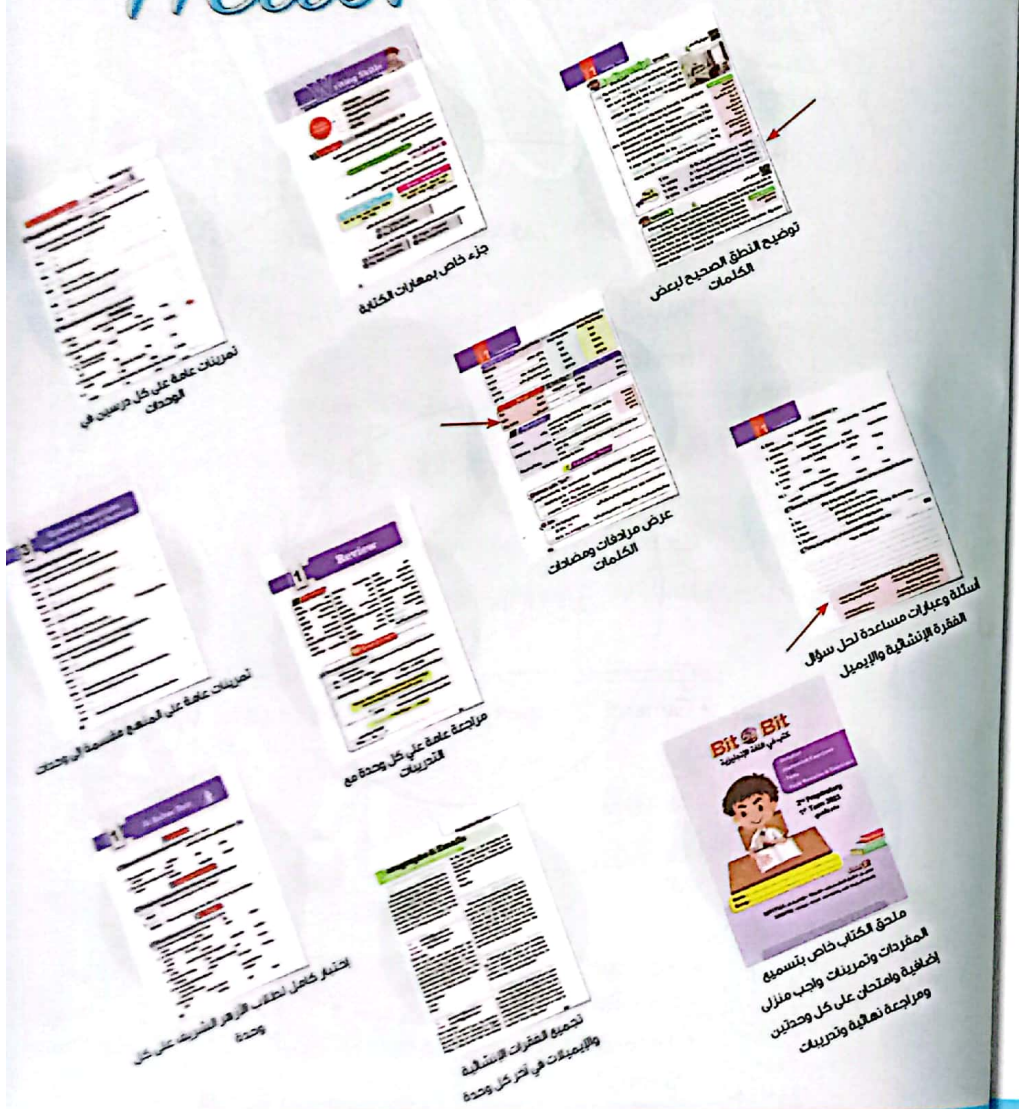


CamScanner

Bit by Bit

New Hello!

2rd Prep 2024 First Term




# Contents


**1 Part**

- Writing skills: How to answer.....
  - Dialogues
  - Reading comprehensions
  - Complete the sentences
  - Paragraphs
  - Emails

**2 Part**

- Exam specifications
- Check your English!

**Module 1: Meeting people**

- **Unit (1)** : Coming home
- **Unit (2)** : How are you feeling?
- **Unit (3)** : Great jobs

**Review (A)**

**Module 2: Different places**

- **Unit (4)** : Into the past
- **Unit (5)** : Helping you, helping me
- **Unit (6)** : Different environments

**Review (B)**

**3 Part**

- General Exercises
- End of Term Practice with answers
- SB / WB Answers
- Final Exams
- Al Azhar Exams
- Listening Material
- Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

**Booklet (free with the book)**

- Dictation
- Homework exercises on lessons
- Tests on units
- General Revision & Exercises


CamScanner

# Part 1 Writing Skills



معالجة للأسئلة الصعبة التى قد تواجه الطالب فى امتحان الصف الثانى الإعدادى

## How to answer?

- Dialogues
- Reading comprehensions
- Complete the sentences
- Paragraphs
- Emails

### 1 Dialogue كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال المحادثة

- يعطى الطالب محادثة مكونة من عشرة تبادلات حوارية بها خمسة فراغات (ثلاثة ردود وسؤالين)
- مطلوب من الطالب أن يكمل الفراغات بأسئلة أو جمل كاملة دون اعطائه جزء من الإجابات.
- المحادثة يسبقها موقف توضيحى.

#### كيفية تكوين السؤال لاستخدامه فى حل سؤال المحادثة

. ينقسم السؤال إلى نوعين:

**1 Yes / No question** السؤال بـ (هل.....؟)

- إذا اشتملت الإجابة على Yes, / No, تبدأ السؤال بفعل مساعد أو ناقص ويكون معناه «هل....؟»
- الأفعال المساعدة والناقصة تعد جزءاً أساسياً فى تكوين أى سؤال.

| Helping verbs الأفعال المساعدة | Modals الأفعال الناقصة |
|---|---|
| am - is - are - was - were - have - has - had | can - could - shall - should - will - would - may - might - must |

- إذا كان بالجملة أى من الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة السابقة نستخدمه فى السؤال كالآتي:

A Can he play tennis?
B Yes, he can play tennis.

- إذا لم يكن بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص نستخدم do / does / did حسب زمن الجملة.

A Does Rana come early?
B Yes, Rana comes early.

A Did you play tennis?
B Yes, I played tennis.





**2 Wh-question** السؤال بكلمة استفهام

- نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام فى السؤال حسب الإجابة الموجودة (مكان - زمان - شخص - شىء - طريقة ....)

كلمة استفهام ← فعل مساعد / ناقص ← فاعل ← فعل .....؟

A Where is she eating?
B She is eating in the dining room.

## Question words?

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| What | ما / ماذا (للأشياء) | What time | ما الوقت |
| Where | أين (للمكان) | What colour | ما لون |
| Who | من (للأشخاص) | What subject | ما المادة الدراسية |
| Whose | لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية) | How many | كم العدد |
| When | متى (للزمن) | How long | ما المدة / طول |
| Why | لماذا (للسبب) | How heavy | ما وزن |
| Which | أيهما (للتخيير) | How much | ما ثمن / كم كمية |
| How | كيف (للطريقة / للحال) | How often | كم عدد المرات |
| What class | ما الصف الدراسى | How far | كم يبعد (للمسافة) |
| What age | ما عمر | | |

**Notes**

1 إذا كان الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة (have - has - had) يعامل مثل أى فعل آخر باستخدام do - does - did .

A What do they have?
B They have a nice car.

A When does he have lunch?
B He has lunch at 2 o'clock.

2 إذا كان الفعل الأساسى فى الجملة (do - does - did) يعامل مثل أى فعل آخر.

A When does Huda do her homework?
B Huda does her homework at night.

A When did Sama do exercise?
B Sama did exercise in the morning.

3 السؤال عن الفاعل: عندما نسأل عن الفاعل نحذفه ونضع مكانه كلمة الإستفهام ونكمل الجملة كما هي:

A Who wins the game?
B Ahmed wins the game.

A What crashed into the wall?
B A car crashed into the wall.

- عندما نسأل بـ Who عن مفعول عاقل نكوّن السؤال بالطريقة المعتادة باستخدام فعل ناقص أو مساعد بعدها:

A Who did you meet?
B I met Ahmed.



CamScanner

**4** السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام (Whose)

- يأتي بعدها غالبًا الاسم المراد السؤال عن ملكيته

A Whose laptop is this?
B This is my laptop.

**5** السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام (How many/ How much)

- يأتي بعدها مباشرة الاسم الذى يعد ثم الفعل المساعد/الناقص ثم الفاعل.

A How many books did you buy?
B I bought 5 books.

A How much is it?
B It's 300 pounds.

**6** السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام [How [tall - long - wide - high - old]

A How tall is the building?
B It's 30 metres tall.

A How wide is the room?
B It's 5 metres wide.

A How high is the mountain?
B It's 20 metres high.

A How old is Mai?
B She's 10 years old.

## Common questions

أسئلة شائعة فى المحادثات

**1- At a restaurant** فى مطعم

- Can I have your order, sir?
- What's your favourite dish?
- What about the dessert?

**2- At a hospital or a doctor's** فى مستشفى أو عيادة

- What's the matter with you?
- What do you complain of?
- How long have you been feeling ill?

**3- At a clothes shop** فى محل بيع الملابس

- Can I help you?
- What colour / size do you want?
- How much does it cost?

**4- At a hotel** فى فندق

- Can I book a room, please?
- How long will you stay here?
- How much is the room a night?
- Have you enjoyed your stay here?

**5- At a railway station** فى محطة سكة حديد

- Can I book a ticket to ....., please?
- Which platform does the train leave from?
- How long does it take to go there?
- When does it arrive?

**6- Meeting a tourist** مقابلة سائح

- Where do you come from/ Where are you from?
- Is it your first visit to Egypt?
- What places have you been to?
- How can I get to the Pyramids, please?





## General questions

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. What do you do? / What is your job? | للسؤال عن الوظيفه |
| 2. Where were you born? | للسؤال عن مكان الميلاد |
| 3. When were you born? | للسؤال عن تاريخ الميلاد |
| 4. What is your nationality? | للسؤال عن جنسية شخص |
| 5. Where do you live? | للسؤال عن عنوان شخص |
| 6. What is the weather like? / How is the weather? | للسؤال عن الطقس |
| 7. What does ..... look like? | للسؤال عن مظهر انسان/وصف شيء. |
| 8. What is/are ..... (used) for? | للسؤال عن الغرض من استخدام شئ/ أشياء |
| 9. Single or double? | للسؤال عن نوع غرفة في فندق |
| 10. What would you like to have? | للسؤال عن ماذا يريد شخص أن يأكل /يشرب |
| 11. Where have you been? | للسؤال عن أين كان شخص |
| 12. How often do you .....? | للسؤال عن عدد مرات فعل شئ |
| 13. What happened? | للسؤال عما حدث |
| 14. What is your opinion of ...? | للسؤال عن رأي شخص في شيء/شخص |
| 15. What is wrong with .....? | للسؤال عن عطل في جهاز |

## Model question

نموذج السؤال كما يأتى فى الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**Yousra is at a clothes shop.**

**Assistant :** Can I help you?

**Yousra :** ❶ .....

**Assistant :** We have great long dresses. ❷ .....?

**Yousra :** I want green, blue and red ones and I'll choose.

**Assistant :** Here you are. ❸ .....?

**Yousra :** I think the red one is nice. How much is it?

**Assistant :** ❹ .....

**Yousra :** OK. Where can I try it on?

**Assistant :** The changing room is over there.

**Yousra :** ❺ .....



CamScanner

## Answers

**الفراغ رقم (1)**

- قد يكون الفراغ إجابة لسؤال قبلها كالآتي:

Assistant: Can I help you?

- السؤال هنا يبدأ بـ (Can) وهو فعل مساعد ويعطي معنى «هل» والإجابة إما أن تكون بـ Yes, ..... أو No, .....

- وفي المحادثة السابقة يتضح أن البائع يعرض على يسرا المساعدة فتكون الإجابة:

Yousra: Yes, I want a long dress, please.

**الفراغ رقم (2)**

قد ينتهي الفراغ بعلامة استفهام يليه إجابة ونراعي عند تكوين السؤال أن يكون في نفس زمن الإجابة غالبًا مع اختيار كلمة الاستفهام المناسبة:

Yousra: I want green, blue and red ones and I'll choose.

- الإجابة هنا تحتوي على عدة ألوان ستختار منها لذلك سيبدأ السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام [What colour.....?].

Assistant: What colour do you want?

- وسبق قدمنا شرحاً مفصلاً لكلمات الاستفهام وكيفية تكوين السؤال.

**الفراغ رقم (3)**

نموذج آخر لإجابة تحتاج إلى سؤال:

Yousra: I think the red one is nice.

- الإجابة هنا تعبر عن اختيار فلابد أن تسأل بكلمة الاستفهام [Which.....?]

Assistant: Which one do you like?

**الفراغ رقم (4)**

- مطلوب إجابة عن السؤال تعبر عن الثمن.

Yousra: How much is it?

- فالإجابة تكون:

Assistant: It's 300 pounds.

**الفراغ رقم (5)**

- الإجابة هنا لابد أن تتضمن الشكر على وصف البائع لمكان حجرة تغيير الملابس

فتكون الإجابة:

Yousra: Thank you very much.





## 2 Reading Comprehension — كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال قطعة الفهم

- يعطى الطالب نص مكوّن من حوالي ١٢٠ كلمة.
- مطلوب من الطالب أن يجيب عن ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد وثلاثة أسئلة مقالية.

### خطوات تساعدك على إجابة قطعة الفهم:

1. اقرأ الأسئلة أولا قبل قراءة القطعة نفسها لأن هذا يعطيك فكرة عامة عن موضوع القطعة.
2. انتبه إلى ما تطلبه هذه الأسئلة من معلومات.
3. اقرأ القطعة كلها بتأن مرة ثانية قبل أن تقوم بالإجابة عن الأسئلة.
4. عندما تجد جملة فيها إجابة سؤال ضع خطاً تحتها وأيضا إذا وجدت أرقام انتبه لها لأن واضع الامتحان عادة ما يسأل عنها.
5. اذا صادفت كلمة لا تعرف معناها حاول تخمين المعنى.

### كيف تخمن معنى كلمة لا تعرف معناها

1. قد تتمكن من تخمين معنى كلمة بسبب وجود عبارة أو كلمة دالة على التناقض مثل: ولكن yet – لكن but – في المقابل in contrast – على العكس من../على خلاف Unlike

**مثال:**

• Some people think that sports are <u>unimportant</u>, but I think they are <u>vital</u>.

- لو أنك لا تعرف معنى كلمة vital، يمكنك تخمين معناها حيث أن الجملة تقول «يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرياضة شئ غير مهم، لكنني أعتقد أنها .....». من خلال السياق نفهم أن vital عكس unimportant وبهذا يكون تخمين معنى الكلمة سهل وهو (ضروري) أو (مهم)

---

2. قد تخمن معنى الكلمة أيضا من خلال البدايات أو النهايات المتعلقة بأصل الكلمة

**مثال:** نفهم من خلال السابقة im- في كلمة impossible التي تعني "غير" أو "ليس" أنها عكس possible فيكون معناها (غير ممكن/مستحيل)

**مثال آخر:** نفهم من خلال اللاحقة less- في كلمة homeless التي تعني (بدون/بلا) أن معنى الكلمة (بلا مأوى/مشرد)

---

3. يمكنك تخمين المعنى من سياق الجملة من خلال الكلمات التي تسبق الكلمة أو التي تليها.

**مثال:**

• It rained hard through the night so the ground was <u>wet</u>.

- ماذا تعني كلمة wet؟ إذا كنت لا تعرف معناها بمقدورك تخمينه من خلال الجملة التي سبقتها "كانت السماء تمطر بغزارة خلال الليل لذلك الأرض كانت.... لقد كانت تمطر بشده مما يعني أن الأرض لابد أنها كانت (مبتلة).

---

4. هناك طريقة بسيطة جدًا: ترجم الجملة كلها واترك فراغ مكان الكلمة التي لا تعرفها ثم فكر أي كلمة باللغة العربية تتماشى مع معنى الجملة فمثلا أنت قرأت جملة تقول:

• The work is boring. There is nothing I find interesting about it.

- حاول تخمين معنى "boring" هنا.



CamScanner

## ما هى الأنماط الأكثر شيوعا فى أسئلة قطعة الفهم:

**أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)**

1. قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) فى النص من خلال صيغ مثل:
   - The main idea of the passage is.....
   - The passage is mainly about.....

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

**كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية فى النص**

- هى النقطة الأساسية التى يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالا.
- الجمل الأخرى فى النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون فى أول جملة أو آخر جملة فى النص.

**لاحظ المثال الآتى:**

- ما باللون الأحمر هى الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هى التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat has blue lines and red sleeves. My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man. I will wear my coat to school.

2. قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات فى جملة معينة فى القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول: الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....
   - The underlined word '.....' refers to.....

**ثانياً: الأسئلة المقالية (open-ended questions)**

1. قد يكون هناك في القطعة رأى / نصيحة ويسألك هل أنت موافق على هذا الرأى/هذه النصيحة أم لا مع ذكر السبب:
   - Do you agree with this opinion / advice in the passage? Why / Why not?
2. قد يرتبط موضوع القطعة بك فيسألك مثلاً: هل تحب أو هل تكره ..... ؟ لم؟ ولم لا؟
   - Do you like /dislike....? Why / Why not?
3. قد يطلب منك أن تعطى عنواناً مناسباً للقطعة أو تذكر الفكرة الرئيسية لها:
   - Give a suitable title to the passage.

## Model question نموذج السؤال كما يأتى فى الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

**Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Do you have a computer at home? Do you use the internet? I'm sure the answer is "Yes". I can't believe there is a house without a computer in our modern time. Computer users increase every day. But why?

The computer is a world where you can fly anywhere and everywhere. Through the computer, you can play games, **store** information, write what you want in any language and print it out. You can also use the internet through the computer. The





internet is a great store of knowledge in all fields. You can learn about medicine, engineering, health and so many other sciences. It can also help us communicate with people in any part of the world.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the passage mainly about?
   ---
2. How do computers help us?
   ---
3. What can we learn from the internet?
   ---

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "**store**" means .....
   a. learn  b. keep  c. read  d. study
5. The internet is .....
   a. useful  b. useless  c. boring  d. interested
6. We can use computers to ..... paper.
   a. drive  b. ride  c. answer  d. print

**Answer**

1. **It's about the computer and the internet.**
2. **We can play games, store information, write what we want in any language and print it out.**
3. **We can learn about medicine, engineering, health and so many other sciences.**
4. **b. keep**  5. **a. useful**  6. **d. print**

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets

**كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال أكمل**

- السؤال عبارة عن أربع جمل في القواعد اللغوية وبها خطأ فيما بين الأقواس:
- مطلوب من الطالب كتابة الصيغة اللغوية الصحيحة في الفراغات.

| Mistake الخطأ | Correction التصحيح |
|---|---|
| • I'd like ..... (any) orange juice, please. | some |
| • Listen! She ..... (sings) a beautiful song. | is singing |
| • Cairo is ..... (noisiest) than Al Fayoum. | noisier |
| • How .... (much) cups of coffee do you drink a day? | many |
| • Your house is small. ..... (Our) is big. | Ours |
| • ..... (Didn't) come late. | Don't |



CamScanner

## 4 Paragraph Writing — كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال الفقرة الإنشائية

- مطلوب من الطالب كتابة فقرة إنشائية (paragraph) مكونة من حوالى ٨٥ إلى ٩٥ كلمة عن موضوع من موضوعات الكتاب المدرسى.
- لابد أن يقرأ الطالب العنوان جيدًا.
- يكتب الطالب جمل واضحة ليست بالطويلة؛ حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تدرس الأتى أولًا

### أولًا: ترتيب الجملة

| فاعل | فعل | تكملة الجملة |
|---|---|---|
| He | goes | to Alexandria every summer holiday. |
| They | visited | the Cairo Tower yesterday. |

### ثانيًا: صيغ الجمل المختلفة

| فاعل | (فعل مساعد / فعل ناقص) | فعل أساسى | تكملة الجملة |
|---|---|---|---|
| She | will | go | to Luxor with us. |
| He | does | not like | playing in the street. |
| We | didn't | visit | the museum last year. |
| He | is | studying | English now. |
| They | have | ridden | a camel already. |

### تعليمات مهمة للطالب بخصوص الشكل العام للفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph)

1. نترك مسافة صغيرة (تعادل كلمة صغيرة) فى أول سطر فقط.
2. نبدأ أول كل جملة بحرف كبير (Capital letter) واضح، وضع نقطة (full stop) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة.
   اكتب بخط واضح - الجملة بجوار الجملة - واترك مسافة بين الكلمة والأخرى.
3. استخدم زمن المضارع البسيط (v + s, es, ies) عند الحديث عن الحقائق والعادات، وزمن الماضى البسيط (v + d / ed / ied) عند الحديث عن موضوع فى الماضى، وزمن المستقبل (will + inf.) عند الحديث عن موضوع فى المستقبل.
4. يمكن أن يكون عنوان الموضوع جملة تستخدم كأحد الجمل فى الكتابة.





## Model question — نموذج السؤال كما يأتى فى الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

**Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

**"Your day"**

I always get up at half past six. I usually have a shower before I get dressed. I have breakfast with my family. My house is not far from my school, so I go to school on foot. I always arrive there before the bell rings. At break, I have lunch. I play with my friends in the playground. I come back home at about two o'clock. I usually feel tired then. My parents always come from work at about three o'clock. I like to help my mum make lunch. After lunch, I do my homework. I usually go to bed at nine o'clock.

## 5 Email Writing — كيفية الإجابة عن سؤال رسالة البريد الالكترونى

- مطلوب من الطالب كتابة رسالة بريد الكترونى (Email) مكون من حوالى ٨٥ إلى ٩٥ كلمة، عن موضوع من موضوعات الكتاب المدرسى.
- على الطالب كتابة البريد الالكترونى للمرسل إليه والراسل وموضوع الرسالة المعطاة له فى السؤال.

### تعليمات مهمة للطالب بخصوص الشكل العام لرسالة البريد الالكترونى (Email)

1. نكتب أعلى الصفحة جهة اليسار:
   - To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه
   - From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للراسل
   - Subject : الموضوع
2. نكتب أسفل منهم (اسم المرسل إليه + Dear) يليها فاصلة (,).
3. أسفل كلمة (Dear) نكتب مقدمة مناسبة.
4. نكتب محتوى رسالة البريد الالكترونى (يمكنك أحيانًا الاستعانة بجمل من السؤال نفسه مع مراعاة تحويل الضمائر).
5. نكتب خاتمة مناسبة.
6. ننهي رسالة البريد الإلكتروني بـ (Yours,) وأسفل منها اسم الراسل.



CamScanner

# Useful phrases to use in an email

عبارات مفيدة تستخدم فى كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتبدأ رسالة البريد الالكترونى:

| | |
|---|---|
| Dear ..... | عزيزى ..... |
| Hi ..... | أهلاً ..... |
| Hello ..... | أهلاً .../مرحبًا ... |

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتسأل عن صحة شخص:

| | |
|---|---|
| How are you? | كيف حالك؟ |
| How are things? / How's life? / How's it going? | كيف تسير الأمور؟ |

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتقديم أخبار:

| | |
|---|---|
| I'd like to tell you about ..... | أود أن أخبرك عن ..... |
| I'm writing to invite you to ..... | أكتب لك لكي أدعوك إلى ..... |

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى للحديث عن المشاعر:

| | |
|---|---|
| I / We miss you. | إنى أفتقدك / نحن نفتقدك. |
| I / We hope that you are ..... | أتمنى / نتمنى أن تكون ..... |
| I'm so excited / sad because ..... | إنى متشوق / حزين لأن ..... |

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى للحديث عن المستقبل:

| | |
|---|---|
| I'm looking forward to ..... | أتطلع إلى ..... |
| I can't wait to ..... | لا أستطيع الإنتظار أن ..... |

- يمكنك أن تستخدم التالى لتنهى حديثك:

| | |
|---|---|
| Write soon. | اكتب لى سريعاً. |
| See you soon. | أراك قريباً. |
| With my best wishes. | مع أطيب تمنياتى. |
| Keep in touch. | كن على اتصال. |





# Modelquestion

نموذج السؤال كما يأتى فى الامتحان مع الإجابة النموذجية

**Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:**

To your English penfriend, Tim, telling him about your favourite hobby and where you practise it.

**- Your name is Ziad and your email address is ziadsamir@yahoo.com.**

**- Your penfriend's email address is tim505@yahoo.com.**

**New Message**

To : tim505@yahoo.com Cc Bcc

From : ziadsamir@yahoo.com

Subject : My favourite hobby

**Dear Tim,** — المقدمة

I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you?

I want to tell you that I like playing football. It's my favourite hobby. I practise it every day in the club near my house. I joined that club when I was three. My father knew I was a good player, so he let me join it. I go there with my friends twice a week. I usually score goals for my team. I hope I will join a European club in the future. I hope I will be famous like Mohamed Salah. My coach always encourages me to train hard. Please, tell me about your favourite hobby. Waiting for your email. — الموضوع

Keep in touch.

Yours,

Ziad — الخاتمة

Send



CamScanner

## Common writing mistakes

أخطاء شائعة في الكتابة باللغة الانجليزية

وهذه أمثلة من الأخطاء التى قد يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب

### 1) Definite and indefinite articles (a, an and the)

1. نستخدم (a - an) عندما نتحدث عن شيء للمرة الأولى في الجملة.

- Ali has got the dog and the cat. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- Ali has got a dog and a cat. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

2. نستخدم (the) عند التحدث عن شيء سبق ذكره.

- I stayed in a hotel near the station. A hotel was very nice. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I stayed in a hotel near the station. The hotel was very nice. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

3. نستخدم (the) عند الإشارة الى شيء معروف للجميع.

- Do you know an answer to a question? ✗ الجملة خطأ
- Do you know an answer to the teacher's question? ✓ الجملة صحيحة

4. لا نستخدم أدوات عندما نتحدث بشكل عام باستخدام صيغة الجمع مع الاسم الذى يُعد، أو صيغة المفرد مع الاسم الذى لا يُعد.

- The oranges give us vitamins. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- Oranges give us vitamins. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

5. يجب أن توضع (the) أمام أسماء الدول المركبة:

- I live in United States. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I live in the United States. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

### 2) Punctuation

أمثلة من أخطاء الترقيم التى قد يقع فيها كثير من الطلاب:

1. نستخدم الحرف الكبير (Capital letter) فى الكتابة فى الحالات الآتية:

- الضمير (I) فى أي مكان فى الجملة.

- i go to school early. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I go to school early. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

- الحرف الأول من الكلمة الأولى في الجملة الخبرية أو السؤال.

- my brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but i came back at 2 p.m. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- My brother came back from school at 3 p.m, but I came back at 2 p.m. ✓ الجملة صحيحة





- الحروف الأولى من أسماء الأشخاص والدول والمدن والمعالم والأماكن الشهيرة والجنسيات واللغات والاختصارات والألقاب والعناوين وأيام الأسبوع والشهور والمؤسسات والمهرجانات.

- maged did his Homework and watched tv. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- Maged did his homework and watched TV. ✓ الجملة صحيحة
- i can speak english and french well. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I can speak English and French well. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

2. توضع النقطة Full stop (.) فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية و الأمرية.

3. توضع الفاصلة Comma (,) لتعبر عن توقفات موجزة فى الجمل وبين كلمات فى قائمة وبعد No/ Yes ولا نترك مسافة قبل الفواصل عمومًا.

- I want apples bananas carrots and potatoes. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I want apples, bananas, carrots and potatoes. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

4. توضع الفاصلة العليا Apostrophe (') قبل (s) الملكية للاسم المفرد، بينما توضع (') للملكية للجمع المنتهى بـ (s):

- We met at Ali party. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- We met at Ali's party. ✓ الجملة صحيحة
- These are the boys toys. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- These are the boys' toys. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

- توضع الفاصلة العليا في الاختصارات مثل: let's - don't - it's ... etc

- I dont have a car. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I don't have a car. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

5. توضع علامة الاستفهام Question mark (?) فى نهاية السؤال.

- Do you have a car ✗ الجملة خطأ
- Do you have a car? ✓ الجملة صحيحة

6. توضع علامة التعجب Exclamation mark (!) فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية لإظهار الدهشة والتعجب.

- what a pity ✗ الجملة خطأ
- What a pity! ✓ الجملة صحيحة

### 3) Common grammatical mistakes

1. للتعبير عن شيء يحدث باستمرار في حياتنا نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط وليس المضارع المستمر كما نفعل في اللغة العربية:

- I'm often going to the club on Fridays. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I often go to the club on Fridays. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

2. إحرص على وضع ظروف التكرار (Adverbs of frequency) في مكانها (قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد فعل be):

always - usually - often - sometimes - never ...

- I go usually to the cinema on holidays. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I usually go to the cinema on holidays. ✓ الجملة صحيحة
- He always is early for school. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- He is always early for school. ✓ الجملة صحيحة



CamScanner

③ يأتي دائمًا بعد حروف الجر فعل مضافًا له (ing):

- I thanked Ali for help me. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I thanked Ali for helping me. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

④ بعض الأفعال لا يأتي بعدها حرف جر مثل (enjoy) حيث أن معناه يستمتع بـ:

- I enjoyed by the film. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I enjoyed the film. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑤ تذكر أن بعض الكلمات مثل (information / news / equipment) يأتي بعدهم فعل لفاعل مفرد:

- The information you gave me were important. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- The information you gave me was important. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑥ الأفعال الناقصة لا يأتي بعدها (to):

- We must to eat healthy food. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- We must eat healthy food. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑦ لا نستخدم (that) بعد (should / must):

- You should that study your lessons. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- You should study your lessons. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑧ عليك أن تفرق بين استخدام (It's / Its):

- It's = (It is + n / adj / V-ing)
- It's (It is) my book.
- It's (It is) good to be fit.
- It's (It is) raining now.
- Its ضمير ملكية لغير العاقل
- I have a nice cat. It's tail is long. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- I have a nice cat. Its tail is long. ✓ الجملة صحيحة

⑨ عليك أن تميز في الاستخدام بين ضمائر الفاعل وضمائر المفعول:

- Samir and me revised for the exam. ✗ الجملة خطأ
- Samir and I revised for the exam. ✓ الجملة صحيحة



# Part 2

National Centre For Examinations & Educational Evaluation (NCEEE) Test Development Dep.

Specifications for Second Year Preparatory (1st term) English Examination (2023-2024)

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الإعدادي الفصل الدراسي الأول للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٢٤

Ministry of Education ELT Counsellor's Office

(Time: 2 Hours) (24 Marks)

## A Listening 4 Marks

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

Students listen to a text from (30-35) words. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark each)**

## B Language Functions 2.5Marks

### 2 Complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (**3** responses & **2** stimuli) is provided. The students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any part of the answers. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full. **(Half a mark each)**

## C Reading Comprehension 4.5Marks

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED** and **TWENTY-FIVE (125)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. The students are required to answer **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(Half a mark each)** and **THREE (3)** open-ended questions **(One mark each)**

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- **Giving the main idea** **(1 question)**
- **Extracting information** **(2 questions)**
- **Understanding reference** **(1 question)**
- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** **(1 question)**
- **Critical thinking skill** **(1 question)**



CamScanner

## D Vocabulary & Structure — 7 Marks

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** **(5 Marks)**

**TEN (10)** multiple-choice items (**7 Vocabulary & 3 Structures**) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. **(Half a mark each)**

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:** **(2 Marks)**

**FOUR (4)** structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given words(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs... etc. related to what students have studied. **(Half a mark each)**

## E Writing — 6 Marks

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on....:** **(6Marks)**

Students are asked to write a paragraph from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85)** to **NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

**(One mark for organization-One mark for relevance of ideas- One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)**

OR

**Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on:** **(6 Marks)**

Students are asked to write an email from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85)** to **NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the email. Names and addresses are provided.

**(One mark for organization - One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)**



# Check Your English!

مجاب عنه في آخر الكتاب | WB pages 70 & 71

**1 Complete the questions with these words:**

did - ~~does~~ - highest - if - looking - made - shouldn't - Were

1. What **does** an engineer do?
2. What is a teaspoon _____ of?
3. If you can see yourself, what are you _____ at?
4. Which is the _____ mountain in the world?
5. Why _____ you eat a lot of chocolate?
6. What happens _____ you touch a jellyfish?
7. Where _____ Robinson Crusoe live for many years?
8. _____ there any bedrooms in the houses of Deir el-Medina?

**2 Now match the questions from Exercise 1 with the answers**

a. ☐ It stings you.
b. ☐ There is too much sugar in it.
c. [1] He or she designs engines or parts of buildings.
d. ☐ Mount Everest
e. ☐ No, there weren't.
f. ☐ on an island
g. ☐ metal (but sometimes plastic)
h. ☐ a mirror



**3 Listen and check your answers to Exercises 1 and 2.**

## Audioscript — WB Page (70) — استمع إلى النص

Narrator: 1
Speaker 1 : What does an engineer do?
Speaker 2 : He or she designs engines or parts of buildings.
Narrator: 2
Speaker 1 : What is a teaspoon made of?
Speaker 2 : Metal (but sometimes plastic).
Narrator: 3
Speaker 1 : If you can see yourself, what are you looking at?
Speaker 2 : A mirror.



CamScanner

Narrator: 4
Speaker 1 : Which is the highest mountain in the world?
**Speaker 2** : Mount Everest.

Narrator: 5
Speaker 1 : Why shouldn't you eat a lot of chocolate?
**Speaker 2** : There is too much sugar in it.

Narrator: 6
Speaker 1 : What happens if you touch a jellyfish?
**Speaker 2** : It stings you.

Narrator: 7
Speaker 1 : Where did Robinson Crusoe live for many years?
**Speaker 2** : On an island.

Narrator: 8
Speaker 1 : Were there any bedrooms in the houses of Deir el-Medina?
**Speaker 2** : No, there weren't.

**4 Read and underline the mistakes in these sentences. Correct the mistakes.**

1. I got short, curly hair. (have got)
2. That is not your bag, it is my. (.....)
3. Mariam didn't climb the mountain because she was frightening. (.....)
4. There are any peppers in the fridge. (.....)
5. Did you went to the park this morning? (.....)

**5 Read the book summaries and write the missing sentences a-d in the right places**

**a.** Some of the people are funny and some of them are scary!

**b.** The story moves slowly, but I like the story's message.

**c.** Should he talk to the man, or should he hide?

**d.** If he gets home on time, he will win a prize.

1 I really enjoyed this book. It is about a sailor who lived for many years on an island. In the morning, he always went for a walk on the beach alone, then, one day, he saw another person on the island! [1]☐ Read it to find out!

*Robinson Crusoe*







2 This book is very exciting. It is about a man who must travel quickly through many places by ship and train. It is easier to travel through some countries than others! [2]☐ It is a very difficult challenge, but will he do it?

*Around the World in 80 Days.*



3 In this story, an old fisherman spends many days trying to catch a big fish. He is very good at fishing and catches the fish, but when he returns home, the fish is just a skeleton. However, the other fishermen respect the old man because he tried very hard. [3]☐

*The Old Man and the Sea.*



4 This story is very interesting! It is about a girl who goes to a very strange place. There are a lot of very interesting people and animals in this place and she has lots of adventures. [4]☐ Will she find her way home?

*Alice's Adventures in Wonderland*



**6 Ask and answer the questions about the stories in pairs.**

1. Which is the only story that is not about the sea?
2. Which two stories are not only about people?
3. Which stories have forms of transport in them?
4. Which of the stories did you enjoy? Why?

**7 Write a summary of another book or film that you enjoyed.**

- Say what the story / film is about.
- Write about the people in the story / film and about what happens to them.
- Finish with a question or your opinion.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



CamScanner

Module 1

# Meeting people



UNIT 1

# Coming home

## Objectives

**Reading:**
A text about daily routines; a blog about routines; a website article about children in India;
*The Railway Children*

**Writing:**
A text message; an email to a penfriend

**Listening:**
A description of a bedroom

**Speaking:**
Discussing daily routines; describing bedrooms and furniture

**Language:**
Present simple questions

**Life Skills:**
Self-management

**Values:**
Coexistence values

**Issues:**
Citizenship

SB / WB Answers



## Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2-5 WB pages 72-73

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى ملحق الكتاب

### Key Vocabulary

استمع الى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| interview | مقابلة شخصية | way | طريق |
| routine | روتين، النظام متكرر | block of flats | عمارة سكنية |
| sofa | أريكة (كنبة) | text (ed) (n) | يرسل رسالة نصية / رسالة نصية |
| daily | يومي / كل يوم | | |

#### Activities

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| listen to music | يستمع إلى الموسيقى | do sports | يمارس الرياضة |
| help to make dinner | يساعد في إعداد العشاء | read on the sofa | يقرأ على الأريكة |
| have lunch at school | يتناول الغداء في المدرسة | text friends | يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء |

### Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| school day | يوم دراسي | hobby | هواية |
| school subjects | مواد دراسية | fun | ممتع - متعة |
| favourite | مفضل | interests | اهتمامات |
| that's why = so | لذلك | blog | مدونة |
| chess | لعبة الشطرنج | baker's = bakery | مخبز |
| important | هام | cook (ed) (n) | تطهو/تطبخ - طباخ |
| free time | وقت الفراغ | prefer (red) | يفضل |

### Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| do homework | يقوم بعمل الواجب المدرسي | in the (evening/ morning) | في (المساء/الصباح) |
| do exercises | يؤدي تمارين | in the holidays | في الإجازات |
| go to bed | يذهب للنوم | by bus | بالأتوبيس |
| have fun | يستمتع | on the right | على اليمين |
| have breakfast with | يتناول الإفطار مع | on her way to... | في طريقها إلى... |
| take the bus | يستقل الأتوبيس | at the weekend | في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع |
| get up | يستيقظ. يصحو | good for | مفيد لـ... |
| in bed | في الفراش | | |



CamScanner

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يوجد تجميع لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| have | يتناول - يملك | had | had |
| leave | يغادر | left | left |
| take | يستقل (مركبة) - يأخذ | took | taken |
| spend | يقضي «وقت»/ينفق «مال» | spent | spent |
| get up | يستيقظ | got up | got up |

## Word Meaning Opposite

| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| fun | ممتع | enjoyable | boring | ممل |
| late | متأخرًا | - | early | مبكرًا |
| the same | نفس الشيء | equal / like | different | مختلف |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| routine | روتين | your usual way of doing things, especially[1] when you do them in a fixed[2] order at the same time |
| interview | مقابلة شخصية | a formal[3] meeting[4] in which someone asks you questions about yourself and your life |
| block of flats | عمارة سكنية | a tall building[5] with more than one floor with flats for people to live in |

١- خصوصًا
٢- ثابت
٣- رسمي
٤- إجتماع
٥- مبني

## Language Notes

### ① Words with "the"

- بعض الكلمات مثل bed / school / hospital لا يستخدم قبلها the إذا استخدمت للغرض الذى وجدت من أجله:

Ex. Students go to school to study.

- أما إذا استخدمت لغير الغرض الذى وجدت من أجله يمكن أن نستخدم the قبلها:

Ex. I went to the school to ask about my son.

### ② too

تستخدم كلمة too بمعنى «أيضًا» لموافقة المتحدث فى الرأى كما فى المثال الآتى:

Ex. A: I'm feeling tired.
B: Me, too.

كما تستخدم بمعنى «.... جدًا الدرجة الا ...» كما فى المثال الآتى:

Ex. He is too weak to walk.





### ③ arrive at - arrive in - get to

- arrive at «يصل إلى مكان صغير «مدرسة..مستشفى...

Ex. Mariam arrives at school early in the morning.

- arrive in «يصل إلى مكان كبير «دولة..مدينة...

Ex. When does the plane arrive in London?

- get to يصل إلى «مكان كبير أو صغير»

Ex. He got to Cairo / the hospital early.

### ④ home

تأتي كلمة home بعد الأفعال come / get / arrive / leave بدون حرف جر قبلها:

- come home يأتي للمنزل
- get / arrive home يصل للمنزل
- leave home يغادر المنزل

Ex. My father usually comes home late.

### ⑤ help

- help + مفعول + (to) + inf... يساعد... في أن يفعل...

Ex. Eman always helps her mum to cook food.

- help + مفعول + with ... يساعد... في...

Ex. Eman always helps with the housework.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Mariam's parents visited her at _____ hospital.
   a. an  b. the  c. these  d. no article
2. This box is _____ heavy for me to carry.
   a. too  b. to  c. two  d. toe
3. My father has breakfast when he arrives _____ work.
   a. in  b. at  c. for  d. to
4. I won't leave _____ today, I feel tired.
   a. home  b. from home  c. for home  d. in home
5. Could you help me _____ my homework, please?
   a. to do  b. doing  c. do  d. a & c



CamScanner

# Reading

SB Page (2)

استمع إلى النصوص



I'm Maram. My daily routine[1] is the same[2] every school day! I always get up[3] at 6.30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I go to school by bus with my friend, Dina. Sometimes we listen to music. My parents work at the hospital. They get home[4] late, so I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework, read on the sofa[5], watch TV and text[6] my friends. Then I go to bed!

١- الروتين اليومى
٢- نفس الشىء
٣- يستيقظ
٤- يصل للمنزل
٥- أريكة
٦- يرسل رسالة نصية

SB Page (4)

## My best friend's family



Hi everyone. Today's interview[1] is with my best friend Sherifa and her family. Here's a photo of us. Sherifa's on the right[2]!

**How many people are in your family, Sherifa?**

There are five people: me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.

**When do you get up?**

I usually get up at 6.30 and help Mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too[3]. My dad starts work very early, so he leaves[4] home before we get up. That's why[5] he doesn't have breakfast with us. He eats when he gets to work. I walk to school with my brothers.

**Do you like to study?**

Yes, I do. My favourite subject[6] is English.

**What do you do in the evening?**

I listen to music every day. My dad and I sometimes play chess[7]. My brothers always watch TV[8] and my mum usually reads.

١- مقابلة شخصية
٢- على اليمين
٣- أيضًا
٤- يغادر
٥- لذلك
٦- مادة دراسية
٧- لعبة الشطرنج
٨- يشاهد التلفاز





# Exercises on Vocabulary

- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى فى ملحق الكتاب

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

المنيا / مطاى 2023

**Mona is asking Dina some questions.**

Mona : Can I ask you some questions?
Dina : ① .....
Mona : ② .....?
Dina : I usually get up at 6.30 am.
Mona : ③ .....?
Dina : I live with my family.
Mona : Do you listen to music?
Dina : ④ .....
Mona : How often do you listen to music?
Dina : ⑤ .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. I go to the baker's with my mother ..... to buy bread in the morning. WB
   a. daily b. dearly c. dairy d. deeply
2. I saw Ahmed's father on his ..... to work this morning. WB
   a. stay b. weight c. holiday d. way
3. Come and sit on this ....., four people can sit on it. بنى سويف / نيا 2023 WB
   a. routine b. sofa c. chair d. seat
4. Many people in the city live in ..... of flats. بنى سويف / مدينة ناصر 2023
   a. blocks b. blacks c. chests d. houses
5. I have an important ..... today. I hope to get the job. القليوبية / قها 2023
   a. view b. group c. interview d. race
6. How often do you ..... dinner? العربية / السبتة 2023
   a. spend b. do c. prefer d. make
7. Which sport do you like to ..... ? الشرقية / عرب الزهارين 2022
   a. make b. do c. keep d. be



CamScanner

8. I always help my father ..... the jobs that he likes to do in the house.
a. did b. does c. to do d. doing

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

9. I use my phone to ..... my friends.
a. text b. fix c. try d. mix

10. Dina likes to ..... to music in her free time.
a. play b. help c. text d. listen

11. My daily ..... starts when I get up at seven.
a. subject b. way c. routine d. time

12. It was rainy, but we could get ..... easily.
a. at home b. home c. to home d. in home

13. Do you ..... lunch at home or at school, Ali?
a. have b. break c. build d. hurt

14. "Fun" is the same meaning as .....
a. boring b. ugly c. enjoyable d. famous

15. My dad likes to ..... on the sofa in the evenings.
a. swim b. read c. help d. hurt

16. The children had a lot of ..... at the park last week.
a. fans b. fine c. flats d. fun

17. My teacher always helps me ..... paragraphs.
a. write b. writing c. to writing d. wrote

18. A: Mohamed watches much TV.
B: Me, .....
a. two b. toe c. too d. to

19. Osama has a lot of ..... ; he likes reading, swimming and watching TV.
a. ways b. interests c. times d. subjects

20. Good food and exercise are good ..... you.
a. for b. with c. at d. about





# Language

## 1- The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

**Form التكوين**

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → + inf. مصدر الفعل + s / es ies

Ex. I play football on Fridays. Ex. Hassan comes late.

**Notes**

١- يضاف للفعل (es) إذا انتهى بـ (ss/ ch / sh / o / x)

cross → crosses go → goes
watch → watches do → does

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ y + حرف ساكن تحذف (y) وتضيف (ies):

carry → carries study → studies

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ y + حرف متحرك تبقى (y) وتضيف (s):

play → plays buy → buys

**Usage الاستخدام**

• يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن:

Ex. I am twelve. / He lives in Cairo. / Water boils at 100°C ١- حقائق (facts)

Ex. She watches TV at night. ٢- عادات (habits)

Ex. They usually sleep early. ٣- الأعمال المعتادة (الروتينية daily routines)

**Keywords الكلمات الدالة**

every (day - week - month - year) / always / usually / often / sometimes / occasionally / never

Ex. Hala always gets up at six o'clock.

**Negative النفى**

• تنفى الفعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلى:

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع → don't + inf.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد → doesn't + inf.

Ex. I don't like bad people.
Ex. She doesn't watch football matches.



CamScanner

**Notes**

١- يمكن أن ننفي الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط بوضع كلمة never قبل الفعل دون تغيير فيه.
Ex. He never goes to school late.

٢- تذكر أن فعل (يكون Be) يأتي دائماً قبل never
Ex. Dad is never late for work.

**Question السؤال**

• للسؤال بـ «هل..؟» في زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم Do Does كما يلي:

Do + I / you / we / they / اسم جمع → + inf...?

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد → + inf...?

Ex. Do you usually watch TV?
- Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

Ex. Does he sometimes listen to music?
- Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't.

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة السابقة مع وضع كلمة الاستفهام في أول السؤال.

Ex. When do they get home?
- They get home at eight.

- ارجع إلى شرح تكوين السؤال في مقدمة الكتاب

## 2- Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 100% | always | I always get up at 6.30 in the morning. (طوال الوقت) | استيقظ دائما في الساعة ٦.٣٠ صباحًا. |
| 80% | usually | Ahmed usually plays football. (في أوقات كثيرة) | يلعب أحمد عادةً كرة القدم. |
| 70% | often | Sara often watches TV in the evenings. (في أغلب الأوقات) | تشاهد سارة التلفاز عادةً في المساء. |
| 50% | sometimes | My mother sometimes listens to music. (بعض الوقت) | أمي أحيانًا تستمع للموسيقى. |
| 10% | occasionally | It occasionally rains in the summer. (نادرًا ما يحدث ذلك) | انها تمطر من حين لآخر في الصيف. |
| 0% | never | We never go to school on Fridays. (لا يحدث أبدًا) | لا نذهب للمدرسة أيام الجمعة أبدًا. |





**Notes**

١- تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي
Ex. We usually get home late.
Ex. Mariam is never late for school. (Verb to be) وبعد فعل يكون

٢- نستخدم How often....? للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط كما يلي:

How often + do / does + فاعل + inf.....?

Ex. How often do you read on the sofa?

• للإجابة نستخدم ظرف التكرار المناسب حسب درجة تكرار الفعل.

Ex. I always read on the sofa. (100%) أنا دائمًا اقرأ على الأريكة
Ex. I never read on the sofa. (0%) أنا لا اقرأ أبدًا على الأريكة.

## Exercises on Language

• يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. Hamdi doesn't _____ coffee for breakfast. WB
a. drinking b. drink c. is drinking d. drinks

2. What time _____ your first lesson start? WB
a. do b. doing c. does d. is

3. I _____ my homework before I have my dinner. WB 2022 القليوبية / سها
a. usually do b. do usually c. does usually d. usually does

4. My father always _____ basketball on Friday. 2022 الشرقية/ غرب الزقازيق
a. play b. is played c. playing d. plays

5. Samar usually _____ her uncle. 2023 الجيزة/ منشأة القناطر
a. visit b. visits c. to visit d. visiting

6. We _____ go to school on holidays. 2022 إدارة منفلوط
a. often b. sometimes c. never d. always

7. He never _____ his homework in the evening. 2023 بني سويف/ ببا
a. do b. done c. doing d. does



CamScanner

## Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Doctors ..... helpful.
a. is always b. always is c. are always d. always are

9. I don't have a mobile, so I ..... text my friends.
a. usually b. always c. no d. never

10. I ..... drink orange juice. It is so delicious.
a. always b. no c. never d. don't

11. We ..... Mr Hassan for help.
a. ask always b. always ask c. always asks d. asks always

12. **A:** How ..... do you study at night? **B:** Always.
a. many b. much c. deep d. often

13. Sara ..... gets high marks in the maths exams. She likes maths.
a. doesn't b. never c. always d. no

14. Students in Egypt ..... go to school in August.
a. never b. isn't c. usually d. doesn't

15. Ali is a very clever student. He ..... studies hard.
a. never b. always c. not d. sometimes

16. People ..... swim in the sea when it is too cold.
a. often b. usually c. never d. always

17. I ..... ready for any tests at school.
a. am always b. usually am c. always do d. often am

18. He never comes on time because he ..... usually wake up early.
a. never b. don't c. doesn't d. not

19. Habiba is my best friend. I ..... sit next to her in my lessons.
a. never b. not c. don't d. usually

20. Ahmed ..... sees his sister because she lives so far away.
a. doesn't b. never c. don't d. not

21. ....., I watch TV in the evenings.
a. Do b. Never c. Not d. Sometimes





**2** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- الرجوع إلى شرح كيفية الإجابة عن هذا السؤال في مقدمة الكتاب

### SB, WB & Exams

1. **A:** Does Mariam listen to music on the bus?
**B:** Yes, she ..... (do). SB
2. Tamer sometimes ..... (have) lunch at school. المثيوبيا - فبراير 2023
3. How often ..... (do) Salma go swimming a week? بنى سويف - يناير 2023

### Bit by Bit Exercises

4. They ..... (watch usually) TV in the evenings.
5. My brother ..... (don't have) a mobile.
6. Omar ..... (never is) rude to people.
7. I like milk. I ..... (never) drink it.
8. Does Ahmed ..... (texts) his friends in the evenings?
9. Ali likes reading. He ..... (never) reads books.

## Speaking

### Discussing daily routine

-مناقشة الروتين اليومى:

نسأل ونجيب عن الروتين اليومى كالآتى (لاحظ استخدام ظروف التكرار Adverbs of frequency):

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Do you have the same routine every day of the week? هل تتبع نفس الروتين كل يوم أسبوعيًا؟ | - Yes, I do. نعم أتبع نفس الروتين. |
| - When do you get up? متى تستيقظ؟ | - I always get up at 7:00 o'clock. استيقظ دائما في السابعة. |
| - Do you drink coffee for breakfast? هل تتناول القهوة على الإفطار؟ | - No, I never drink coffee for breakfast. لا، لا أتناول القهوة أبدًا على الإفطار. |
| - How do you go to school? كيف تذهب للمدرسة؟ | - I always go to school by bus. أذهب دائمًا بالأتوبيس. |
| - What do you usually do on your way to school? ماذا تفعل عادة في طريقك للمدرسة؟ | - I often listen to music on my way to school. غالبًا استمع للموسيقى في طريقي للمدرسة. |
| - What do you do in the evening? ماذا تفعل في المساء؟ | - I sometimes watch TV. أحيانًا أشاهد التلفاز. |



CamScanner

# General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

- اوجة الى شرح كيفية الاجابة عن الاسئلة المختلفة من مقدمة الكتاب .
- يوجد نماذج اضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب .

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Basma is asking Hala about her daily routine.**

Basma : Hi Hala! When do you usually get up?

Hala : ① ..... ?

Basma : ② .....

Hala : I go to school by bus.

Basma : ③ ..... ?

Hala : I get home at 3:00 pm.

Basma : What do you do when you get home?

Hala : ④ .....

Basma : What do you do in the evening?

Hala : ⑤ .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. I like to ..... my friends in the evenings.
   a. read b. cover c. buy d. text
2. The policeman sent the thief to ..... prison.
   a. the b. these c. an d. no article
3. **A :** When do you get .....? **B :** At half past six.
   a. of b. to c. up d. at
4. Everyone should..... sports to keep fit.
   a. make b. do c. text d. build
5. A ..... of flats is a tall building with more than one floor. نموذج كفر الشيخ 2023
   a. blog b. hobby c. block d. way

### Language

6. Doaa ..... her mother make dinner.
   a. helps usually b. usually helps c. help usually d. usually help
7. Mothers ..... love their children.
   a. always b. never c. don't d. sometimes





8. **A:** How ..... do you text your friends? **B:** Always.
   a. much b. many c. often d. deep
9. ..... your father sometimes travel abroad?
   a. Do b. Does c. Are d. Is
10. I ..... get up early on holidays.
    a. doesn't b. aren't c. not d. don't
11. I ..... to school late.
    a. go never b. never goes c. never go d. goes never
12. We ..... English and maths on Tuesdays.
    a. study b. studying c. studies d. are studying

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. ..... (Do) Sally play music?
2. We ..... (go often) to the zoo on Friday.
3. Omar ..... (always is) early for school.
4. Does your cousin sometimes ..... (visits) you?
5. My friend ..... (comes usually) by bus. نموذج كفر الشيخ 2023
6. Sherehan usually ..... (watch) TV at night.
7. **A:** Do you usually get up early? **B:** Yes, I .....(don't).

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: SB نموذج كفر الشيخ 2023

"Your daily routine" (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What time do you get up?
- How do you go to school?
- How often do you listen to music?
- When do you do your homework?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I always get up at....
- I often listen to.....
- I usually have... for breakfast.
- I do my homework when .....



CamScanner

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 6-8 WB pages 74-75

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى ملحق الكتاب

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| attractive | جذاب/جميل |
| poor | فقير |
| prison | سجن |
| tap | صنبور (حنفية) |
| railway line | خط سكة حديد |
| typical | نموذجى (معتاد) |
| village | قرية |
| feed (fed / fed) | يُطعم |
| share (d) | يتقاسم . يشارك |

## Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| life (lives) | حياة (حيوات) |
| knife (knives) | سكين (سكاكين) |
| cup | فنجان - كاس |
| end / ending | نهاية |
| Odd one out | (اخرج الشىء المختلف (اسم لعبة |
| Role-play | لعب الأدوار (إسم لعبة) |
| watermelon | بطيخ |
| finally | أخيرًا |
| together | معًا |
| (be) called | يُسمى . يُدعى |
| the country | الريف |
| restaurant | مطعم |
| waiter | نادل «جرسون» |
| potato chips | شرائح البطاطس |
| exciting | مثير |
| move (d) | ينتقل |
| change (d) | يتغير/يُغير |
| remember (ed) | يتذكر |
| borrow (ed) | يستعير |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|---|---|
| have adventures | يمر بمغامرات |
| do a job | يؤدى مهمة |
| take ... away from | يأخذ... بعيداً عن |
| suggest + v-ing | يقترح |
| in prison for | فى السجن من أجل |
| water plants | يروى الزرع |
| share ... with | يتقاسم ... مع |
| careful with | حريص من |
| at the beginning | فى البداية |
| at the end of ... | عند نهاية ... |
| at last | أخيرًا |
| in many ways | بطرق كثيرة |
| move from ... to | ينتقل من ... إلى |
| full of | مملوء بـ |





## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يوجد تجميع لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| know | يعرف | knew | known |
| become | يصبح | became | become |
| feel | يشعر | felt | felt |
| bring | يُحضر | brought | brought |
| forget | ينسى | forgot | forgotten |

| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| attractive | جذاب/جميل | beautiful | ugly | قبيح |
| large | كبير الحجم | big | small | صغير |
| near | قريب (من) | close | far from | بعيد عن |
| terrible | فظيع/بشع | very bad | good | جيد |
| outside | خارجي/بالخارج | outdoor(s) | inside | داخلي/بالداخل |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| attractive | جذاب/جميل | nice to look at |
| prison | سجن | a place where people go when they do something wrong |
| tap | صنبور (حنفية) | something you turn on or off to get water |
| railway line | خط سكة حديد | the metal 'road' that a train travels on |
| feed | يُطعم | give food to a person, group or animal |
| poor | فقير | not having enough money to live well |
| large | كبير الحجم | big |

## Language Notes

### 1 The relative pronouns "who" and "where"

- يُستخدم ضمير الوصل **who** ليحل محل فاعل عاقل بمعنى «الذى . التى . الذين . اللاتى» (وفى هذه الحالة يأتى بعده فعل):

Ex. A kind man, who travels on the train every day, became my friend.

- يُستخدم ضمير الوصل **who** أيضًا ليحل محل مفعول عاقل (وفى هذه الحالة يأتى بعده اسم أو ضمير):

Ex. Alaa, who I like, is my friend.

- يُستخدم ضمير الوصل **where** ليشير إلى المكان بمعنى «حيث»:

Ex. There is a tap at the end of the street where we live.



CamScanner

## ② six-year-old / six years old

- six-year-old — تستخدم هذه الصيغة كصفة تسبق الاسم الموصوف

- لاحظ أن كلمة year مفرد بدون (s) ولابد من وضع شرط hyphens لتفصل الكلمات.

Ex. My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.

- six years old — تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن العمر ولا يليها الاسم الموصوف

Ex. A: How old is Ola?

B: Ola is six years old.

## ③ chicken

- chicken — لحم الدجاج (اسم لا يعد)

Ex. I'd like chicken for lunch.

- chickens — الدجاج (اسم يعد)

Ex. I feed the chickens every day.

## ④ country / the country / the countryside

- country — دولة

Ex. Egypt is our country.

- the country = the countryside — الريف

Ex. Life in the country (the countryside) is calm.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The waiter ..... brought us the meal was kind.
   a. where b. whose c. who d. which
2. My grandma will be seventy ..... next week.
   a. year old b. years old c. years-old d. year-old
3. Farmers usually keep ....., sheep and cows on their farms.
   a. chicken b. chickens c. chicken's d. chickens'
4. We left the city and went to live in .....
   a. a country b. country c. countries d. the country





# Reading

SB Page (6)

استمع إلى النصوص

### Lives around the world



Tell us about your life!

- What are your hobbies[1] and interests?
- What is a typical[2] day in your life?
- What job do you want to do one day?

My name's Shahana. I'm from India[3]. I live in a village[4] with my parents, my brother and my sister.

I share[5] a room with my sister. We all get up early. There is an outside[6] tap[7] at the end[8] of the street where we live. My mum gets water from the tap every morning. Then we all have breakfast. We have bread with a cup[9] of tea. My dad works in a shop.

I have two jobs to do when I get home from school. I feed[10] the chickens[11], then I help my mum make dinner. After dinner, I do my homework. Sometimes I help my brother and sister to do their homework, too. Then I go to bed.

١- هوايات
٢- نموذجي (معتاد)
٣- دولة الهند
٤- قرية
٥- يشارك
٦- خارجي
٧- صنبور
٨- نهاية
٩- فنجان
١٠- يُطعم
١١- دجاج

SB Page (7)



Yunis : Grandma, have you got a watermelon[1]?

Grandma : Yes, I have. It's on the table.

Yunis : Can I have some, please? I like watermelon.

Grandma : Yes, of course[2]. We need a knife*[3] to cut[4] it!

Yunis : Shall I help you to cut it?

Grandma : Thank you, Yunis, but be careful[5] with the knife!

١- بطيخة
٢- بالطبع
٣- سكين
٤- يقطع
٥- كن حريصاً

**Say it correctly**

* knife — لا ينطق حرف k في هذه الكلمة



CamScanner

SB Page (7)



Hi Amal. Have you got that game[1] called Odd one out[2]?



No! I don't play that game now. It's for young children.



Have you got any other[3] children's games? My six-year-old cousin is here and he wants to play a game with me.



Yes, I have Role-play[4]! Do you remember that game?



Yes, I do! Can I borrow[5] it this evening? My cousin would love it!



Of course. Shall I play it, too? It's better[6] with three people, and I still[7] enjoy that game.



Of course! You can come to my house later[8].

١- لعبة
٢- اخرج الشئ المختلف
٣- أخرى
٤- لعب الادوار
٥- يستعير
٦- أفضل
٧- مازال
٨- فيما بعد

SB Page (8)

**The Railway Children by E. Nesbit**




It is the 1900s. Roberta, her younger brother Peter and their little sister, Phyllis, live with their parents in London. They have a big, attractive[1] home with a large[2] garden. One terrible[3] day, two men take their father away from home. The children do not know where he is going or why.

The children move from the city with their mother to a small house near a railway line[4]. The family are poor[5] and life is very different[6] for them. The children have lots of adventures[7] near the railway line. A kind[8] old man, who travels on the train every day, becomes[9] their friend.

The old man helps the family in many ways. He helps their father too, because their father is in prison[10] for something he did not do. Finally[11], their father comes home. The family is so happy to be together again at last.

١- جذّاب
٢- كبير
٣- فظيع، بشع
٤- خط سكة حديد
٥- فقير
٦- مختلف
٧- مغامرات
٨- عطوف
٩- يصبح
١٠- سجن
١١- أخيرًا





WB Page (74)

**The Railway Children by E. Nesbit**



**Ali** : This is a nice restaurant[1]. Shall we eat here, Hassan?
**Hassan**: Yes, that's a good idea[2].
**Waiter**[3]: Good evening. Where would you like to sit?
**Ali** : Can we sit next to the window?
**Waiter** : Of course. What would you like to eat?
**Hassan**: Have you got any fish today?
**Waiter** : Yes, we've got fish with rice or fish with potato chips[4].
**Ali** : We'd like fish with rice, please.
**Waiter** : Shall I bring[5] you some water?
**Hassan**: Thank you.

١- مطعم
٢- فكرة جيدة
٣- نادل (جرسون)
٤- رقائق البطاطس
٥- يُحضر

## Exercises on Vocabulary

- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. My uncle uses a _____ in his garden to water his plants. WB
   a. cap b. map c. tape d. tap
2. Roberta's family home has a _____ garden. WB
   a. careful b. helpful c. large d. cheap
3. The opposite of "attractive" is _____. WB
   a. small b. ugly c. beautiful d. good
4. On a _____ day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her shop. WB الدقهلية / مايو عام 2023
   a. typical b. famous c. helpful d. careful
5. I live in a city, but my grandparents live in a _____among fields. WB الجيزة/ اليوناي 2022
   a. town b. capital c. village d. country



CamScanner

أسيوط / منفلوط 2023

6. I like to ..... the chickens.
a. feed b. feel c. meet d. drink

الإقليمية / صوف 2023

7. I like your dress. It's .....
a. terrible b. attractive c. ugly d. bad

أسيوط / منفلوط 2023

8. This is the man ..... ran after me yesterday.
a. who b. which c. when d. where

الشرقية / غرب الزقازيق 2022

9. Trains travel on ..... lines.
a. post b. airway c. railway d. servant

## Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Two dangerous men escaped from ..... last week.
a. prison b. school c. work d. university

11. Her family was very ..... They couldn't buy her a new dress.
a. attractive b. poor c. happy d. rich

12. One ..... day, Hassan had an accident on his way home.
a. terrible b. nice c. good d. wonderful

13. The opposite of "near" is .....
a. close b. full of c. far d. high

14. The two men had an interesting ..... in the forest last week.
a. adventure b. flight c. address d. text

15. Our science teacher suggested ..... on a trip to a factory.
a. to going b. go c. to go d. going

16. I'd like to have a .....of tea without sugar.
a. cap b. tap c. cup d. tape

17. I share a bedroom ..... my brother Ali.
a. to b. with c. by d. for

18. The ..... in this restaurant is very friendly.
a. doctor b. food c. knife d. waiter

19. We were scared when the room was full ..... smoke.
a. at b. of c. on d. off

20. Don't forget ..... your hands before meals.
a. to washing b. washing c. wash d. to wash





# Language

## Questions with (Can) / (Shall) & (Have .... got)

- ذكرنا فى (Lessons 1 & 2) أن السؤال بـ (هل...؟) يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص:

Ex. Do you live in Giza?

Ex. Will Habiba come home tomorrow?

**Can + subject + inf....?**

- تستخدم (Can) للسؤال بمعنى (هل من الممكن أن...؟ / هل تستطيع أن...؟):

Ex. Can I borrow your book today?

Ex. What can you see in the picture?

**Shall I / we + subject + inf....?**

- تستخدم (Shall) للسؤال لتقديم العروض / للاقتراح / لطلب النصح:

Ex. Shall I carry your bag? **(Offer)**

Ex. Shall I call again on Tuesday? **(Suggestion)**

Ex. What shall we do with that problem? **(Asking for advice)**

- تذكر أن (Shall) تستخدم غالباً مع الضمائر (I / we) فقط.

**Have / Has + subject + got...?**

- تستخدم (Have / Has.... got) للسؤال بمعنى (هل... يملك....؟):

Ex. Have you got any new games?

- Yes, I have.
- No, I haven't.

Ex. Has she got any friends?

- Yes, she has.
- No, she hasn't.



CamScanner

# Exercises on Language

- يوجد تمرينات اضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

## ① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams

1. Grandma, ..... you got a watermelon? (SB)
   a. shall b. can c. has d. have
2. Hi! ..... we play a game next weekend? (SB)
   a. Have b. Do c. Shall d. Has
3. ..... your father got a computer? (WB)
   a. Has b. Shall c. Can d. Do
4. ..... I help you carry your books? (WB)
   a. Am b. Does c. Shall d. Have
5. ..... your father got a blue car? (WB)
   a. Have b. Has c. Can d. Shall

القاهرة / الحادي 2021

6. We ..... buy bread at the baker's.
   a. have b. has c. can d. shall

### Bit by Bit Exercises

7. ..... we go to the cinema today?
   a. Shall b. Has c. Have d. Are
8. ..... you got any stories to read?
   a. Has b. Have c. Are d. Do
9. ..... you help me lift this heavy box?
   a. Do b. Have c. Can d. Shall
10. ..... we go out today?
    a. Did b. Shall c. Have d. Do
11. ..... I bring you a glass of juice?
    a. Do b. Am c. Shall d. Have
12. **A:** ..... your dad play chess?
    **B:** Yes, he is clever at it.
    a. Has b. Is c. Do d. Can





13. ..... you got science or maths today?
    a. Has b. Have c. Can d. Shall
14. ..... Mr Hossam drive a bus?
    a. Do b. Has c. Is d. Can
15. ..... you take me to the airport, dad?
    a. Has b. Is c. Can d. Do
16. ..... I put this wet umbrella on the sofa?
    a. Shall b. Has c. Does d. Am
17. ..... Salah help me with my computer problem?
    a. Am b. Is c. Have d. Can

## ② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is a nice restaurant. ..... (Do) we eat here, Hassan? (WB)
2. Have you ..... (get) any cousins?
3. ..... (Are) we help Ahmed with his problem?
4. ..... (Am) I see your passport, please?
5. ..... (Do) you get me some juice, please?
6. What shall we ..... (doing) with this new camera?
7. ..... (Have) your little sister got a new doll?
8. I have some guests, what ..... (have) I cook?

# Speaking

## Asking and answering about moving to a new house.

السؤال والإجابة عن الانتقال لمنزل جديد:-

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - How did you feel when you moved to a new house?<br>كيف شعرت عندما انتقلت لمنزل جديد؟ | - I felt very sad because the new house was smaller.<br>شعرت بحزن شديد لأن المنزل الجديد كان اصغر حجمًا. |
| - How was it at first?<br>كيف كان الأمر في البداية؟ | - It was very difficult.<br>كان الأمر صعبًا جدًا. |
| - Why was it difficult?<br>لماذا كان الأمر صعبًا؟ | - I didn't have any friends.<br>لم يكن لدى أي أصدقاء. |



CamScanner

# General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

وجه إلى نموذج شهادة الإجابة عن الأسئلة المختلفة في مقدمة الكتاب.
يوجد تدريبات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب.

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Ali and Rami are talking about Ali's new house.**

Ali : Hi, Rami. My family moved to a new house.
Rami : 1 .....?
Ali : It's in Orabi street.
Rami : 2 .....?
Ali : Yes, it's very large.
Rami : How did you feel when you moved to it?
Ali : 3 .....
Rami : Why? 4 .....
Ali : I know it's better, but I have no friends there.
Rami : 5 .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. A ..... is a place where people go when they do something wrong. SB 2022

a. hospital b. prison c. theatre d. beach

2. Trains move along railway .....

a. rows b. farms c. taps d. lines

3. People without enough money are ..... SB

a. poor b. healthy c. strong d. careless

4. We can play football in the garden. It's really .....

a. small b. large c. ugly d. little

5. This food tastes very bad; it's .....

a. beautiful b. nice c. delicious d. terrible

### Language

6. ..... I open the door for you? WB

a. Shall b. Have c. Am d. Was

7. ..... she got any new dresses?

a. Have b. Does c. Has d. Is





8. ..... you got a camera? I need to take a photo.

a. Has b. Have c. Shall d. Can

9. ..... I have some water, please?

a. Can b. Do c. Must d. Have

10. ..... Samy got a new mobile?

a. Will b. Have c. Has d. Is

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Shall we ..... (goes) to the beach tomorrow?
2. ..... (Have) he got a new bike?
3. I have a birthday party, ..... (do) I make a cake?
4. Can I ..... (to take) this book when you finish it?
5. ..... (Have) I help you to cut the watermelon?
6. ..... (Has) you got something to eat mum?

## 4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: WB

to your penfriend John about your new house.

- **Your name is Omar and your email address is omar22@yahoo.com**
- **Your penfriend's email address is john55@gmail.com**

(أضاف عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- **Who bought the house?**
- **Is your new house big or small?**
- **Does it have a garden?**
- **How many rooms does it have?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **..... bought us a new house.**
- **My new house is ....**
- **It has/ doesn't have.....**
- **It has..... rooms.**
- **The house is near .....**



CamScanner

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 9-10 WB pages 76-77

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى ملحق الكتاب

استمع الى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| armchair | | bookshelf | رف للكتب |
| basin | | chest of drawers | خزانة ذات أدراج |
| carpet | | lamp | أباجورة / مصباح |
| curtains | | mirror | مرآة |
| sofa | | wardrobe | دولاب (الملابس) |
| nature reserve | محمية طبيعية | cushion | وسادة (مجدة) |

## Prepositions of place



next to بجوار — behind خلف — in front of أمام — under تحت



on على — opposite أمام - فى مقابل — in فى - داخل

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bedroom | غرفة نوم | cupboard | دولاب |
| bathroom | حمّام | nationality | جنسية |
| break | فترة راحة (فسحة) | absent | غائب |
| sunlight | ضوء الشمس | floor | أرضية الحجرة/طابق |
| Best wishes | أطيب الأمنيات | hope (d) | يأمل |
| penfriend | صديق مراسلة | describe (d) | يصف |
| corner | ركن | practise (d) | يمارس |
| downstairs | بالطابق السفلى | match (ed) | يتماشى مع/يلائم |





## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| practise English | يمارس اللغة الإنجليزية | like.... best | يحب.... جداً |
| play music | يعزف موسيقى | belong to | يخص/ينتمي لـ |
| take photos | يلتقط صور | hear from | يتلقى أخبار أو خطابات من |
| get dressed | يرتدى ملابسه | look out of .... | ينظر خارج.... |
| a breckfast break | فترة راحة لتناول وجبة الإفطار | on the front | فى المقدمة |
| (be) a short walk from | على مسافة تمشية قصيرة من | thank ..... for | يشكر ..... على |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

يوجد تجميع لأهم الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| read | يقرأ | read | read |
| send | يرسل | sent | sent |
| write | يكتب | wrote | written |

| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| start | يبدأ | begin | finish | ينهي |
| far | بعيد | away | nearby | قريب |
| downstairs | بالطابق السفلي | below | upstairs | بالطابق العلوي |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| armchair | كرسي بمسندين | a large comfortable(1) chair with parts(2) to put your arms on |
| basin | حوض | a bowl(3) for washing, usually with taps, in a bathroom, bedroom, etc |
| carpets | سجاد | these are on the floor |
| wardrobe | دولاب الملابس | a large cupboard in which you can put your clothes |
| curtains | ستائر | they are next to your windows and you close them at night |
| mirror | مرآه | a piece of special(4) glass in which you can see yourself and what is behind you |
| lamp | أباجورة/مصباح | something that gives light |
| chest of drawers | خزانة ذات أدراج | a piece of furniture(5) with drawers(6) (boxes with handles(7) on them) to put things in |

١- مربع
٢- أجزاء
٣- وعاء
٤- من نوع خاص
٥- أثاث
٦- أدراج
٧- مقابض



CamScanner

## Language Notes

### 1) love / would love يحب

- love
  - يأتي بعده فعلاً مضافاً له
  - to + inf او V-ing
  - Ex. I love taking / to take photos of birds.
- would ('d) love
  - يأتي بعدها دائمًا:
  - to + inf.
  - Ex. I'd love to visit the nature reserves near Al Fayoum.

### 2) wardrobe / cupboard

- wardrobe دولاب (للملابس)
  - Ex She put her dress in the wardrobe.
- cupboard دولاب (لتخزين ملابس وأشياء أخرى)
  - Ex. Put the plates in the kitchen cupboard, please.

### 3) information / advice / news / furniture

- هذه الكلمات تعامل معاملة المفرد ولا نضع أمامهم أدوات نكرة a / an ويليهم فعل لفاعل مفرد
  - v + s - is - was - does - has
  - Ex The information he gave me was important.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I'd love ..... a meal outside tonight.
   a. have b. to have c. having d. to having
2. She keeps the towels in a small ..... in the bathroom.
   a. cupboard b. wardrobe c. board d. blackboard
3. The news in today's newspaper ..... good.
   a. are b. were c. be d. is





## Audioscript

SB Page (9)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Boy:** My room is small, but it's really attractive. I have the lamp*(1) on a bookshelf(2) next to my bed so I can read at night. I have a wardrobe*(3) with a mirror(4) on the front, and my desk is under the window. Do you like my curtains*(5)? The colour matches(6) the carpet(7).

The best thing about my room is the sofa. I can sit there and read or watch videos on my computer.

**Girl:** My bed is under the window. There are cushions*(8) on it! Sometimes I sleep with the curtains open because I like to look out of the window! I've got lots of books, and I like to sit and read in the big armchair(9).

I keep some clothes in the chest of drawers(10). Our bathroom(11) is downstairs(12), but I have a basin(13) in my room, where I can wash my face before I go to bed.

١- أباجورة
٢- رف للكتب
٣- دولاب (للملابس)
٤- مرآة
٥- ستائر
٦- يتماشى مع
٧- سجادة
٨- وسائد
٩- كرسي بمسندين
١٠- خزانة ذات أدراج
١١- حمام
١٢- في الطابق الأسفل
١٣- حوض

**Say it correctly**

- lamp ينطق حرف a في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة (cat)
- wardrobe ينطق حرف a في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة (saw)
- curtains ينطق حرف u في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة (curly)
- cushion ينطق حرف u في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق حروف oo في كلمة (good)

WB Page (76)

I like my parents' bedroom. When they open the curtains, there is always lots of sunlight(1) in the room. Their bed is under the window. In front of the bed, they have a big wardrobe. My mum puts her dresses in there. There is also an armchair next to the window. My dad sometimes reads his book here. He puts his clothes in a big chest of drawers. This is behind the door. They don't have a basin in their room because the bathroom is next to their room, but they have a big mirror. My sister always likes to look at(2) herself in it!

١- ضوء الشمس
٢- تنظر إلى



CamScanner

# Reading

SB Page (10)

**New Message**

Dear Rebecca,

It is very nice to meet you. My name is Judy. I'm from El Faiyoum, in Egypt. It's a large city, with beautiful nature reserves* nearby. I live with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs.

On Saturdays, I usually get up early and help my grandmother with her shopping[1], then I read or do my homework. In the afternoons, I visit my friends or play computer games with my brother. My favourite subjects[2] are maths and English. Thank you for being my penfriend[3]. I am happy to be able to practise[4] my English!

I hope to hear from you soon,

Judy

Send

١- محميات طبيعية
٢- التسوق
٣- مواد دراسية
٤- صديق مراسلة
٥- يمارس

**Say it correctly**

* reserve — ينطق حرف S فى هذه الكلمة مثل نطق صوت /z/

SB Page (11)

**New Message**

Hi Alex!

Thanks for being my penfriend. I'm from England[1], I get up at about half past seven, and then my mum makes breakfast for the family. I walk to school with my brother. Our school finishes at three o'clock. After school, we sometimes do sport or play music. I don't watch TV when I get home, I always do my homework first.

Can you tell me about your typical daily routine in Germany[2]?

Hi Dan!

Thanks for your email. In Germany, school starts very early in the morning. So I don't have breakfast before school. There is a 'breakfast break[3]' after the first lesson. How many lessons does your school have every day?

Send

١- إنجلترا
٢- ألمانيا
٣- فترة تناول الإفطار





SB Page (11)



I love my bedroom![1] I have a big white wardrobe in the corner[2]. Next to it, there is a mirror. I look at myself in it in the mornings. I also have a small bookshelf where I put my books.

Next to this, there is a big window. I have blue curtains on it. I close them at night. I also have a red lamp next to my bed. I use it to read before I go to sleep.

Also in my bedroom, there is a grey armchair. I sit and read my book there sometimes. There is also a chest of drawers. I put my T-shirts, socks[3] and other clothes in it. Finally[4], there is a big carpet on the floor![5]

١- غرفة نوم
٢- ركن
٣- جوارب
٤- أخيراً
٥- أرضية الحجرة

WB Page (77)

**New Message**

Hi Tamer

Thank you for your email. I would love to visit the nature reserves near El Faiyoum. There are no nature reserves where I live in Cambridge[1], but there are some nice parks nearby. I would love to help you with your English.

Please write to me again soon.

Yours,
Oliver

Send

١- مدينة كامبريدج

WB Page (77)

**New Message**

Hi Leila

Thank you for your email. Here is some information[1] about me. I live with my parents and my two sisters in Oxford[2]. We live in a house but we don't have a garden[3]. Does your home have a garden?

Without a garden, I often go to the park at the weekends. I love taking photos[4] of the birds there. Do you have many birds where you live?

I enjoy my school and I have many friends there. The school is a short walk[5] from my house. Is your school nearby, or is it far from your home?

I hope you can write to me again soon and please answer my questions!

Best wishes

Mariana

Send

١- معلومات
٢- مدينة أكسفورد
٣- حديقة
٤- التقاط الصور
٥- تمشية



CamScanner

# Videoscript

SB Page (9)

Narrator

This is a chair from Ancient Egypt[1], and it is more than four thousand years old. Like many chairs today, it is made from wood.



In Ancient Egypt, only the richest[2] people had wooden furniture[3] because it was very expensive.

Today, most people have wooden furniture and it is not usually very expensive.

We all sit on chairs at home. But in Ancient Egypt, only very rich people used chairs. Other people sat on the floor.

Here is another chair from Ancient Egypt. It is made from wood, but it is covered in gold[4]. Can you see the lions' heads? It belonged to[5] the pharaoh[6], Tutankhamun[7]. You can see it in the Museum of Egyptian Antiquities[8] in Cairo.

We believe that the Ancient Egyptians made the very first[9] tables. This table is more than 3,000 years old.



Today, tables are usually made from wood. But in Ancient Egypt, they were sometimes made from stone[10]. They used tables for many things, such as writing, eating and playing games.

The Ancient Egyptians also used mirrors[11]. Today, mirrors are usually made from glass. This mirror is more than 3,000 years old and it is made from metal[12].



Do you look at yourself in a mirror when you leave home? What other furniture do you have at home?

١- مصر القديمة
٢- الأكثر ثراء
٣- أثاث خشبي
٤- مغطى بالذهب
٥- يخص
٦- فرعون
٧- توت عنخ آمون
٨- متحف الآثار المصرية القديمة
٩- الأولى من نوعها
١٠- الحجر
١١- مرايا
١٢- المعدن





# Exercises on Vocabulary

- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلي في ملحق الكتاب

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

## SB, WB & Exams

1. A _____ gives you light. WB
   a. leaf b. lamb c. lake d. lamp
2. A _____ is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes. WB
   a. wardrobe b. chair c. blackboard d. sofa
3. You can see yourself in a/an _____. الدقهلية / مايو عام 2023 WB
   a. armchair b. wardrobe c. mirror d. basin
4. My bed is under the window. There are a lot of _____ on it! العربية / البسيطة 2023 SB
   a. information b. cushions c. news d. tables
5. I can't see my friend because he is _____ me. مطروح / الحمام 2023
   a. next to b. in front of c. beside d. behind
6. We have a beautiful _____ on the floor in front of the living room. الأقصر / مايو 2022
   a. fridge b. curtain c. carpet d. TV
7. You can wash your face in this _____. إدارة بورسعيد 2022
   a. wardrobe b. basin c. curtain d. lamp

## Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Five people can sit on that _____ at the same time.
   a. sofa b. chair c. armchair d. lamp
9. Hala keeps her books on a big _____ over there.
   a. booklet b. bookshelf c. bookshop d. bookstore
10. We live in a building _____ the Giza Zoo.
    a. in b. in front c. next d. opposite
11. I usually close the _____ of my room at night.
    a. beds b. sofas c. curtains d. carpets
12. The post office is _____ to the cinema.
    a. next b. in front c. opposite d. on
13. To protect animals, we keep them in a _____.
    a. mountain b. country c. river d. nature reserve



CamScanner

14. **A:** Who does this red car belong _____? **B:** It's Ahmed's.
a. to b. for c. out d. off

15. I always leave my keys _____ the table over there.
a. in b. on c. out d. onto

16. To make your English better, _____ it inside and outside school.
a. take b. dress c. stay d. practise

17. Soha _____ dressed and went to the cinema.
a. got b. took c. kept d. made

18. The furniture in this villa _____ very expensive.
a. are b. is c. were d. have

## Speaking

### 1) Types of questions

- يوجد فى اللغة الإنجليزية نوعان من الأسئلة:

#### Yes / No questions

- هى الأسئلة التى تبدأ بفعل مساعد أو ناقص مثل: (be / do / have / will / can)?
- ونجيب عنها بـ (Yes) أو (No)

Ex. Did you go to the park? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

#### Wh-questions

- هى الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام مثل:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| What | ما/ماذا (للأشياء) | How | كيف (للطريقة/للحال) |
| Where | أين (للمكان) | How many | كم العدد |
| Who | من (للأشخاص) | How long | ما المدة/كم طول |
| When | متى (للزمن) | How much | ما ثمن/كم كمية |
| Why | لماذا (للسبب) | How often | كم عدد المرات |

Ex. How do you go to school?

**Notes :**

- يتم تكوين السؤال كما يلى:

❶ (كلمة إستفهام) ← ❷ فعل مساعد/ناقص ← ❸ فاعل ← ❹ فعل رئيس ← ❺ التكملة ....؟

Ex. What do you do in the mornings?

- ارجع إلى شرح كيفية تكوين السؤال بالتفصيل فى مقدمة الكتاب.





### 2) Describing your bedroom and furniture

- وصف حجرة نومك والأثاث الخاص بك

يمكن أن تقدم وصف لحجرة نومك والأثاث الخاص بك باستخدام الصيغ الآتية:

- There is/ are _____ in my bedroom. - هناك _____ فى حجرة نومى
Ex. There are two beds in my bedroom.

- I have a big/ small _____ in the corner. - لدى _____ كبير/صغير فى الركن.
Ex. I have a big wardrobe in the corner.

- The _____ is/ are on/ under/ next to/ opposite _____.
Ex. My bed is under the window. - _____ يوجد على/تحت/ بجوار/مقابل _____
Ex. There is a lamp next to my bed.

## General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

- ارجع إلى شرح كيفية الإجابة عن الأسئلة المختلفة فى مقدمة الكتاب
- يوجد تمرينات إضافية للواجب المنزلى فى ملحق الكتاب.

### 1) Complete the following dialogue:

**Ayman is asking Salah about his bedroom.**

Ayman : Do you have a bedroom, Salah?
Salah : ❶ _____.
Ayman : Can you describe it?
Salah : ❷ _____.
Ayman : Where do you put your clothes?
Salah : ❸ _____.
Ayman : ❹ _____?
Salah : I put my books on a bookshelf.
Ayman : ❺ _____?
Salah : Yes, I love it very much.

### 2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Vocabulary**

1. We keep things such as clothes in a _____.
a. mirror b. sofa c. bottle d. chest of drawers

2. Ali closed the door and sat in a/an _____ next to the window.
a. armchair b. basin c. curtain d. mirror



CamScanner

3. We cover the floor of my bedroom with a big .....
a. basin b. carpet c. mirror d. curtain

4. Sally has a lot of clothes, so she has a big .....
a. mirror b. sofa c. wardrobe d. lamp

## Language

5. He learns English quickly because he ..... it a lot.
a. practises b. drives c. keeps d. closes

6. There is a lamp ..... to my bed.
a. behind b. under c. next d. in front

7. The cat is sleeping on a soft ..... on the sofa.
a. basin b. cushion c. drawer d. bookshelf

8. I love ..... photos of animals in the zoo.
a. taking b. to take c. take d. a & b

SB

### 3 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your new penfriend Jessica about yourself.

**- Your name is Nourhan and your email address is nour85@yohoo.com.**

**- Your penfriend's email address is Jessica14@gmail.com**

(محاب عنه فى أخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى:

- What is your name?
- Where do you live?
- What do you like to do?
- What do you do with your parents / friends?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My name is ....
- I live in .....
- It's a nice city..... .
- Every Friday, I .....
- In the evenings, I ...
- My favourite subjects are ..... ,.....
- Thank you for.....



# Unit 1 Review

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| daily | يومى | interview | مقابلة شخصية | large | كبير |
| routine | روتين (نظام متكرر) | way | طريق | terrible | فظيع/بشع |
| sofa | أريكة (كنبة) | poor | فقير | railway line | خط سكة حديد |
| typical | نموذجى (معتاد) | prison | سجن | near | قريب (من) |
| village | قرية | armchair | كرسى بمسندين | nature reserve | محمية طبيعية |
| tap | صنبور (حنفية) | bookshelf | رف للكتب | curtains | ستائر |
| lamp | أباجورة/مصباح | chest of drawers | خزانة ذات أدراج | cushion | وسادة (مخدة) |
| block of flats | عمارة سكنية | basin | حوض | share (d) | يتقاسم.يشارك |
| mirror | مرآة | carpet | سجادة | feed (fed / fed) | يُطعم |
| wardrobe | دولاب (الملابس) | attractive | جذّاب/جميل | text (ed) (n) | يرسل رسالة نصية/رسالة نصية |

## Language

### 1 The present simple tense

- يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من الفعل فى المصدر ويضاف له (s / es / ies) مع المفرد الغائب:

Ex. We go to school early.

Ex. He comes home at 7 o'clock.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات/حقائق/روتين:

Ex. Hamdi always smokes at home.

Ex. Nada is a dentist.

- من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع البسيط:

**always - often - usually - sometimes - occasionally / never / every (day - week - month - year)**

- ننفى الفعل في زمن المضارع البسيط باستخدام (don't / doesn't / never).

Ex. I don't / never play tennis.

- للسؤال عن فعل في زمن المضارع البسيط تستخدم:

**(كلمة استفهام) + do / does + فاعل + inf...?**

Ex. Do you live in Tanta?

Ex. When does he get up?



CamScanner

## 2 Adverbs of frequency

- تستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل:

always (100%) → usually (80%) → often (70%) → sometimes (50%) → never (0%)

- تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى/بعد فعل (be).

Ex. Habiba always sleeps in the afternoons.

- تستخدم (How often ...?) للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث فعل.

Ex. How often do you study in the evenings?

## 3 Questions with (Can) / (Shall) & (Have .... got)

- تستخدم (Can) للسؤال بمعنى (هل من الممكن أن...؟/هل تستطيع أن...؟):

Ex. Can you climb that tree?

- تستخدم (Shall) للسؤال لتقديم العروض/للاقتراح/لطلب النصح:

Ex. Shall I carry your bag? (Offer)

Ex. Shall we go to the zoo? (Suggestion)

Ex. What shall I do when dad arrives? (Asking for advice)

- تذكر أن (Shall) تستخدم غالباً مع الضمائر (I / we) فقط.

- تستخدم (Have / Has.... got) للسؤال بمعنى (هل... تملك/ يملك....؟):

Ex. Have you got a good camera?

## Speaking

### 1 Discussing daily routine

السؤال والاجابة عن الأشخاص

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Do you have the same routine every day of the week? | - Yes, I do. |
| - When do you get up? | - I always get up at 7:00 o'clock. |
| - How do you go to school? | - I always go to school by bus. |
| - What do you do in the evening? | - I sometimes watch TV. |

### 2 Asking and answering about moving to a new house.

- السؤال والاجابة عن الانتقال لمنزل جديد

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - How did you feel when you moved to a new house? | - I felt very sad because the new house was smaller. |





### 3 Describing your bedroom and furniture

وصف حجرة نومك والأثاث الخاص بها

- There is / are _____ in my bedroom.
- I have a big / small _____ in the corner.
- The _____ is/ are on / under / next to / opposite _____

# General Exercises on Unit 1

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Mariam is telling Samah about her daily routine.**

**Samah :** Hello, Mariam. Could you tell me about your daily routine?

**Mariam:** ① _____

**Samah :** When do you usually get up?

**Mariam:** ② _____

**Samah :** ③ _____?

**Mariam:** My mum always makes my breakfast.

**Samah :** ④ _____?

**Mariam:** I always go to school on foot.

**Samah :** When do you usually get home?

**Mariam:** ⑤ _____

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Vocabulary**

1. The opposite of "terrible" is _____ WB
   a. good b. far c. small d. ugly
2. _____ time does Donia's school finish? WB
   a. When b. How c. Where d. What
3. The sofa is next _____ the chest of drawers.
   a. to b. for c. of d. on
4. Roberta's new house is in the country near a railway _____ WB
   a. club b. line c. tree d. classroom
5. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but we can _____ our food. WB
   a. check b. damage c. share d. change
6. Roberta's family home in the city is big and _____. I like going there. WB
   a. little b. ugly c. terrible d. attractive
7. This family do not have much money and now they are _____. WB
   a. happy b. poor c. rich d. excited
8. Roberta feels _____ when some men take their father from their home. WB
   a. terrible b. favourite c. cheap d. exciting



CamScanner

Language

9. ..... you got any English friends? a. Do b. Can c. Have d. Shall
10. Hassan is a clever boy. He ..... gets full marks. a. never b. not c. does d. always
11. **A:** How ..... do you brush your teeth? **B:** Twice every day. a. often b. many c. for d. much
12. ..... you swim across that river? a. Shall b. Have c. Can d. Are
13. Mum never sleeps before she ..... my little sister. a. fed b. feeds c. feed d. feeding
14. Omar and Hani ..... go to school late. a. doesn't b. aren't c. isn't d. never
15. What ..... I do to speak English well? a. shall b. does c. is d. have

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. ..... (Have) Hamada got a laptop?
2. Has Noha ..... (get) an English penfriend?
3. I ..... (go usually) to the club at the weekend.
4. Ali is a lazy student. He ..... (always) gets up early.
5. All teachers like Gehad because she is ..... (never) polite.
6. **A:** How ..... (much) do you go to school? **B:** Five times a week.

WB

**4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"What you and your family usually do in the holidays" (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Where do you usually go in the holidays?
- Do you have a routine in the holidays?
- How do you like to spend your time in the holidays?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- In the holidays, I get up ....
- I always help .....
- We usually go to.....
- In the evening, I.....



# Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

**1- My daily routine/ What do I do every day?** (Lessons 1 & 2)

My daily routine is the same every day. I like getting up early. I always get up at 6 in the morning. My mum always makes our breakfast. I have a shower. I put on my school uniform. I always go to school by bus. My parents work at the nearby hospital. They get home late. I often help to make dinner. In the evening, I do my homework. I always go to bed at 9.

**2- My new house** (Lessons 3 & 4)

**To** : john55@gmail.com
**From** : omar22@yahoo.com
**Subject** : My new house

Dear John,

How are you and your family? We moved in a new house last week. It's a big house with a garden. It's near my school. It has five rooms. I have a big bedroom with a bathroom. It has a big window looking at the garden. The house has a big gate and a garage. I hope you can write to me soon.

Best wishes

Yours,

Omar

**3- About myself** (Lessons 5 & 6)

**To** : jessica14@gmail.com
**From** : nour85@yohoo.com.

Dear Jessica,

It is nice to write to you. My name is Nourhan. I'm from Ismailia, in Egypt. It's a nice city on the Red Sea. Every Friday, I play tennis with my friends. In the evenings, I go shopping with my mother. My favourite subjects are English and science. Thank you for being my penfriend. I hope to hear from you soon,

Yours,

Nourhan

**4- What I and my family usually do in the holidays** (General Exercises)

There are five people in my family: me, mum, dad and my two brothers. We don't usually have a routine in the holidays. I get up at 11. My mum is a housewife. I always help her make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad is a dentist. He usually takes us to a nearby park. We have fun when we go there. We have lunch and take a lot of selfies there. We go home at about four o'clock.

**5- What I do every day** (Al Azhar)

I always get up at 6 in the morning. My mum always makes our breakfast. I have a shower and put on my school uniform. I always go to school by bus. In the evening, I do my homework.

**6- A description of my bedroom** (Test)

I like my bedroom. When I get up, I open the curtains. My bed is under the window. I have a big wardrobe in front of the bed. There is also a sofa next to the window. I always read books on it. I put my things in a big chest of drawers. I don't have a basin in my bedroom. The bathroom is next to my room. It has a big mirror.



CamScanner

Unit 1

# Al Azhar Test

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker has a ..... routine.
   a. simple  b. hard  c. fast  d. slow
2. The speaker wants to be a/an .....
   a. doctor  b. teacher  c. scientist  d. farmer

## B Language Functions

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1- Mustafa: What do you usually do in the holidays?
Emad : .....
2- Yasmin: .....?
Mariam : There are five people: me, Mum, Dad and my two brothers.

## C Usage

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The internet is really important in our ..... life.
   a. dairy  b. daily  c. dear  d. diary
2. A: Where is the post office, please?
   B: It's ..... the bank.
   a. next  b. in front  c. opposite  d. under
3. What ..... we do to help poor people?
   a. shall  b. has  c. are  d. have
4. My mother always ..... her clothes herself.
   a. making  b. make  c. to make  d. makes
5. We usually keep books on .....
   a. wardrobes  b. bookshelves
   c. chest of drawers  d. fridges
6. Have you ..... a pet at home?
   a. got  b. getting  c. get  d. gets





## D Reading Comprehension

**4 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

I always get up at 7 o'clock in the morning. I wash my face and brush my teeth. After that, I do some exercises then I put my clothes on and prepare my school bag. At 8 o'clock, I go to school and start my first class. I return home at 2 pm. I go to the bathroom to have a shower. I do my homework. I help my mother in the kitchen. Then, I have a snack. I usually have dinner at about 8 pm. I watch TV with my family and check my mail with my sister. Finally, I go to bed at 10 pm.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What does the writer do when he/ she gets up?
   .....
2. When does the writer start his/her first class?
   .....
3. What does the writer do in the kitchen?
   .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The writer gets up at ..... o'clock in the morning.
   a. five  b. seven  c. six  d. eight
5. The writer helps his mother in the ..... .
   a. farm  b. garden  c. kitchen  d. class

## E Writing

**5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"What do you do every day?"

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you have a daily routine?
- Who makes your breakfast?
- Do you like getting up early?
- What do you do in the morning?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I get up at .....
- I go to school by .....
- I always go to bed at.....
- I have a shower and I .....
- In the evening, I watch.....



CamScanner

# Unit 1 TEST

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The specker's grandmother and ..... live in Alex.
   a. grandfather b. father c. mother d. sister
2. They live next to the .....
   a. river b. lake c. beach d. mountain
3. They have a beautiful .....
   a. car b. bus c. taxi d. house
4. It takes the speaker ..... hours to go to Alex.
   a. eleven b. three c. nine d. ten

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Salma is asking Dina about her city.**

Salma : Where are you from?

Dina : 1 .....

Salma : Is El Fayoum a beautiful city?

Dina : 2 .....

Salma : 3 ..... ?

Dina : I live with my parents and my brothers.

Salma : 4 ..... ?

Dina : My favourite subjects are maths and English.

Salma : Nice to meet you.

Dina : 5 .....





## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

- ارجع الى شرح كيفية الاجابة عن قطعة الفهم في مقدمة الكتاب.

I am Aya. My bedroom is wide and bright. I keep it clean and tidy because it is my favourite room in the house. Its walls are white and the floor is brown. On the floor, there is a big blue carpet. I have two sofas, a table and an armchair. I also have a small chest of drawers where I put my clothes. I enjoy reading so there is a bookshelf with many books on it. On the bookshelf, there is a vase with a small plant and an old clock.

There are two windows and both of them have got lovely curtains, I made them myself. I like to read and have a rest in my bedroom. It's warm and comfortable.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What does Aya like to do in her bedroom?

.....

3. Where does Aya put her clothes?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .....
   a. vase b. carpet c. bookshelf d. armchair
5. Aya's favourite room in the house is the .....
   a. kitchen b. bedroom c. living room d. dining room
6. There is a big ..... carpet on the floor.
   a. yellow b. white c. black d. blue

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Roberta's father left ....., and the family were happy to be together again. WB
   a. museum b. prison c. bed d. mosque
2. There are many ..... of flats in the new city.
   a. breaks b. backs c. books d. blocks
3. Hassan always gets ..... early.
   a. up b. at c. out d. in



CamScanner

4. Can you ..... my mother for me, because my phone is not working? WB
   a. break b. listen c. text d. read
5. ..... you got a mobile? I need to send a message.
   a. Has b. Does c. Do d. Have
6. ..... often do you help to make dinner?
   a. Why b. How c. When d. Who
7. Mr Hossam is a good teacher. He ..... works hard.
   a. never b. doesn't c. don't d. always
8. Hassan is really kind. He ..... his toys with his friends.
   a. checks b. happens c. shares d. cleans
9. Your village is warm and clean. It is really .....
   a. ugly b. attractive c. terrible d. dirty
10. We do the same things every day when we're on holiday, because my family like to have a ..... . WB
    a. routine b. line c. subject d. season

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. What ..... (have) we do next weekend?
2. My parents have ..... (get) two cars.
3. Saad ..... (usually is) quiet.
4. Fatma ..... (always study) in the evenings.

## Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:** WB

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"A description of your bedroom"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you like your bedroom?
- Where is the wardrobe?
- Does it have windows?
- Where do you put your clothes?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My bedroom is .....
- My bed is .....
- It has .....
- I put my clothes in.....



Prep. 2

New Hello!



# UNIT 2

# How are you feeling?

## Objectives

**Reading:**
A text about night workers; descriptions of weekend activities; an article about happiness for teenagers; an informal email

**Writing:**
an email to a friend

**Listening:**
People talking about learning new skills; descriptions of photos

**Speaking:**
Describing weekend activities; describing photos; responding to news

**Language:**
Adverbs of manner

**Life Skills:**
Empathy

**Values:**
Patience

**Issues:**
Social participation

SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب



CamScanner

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 12-15 WB pages 79-80

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| food stall | كشك لبيع الطعام | painting the kitchen | دهان المطبخ |
| ward | عنبر (فى مستشفى) | sewing | الحياطة |
| deaf | أصم (أطرش) | communicate (d) | يتواصل |
| make (made) sure | يتأكد | park (ed) (n) | يركن (مركبة) - منتزه |
| calligraphy | فن خط اليد | look (ed) forward to | يتطلع إلى |
| sign language | لغة الإشارة | repair (ed) | يُصلح |

### Jobs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| call-centre worker | عامل مركز اتصالات | nurse | ممرضة |
| computer engineer | مهندس كمبيوتر | police officer | ضابط شرطة |
| shop worker | عامل فى محل | cook | طاهى - طاهية |
| street-food seller | بائع طعام متجول | artist | فنان |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| patient | شخص مريض | neighbour | جار |
| a bit | قليلاً - إلى حد ما | lovely | مُحبب/جميل |
| skill | مهارة | fountain | نافورة مياه |
| computer system | نظام كمبيوتر | keyboard | لوحة المفاتيح |
| quite | الى حد ما/الى حد كبير | tin | علبة |
| fantastic | رائع | sail (ed) | يُبحر |
| lazy | كسول | climb (ed) | يتسلق |
| surprise | مفاجأة | text (ed) | يرسل رسالة نصية |
| art club | نادى الفنون | | |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| have a rest | يستريح | look after | يعتنى بـ |
| drive around the city | يقود سيارة حول المدينة | communicate with | يتواصل مع |
| come this way | يأتون من هذا الطريق | wave to | يلوّح بيده لـ |





| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| get everything ready | يُجهز كل شئ | sit by | يجلس بجوار |
| give ... a surprise | يفاجئ... | excited about | متشوق بخصوص |
| feel tired / cold / ill | يشعر بالتعب/بالبرد/بالمرض | as a present | كهدية |
| make dinner | يُعد العشاء | spend time with | يقضى وقت مع |
| clean the house | ينظف المنزل | do homework | يقوم بعمل الواجب المدرسى |
| stay in bed | يبقى فى الفراش | sew new curtains | يخيط ستائر جديدة |
| go on a school trip | يذهب في رحلة مدرسية | | |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| drive | يقود سيارة | drove | driven |
| hurt | يؤذى - يجرح | hurt | hurt |
| wear | يرتدى | wore | worn |
| sew | يخيط | sewed | sewn |
| stand | يقف | stood | stood |

| Word | Meaning | | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| busy | مشغول (للمكان) | crowded | empty | فارغ |
| lazy | كسول | inactive | active | نشيط |
| safe | آمن | secured | dangerous | خطير |

## Definitions

| | |
|---|---|
| **food stall**<br>كشك لبيع الطعام | a large table or open shop on the street where people cook and sell food |
| **street-food seller**<br>بائع طعام متجول | this person prepares[1] food for people to eat in the streets, sometimes from a van or stall |
| **police officer**<br>ضابط شرطة | - a male[2] or female[3] member of the police<br>- this person helps to keep people safe in the streets |
| **call-centre worker**<br>عامل مركز اتصالات | - a person who works in a big office in which people speak to customers[4] on the phone<br>- this person speaks to people on the phone. He or she helps them with their problems. |

١- يجهز/يعد
٢- ذكر
٣- انثى
٤- زبائن



CamScanner

| | |
|---|---|
| **shop worker** عامل فى محل | this person helps in a place which sells things |
| **computer engineer** مهندس كمبيوتر | - a person who mends or works with computers<br>- you call this person if there is a problem with your computer system |
| **calligraphy** فن خط اليد | beautiful writing using special pens or brushes[5] |
| **sign language** لغة الإشارة | a way of talking to people who cannot hear, using hands instead of[6] words |
| **communicate** يتواصل | share information with others by speaking, writing or in other ways |
| **ward** عنبر (فى مستشفى) | a large room in a hospital for people who need to stay in the hospital for one night or more |
| **park (ed)** يركن (مركبة) | put a car, lorry, van, etc. in a place where it can stay for a period[7] of time |
| **deaf** اصم | not able to hear anything or not able to hear well |

٥- فرشات
٦- بدلاً من
٧- فترة

## Language Notes

### ① look forward to

**look forward to** يتطلع إلى **+ V-ing / Noun**

Ex. I'm looking forward to going home.

Ex. Hassan is feeling hungry. He is looking forward to breakfast!

### ② everyone - everything

- تعتبر **everyone** ضمير غير محدد ويأتى بعدها فعلاً مفرداً ويعوض عنها بضمير جمع (they, them ..):

Ex. Everyone at the party was happy. They enjoyed so much.

- تعتبر **everything** ضمير عدد محدد ويأتى بعدها فعلاً مفرداً ويعوض عنها بالضمير ( ):

Ex. Everything is ready. I'm sure it will work well.





### ③ Adjectives ending in (-ed) or (-ing)

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ **-ed** والصفات المنتهية بـ **-ing** لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.
- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (-ing) إلي من/ما يسبب الصفة:

Ex. The work here is really tiring. (مُتعِب - يسبب التعب)

- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (-ed) إلي أن الموصوف يشعر أو لديه هذه الصفة:

Ex. Hassan is feeling tired tonight. (مُتعَب - يشعر بالتعب)

من أمثلة هذه الصفات :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| frightened | خائف | frightening | مخيف |
| bored | متضجر/شاعر بالملل | boring | ممل |
| interested | متشوق/مهتم | interesting | شيق/ممتع |
| amazed | مندهش | amazing | مدهش |
| excited | متحمس | exciting | مثير |

## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I'm feeling hungry. I'm looking forward _____ lunch.
   a. have b. to having c. having d. to have
2. Everyone in my class _____ kind.
   a. is b. are c. were d. be
3. My grandmother's stories are very _____. We like them very much.
   a. interest b. interested c. interests d. interesting

## Reading

SB Page (13)

استمع إلى النصوص



### 3 am in Cairo

A I'm looking after patients[1] at a hospital. It's very busy. I'm looking after children in the children's ward*[2]. I like my job, but I'm feeling tired[3] tonight. I'm looking forward to[4] going home and having a rest[5].

Amal

١- مرضى
٢- عنبر
٣- مُتعب
٤- يتطلع إلى
٥- راحة



CamScanner

**B** We're driving around the city and making sure[6] that people are safe in the streets. We aren't very busy tonight. It's cold so everyone is staying at home. Adel's feeling a bit[7] bored[8] and I'm feeling hungry. I'm looking forward to breakfast!

**Emad and Adel**

**C** I'm parking[9] my food stall*[10] here because it's the best place in the city. Lots of people and tourists come this way. People start to buy their breakfast at 6 am. I'm getting everything ready. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking forward to drinking some hot coffee!

**Kamal**

٦- يتأكد
٧- إلى حد ما
٨- متضجر
٩- يركن (سيارة)
١٠- كشك لبيع الطعام

**Say it correctly**

* ward
* stall

ينطق حرف a فى هذه الكلمات مثلما ينطق فى كلمة saw

SB Page (14)

Hi. I'm Ziad. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat[1] in Minya. At the weekend, I'm usually quite lazy[2].



On Friday evening, my parents and I usually have a big dinner[3] with my grandparents and we sometimes stay at their house. It's bigger than our flat.

On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed and then I have a late breakfast[4] with grandmother - she's a fantastic cook[5]! In the afternoon, I do my homework.

***

Hello, I'm Injy and this is my sister Aya. We live near the sea. My father and my uncle have an old boat[6] which they are repairing[7]. I am learning to sail[8] but Aya doesn't like the water very much!

At the weekend, we do our homework and on Saturday we sometimes spend time with our father and uncle on their boat.

١- شقة
٢- كسول
٣- عشاء
٤- إفطار متأخر
٥- طاهية
٦- قارب
٧- يصلح
٨- يُبحر





# Audioscript

SB Page (15)

**Tamer** : I'm Tamer. At the moment, I'm learning a new skill[1]. I'm learning sign* language[2] so I can communicate[3] better with my cousin Sami. Sami is deaf[4] - he can't hear. He's learning sign language at school too. I'm having sign language lessons on Saturday morning so I can give Sami a surprise[5]!



**Eman** : I'm Eman. At the weekend, I'm learning to do lots of new things. Our neighbour, Mr Osman, is in hospital at the moment. With some other neighbours in our building, we're repairing his flat. He lives in a lovely[6] flat, but he can't look after it at the moment. My sisters and I are painting the kitchen and I am also sewing[7] some new curtains.



**Manal** : I'm Manal. Mona and I are starting a calligraphy[8] and art club[9] at school. We're very excited about it. My uncle is an artist[10] and he's coming to the school to teach us. We're studying traditional Arabic calligraphy and we're enjoying it very much. I'm making a calligraphy book for my uncle as a present[11].



١- مهارة
٢- لغة الإشارة
٣- يتواصل
٤- أصم (أطرش)
٥- مفاجأة
٦- جميل
٧- يخيط
٨- فن خط اليد
٩- نادى الفنون
١٠- فنان
١١- هدية

**Say it correctly**

* sign

لا ينطق حرف g فى هذه الكلمة

WB Page (79)

**Man 1** : I'm sorry, sir, but you can't leave your car here. (police officer)

**Woman 1** : There seems to be a problem with the keyboard[1], but it won't take me long. (computer engineer)

**Woman 2** : Good morning, this is Dina speaking, how can I help you? (call-centre worker)

**Man 2** : Are you looking for[2] tins of beans[3]? You can find them on the top shelf,[4] over there. (shop worker)

١- لوحة المفاتيح
٢- يبحث عن
٣- علب فول
٤- رف



CamScanner

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. You call a ..... if there is a problem with your computer system. SB
   a. police officer b. shop worker c. nurse d. computer engineer
2. I'm ..... my food stall here because it is the best place in the city. SB
   a. flying b. parking c. barking d. doing
3. A ..... helps to keep people safe in the streets. SB
   a. street-food seller b. nurse c. police officer d. computer engineer
4. A/An ..... speaks to people on the phone. He/She helps them with their problems. SB
   c. doctor b. call-centre worker c. computer engineer d. nurse
5. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking ..... drinking some hot coffee. SB
   a. forward to b. after c. up d. for
6. A ..... helps in a place which sells things. SB
   a. teacher b. farmer c. shop worker d. police officer
7. A/An ..... prepares food for people to eat in the streets. SB
   a. street-food seller b. shop worker c. doctor d. engineer
8. How often do you ..... dinner? WB
   a. do b. make c. harm d. repair
9. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use ..... language. WB
   a. sight b. signal c. seen d. sign
10. A ..... person is a person who can't hear.
    a. blind b. deaf c. weak d. strong
11. Nurses look ..... patients in their rooms.
    a. up b. like c. after d. forward to





12. My mother likes to make her own clothes by herself. She likes .....
    a. sewing b. sawing c. swimming d. reading
13. Our TV is broken. Can you ..... it?
    a. play b. repair c. make d. do

### Bit by Bit Exercises

14. ..... sure all doors and windows are closed before you go out.
    a. Do b. Make c. Have d. Take
15. **A:** Where is the new nurse?
    **B:** In the ..... in the 2nd floor of the hospital.
    a. zoo b. bank c. ward d. word
16. I'm feeling really tired today. Why don't you ..... a rest?
    a. make b. have c. fill d. drive
17. You should join a ..... club if you want to write beautifully.
    a. sports b. medicine c. computer d. calligraphy
18. The guide communicates ..... tourists in English.
    a. with b. in c. to d. about

## Language

**Remember:** تذكـــر:

**1- The present continuous tense** زمن المضارع المستمر

**Form** التكوين

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | | am | + V-ing. |
| He / She / It / | اسم مفرد | is | |
| You / We / They / | اسم جمع | are | |

Ex. I am working today.

Ex. They are watching TV now.



CamScanner

**Notes**

كيف يُضاف للفعل ing :

١- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك تضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة (ing) (مع بعض الأفعال ذو المقطع الواحد):

sit → sitting  tap → tapping

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) غير منطوق يحذف الـ (e) ثم تضاف (ing) إلى الفعل:

use → using  make → making

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) منطوق لا تحذف عند إضافة (ing):

see → seeing  be → being

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (ie) تحول إلى (y) عند إضافة (ing):

lie → lying  die → dying

## Usage الاستخدام

١- للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (فى وقت الكلام)

Ex. I am sitting in my English class.

٢- للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام):

Ex. My sister is learning to dance.

٣- للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة:

Ex. They are painting the school this week.

٤- للتعبير عن أحداث مرتب لها فى المستقبل:

Ex. Tomorrow, my dad is taking the train to Tanta.

## Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Look! | انظر! | Look out! | احترس! | still | مازال |
| Listen! | استمع! | at the moment | فى هذه اللحظة | now | الآن |
| Watch out! | احترس! | at present | فى الوقت الحاضر | | |

## Negative النفى

• لنفى فعل فى زمن المضارع المستمر نستخدم (not) بعد (am / is / are) كما يلى:

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + V-ing.

Ex. You are not working hard, Ali.





## Question السؤال

• نسأل عن فعل في زمن المضارع المستمر بالصيغة الآتية:

١- للسؤال بـ «هل» Yes / No question

Am → I
Is → he - she - it / فاعل مفرد غائب
Are → we - you - they / فاعل جمع
} + (V-ing.)...?

Ex. Is your mother working?
- Yes, she is.
- No, she isn't.

٢- للسؤال بكلمة استفهام Wh-question نضع كلمة الاستفهام قبل الصيغة السابقة:

Ex. What is your father doing?
Ex. He is reading the newspaper.

**Notes**

• بعض الأفعال لا تستخدم عادةً فى زمن المضارع المستمر ولكن تستخدم فى زمن المضارع البسيط مثل:

love يحب - like يحب - have يملك - want يريد - need يحتاج - cost يكلف

Ex. I want to see Ali now.

**Know the difference**

| | Present simple | Present continuous |
|---|---|---|
| Form | I / We / They / You + inf.<br>He / She / It + verb + s | I → am + V-ing.<br>He / She / It → is + V-ing.<br>We / They / You → are + V-ing. |
| Usage | - للتعبير عن حقائق وعادات وأفعال روتينية | - للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (فى وقت الكلام)<br>- للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة.<br>- للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهى بعد. |
| Keywords | every - always - usually - often - sometimes - occasionally - never | Look! - Listen! - Look out! - Watch out!- at the moment - now - today - at present - these day |
| Negative | don't / doesn't + inf. | am / is / are } not + V-ing. |
| Question | Do/ Does + فاعل + inf.? (كلمة استفهام) | Am/Is/Are + فاعل + V-ing? (كلمة استفهام) |



CamScanner

**Notes**

- النمط التالي شائع الاستخدام ويجمع بين زمني المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر:
  Ex Hossam usually works at home, but today he is working in his office.
- في الجزء الأول من الجملة نتحدث عن عادة دائمة فاستخدمنا زمن المضارع البسيط أما في الجزء الثاني فنتحدث عن حدث مؤقت فاستخدمنا زمن المضارع المستمر.

## Exercises on Language

### ① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. I usually ..... to school by bus, but today I am walking. SB
   a. go b. goes c. went d. going
2. Why is Amal ..... tired? SB
   a. feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling
3. Fady ..... a jacket today because it is very hot. WB
   a. is wearing b. isn't wearing c. wears d. wear
4. Basel usually repairs computers, but today he ..... his grandparents. WB
   a. visiting b. visits c. visit d. is visiting
5. Why ..... Hoda waving to those girls? WB
   a. am b. are c. is d. can
6. The police officer ..... to another officer. They move quickly to catch the thief. WB
   a. talks b. is talking c. are talking d. talk
7. The street-food seller usually makes falafel, but he ..... cheese sandwiches this morning. WB
   a. is selling b. sells c. sell d. are selling
8. Sama ..... a new skill at the moment. بني سويف - ناصر 2023
   a. learnt b. learn c. is learning d. learns

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

9. Farida always ..... a white blouse.
   a. wear b. is wearing c. wearing d. wears
10. Hassan is busy. He ..... the kitchen now.
    a. paints b. is painting c. paint d. are painting





11. The train is never late. It always ..... on time.
    a. leave b. is leaving c. left d. leaves
12. That computer ..... much money. I can't buy it.
    a. costing b. costs c. is costing d. are costing
13. Camels always ..... much water.
    a. drinks b. are drinking c. drink d. is drinking
14. **A:** How often does Sara ..... the house?
    **B:** Every day.
    a. is cleaning b. cleaning c. clean d. cleans
15. The children ..... now.
    a. sleep b. were sleeping c. is sleeping d. are sleeping
16. Hala is a clever girl. She always ..... her mother with the housework.
    a. helping b. is helping c. helps d. help
17. Hanan usually studies at home, but today she ..... at her aunt's office.
    a. is studying b. studies c. studying d. study
18. Marwa ..... lunch at the moment.
    a. cook b. is cooking c. are cooking d. cooks
19. Listen! The children ..... outside.
    a. play b. plays c. are playing d. played
20. I ..... to go out now. I am really busy.
    a. am not liking b. am not liked c. doesn't like d. don't like

### ② Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. Manal and Mona ..... (studies) calligraphy every day. SB
2. How often do you ..... (made) dinner? WB
3. What game is Osama ..... (play) on the computer? WB
4. My brother ..... (play) football at the moment. شرق كفر الشيخ 2023

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

5. The boys ..... (study). Keep quiet.
6. Look out! A car ..... (comes) fast.



CamScanner

7. Mona ..... (is watching) TV now; she is sleeping.
8. ..... (Is) your parents sitting on the sofa at the moment?
9. The water ..... (boils). Can you turn the gas off?
10. Listen to Amr. What language ..... (be) he speaking?
11. Look! That man ..... (tries) to open the door of your car.
12. The children ..... (are drinking) milk every morning.
13. Why ..... (be) everyone staying at home?
14. You must go up the stairs. They ..... (repair) the lift.

## Speaking

### Describing weekend activities

وصف أنشطة فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

**- What do you usually do at the weekend?** ماذا تفعل عادة فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

تجيب عن هذا السؤال بذكر الأنشطة التى تقوم بها فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع كالآتى:

- At the weekend, I usually get up early.

فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، عادة استيقظ مبكرًا.

- At the weekend, I do my homework.

فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، أقوم بعمل واجبى المنزلى.

- On Friday evenings, my parents and I usually have a big dinner.

فى مساء أيام الجمع، نتناول أنا ووالدى عادة وجبة عشاء كبيرة.

- On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed. / I have a late breakfast.

فى صباح أيام السبت، غالبًا أظل فى الفراش/أتناول فطارًا متأخر.





# General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Ziad and Aya are talking about their weekends.**

**Ziad** : Hi Aya. What do you usually do at the weekend?
**Aya** : ① ..... What about you?
**Ziad** : I do many things.
**Aya** : ② .....?
**Ziad** : Yes, I usually do my homework at the weekend.
**Aya** : ③ .....?
**Ziad** : On Saturday evening, I have a late breakfast with my grandparents.
**Aya** : How do you usually enjoy your time at the weekend?
**Ziad** : ④ ..... Do you do that, too?
**Aya** : ⑤ .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. Hamada never likes to work. He is really .....
a. careful b. helpful c. active d. lazy

2. We need a computer engineer to ..... our computer because it doesn't work. WB
a. damage b. hurt c. repair d. break

3. The ..... helped me to buy a T-shirt.
a. police officer b. shop worker
c. nurse d. computer engineer

4. The doctor is examining many ..... today.
a. diseases b. illnesses c. patients d. medicines

5. Fatma is deaf, she can use ..... language. القليوبية-كفر شكر 2022
a. signal b. sign c. happy d. sad

6. Soha always helps her mother to ..... dinner. قنا-نقادة 2023
a. text b. do c. park d. make

### Language

7. She usually ..... the newspaper in the morning.
a. read b. is reading c. reads d. are reading



CamScanner

8. Mum and Dad ..... tea now.
   a. drink  b. drinking  c. are drinking  d. drinks
9. Farmers usually ..... animals in the field.
   a. use  b. are using  c. uses  d. is using
10. Mrs Hossam ..... a course at the moment.
    a. take  b. is taking  c. are taking  d. takes
11. Look! The horse ..... over the fence.
    a. is jumping  b. jumps  c. was jumping  d. jump

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. He ..... (writes) a letter to his penfriend at the moment.
2. Hassan ..... (not like) spaghetti.
3. Gamila ..... (going) to work on foot every day.
4. **A:** You ..... (work) hard today.
   **B:** Yes, I have a lot to do.
5. We can't go outside because it ..... (rains) now.
6. Doaa ..... (want) to study abroad.

**4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:** WB

"Different people in your family"

مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What are they doing at the moment?
- What do they usually do?
- What are they wearing?
- How do you think they are feeling?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- They are doing.....
- They usually.....
- They are wearing.....
- They are feeling.....



# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 16 - 18 WB pages 81-82

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| wedding | حفل زفاف | guest | ضيف |
| suitcase | حقيبة سفر | striped | مخطط |
| airport | مطار | grateful | ممتن (شاكر) |
| alone | بمفرده | teenager | مراهق |
| sharp | حاد | normal | طبيعي/معتاد |

### Adverbs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| carefully | بحرص | quietly | بهدوء |
| excitedly | بحماس | lazily | بكسل |
| happily | بسعادة | quickly | بسرعة |
| hungrily | بنهم/بشراهة | easily | بسهولة |
| loudly | بصوت عال | slowly | ببطء |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| port | ميناء | weeding | إزالة النباتات الضارة |
| hill | تل | playground | ملعب - فناء |
| crowd | حشد من الناس | sweet | جميل/حلو |
| shopping bag | حقيبة تسوق | skin | جلد - بشرة |
| husband | زوج | invite (d) | يدعو |
| nature | الطبيعة | treat (ed) | يعامل |
| suit | بدلة | continue (d) | يستمر |
| happiness | سعادة | relax (ed) | يسترخى |
| hanging | مُعلَّق | try (ied) | يجرب - يحاول |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| take a selfie | يلتقط صورة سيلفى | have a rest | ياخذ راحة |
| as usual | كالمعتاد | smile at | يبتسم لـ |
| get married | يتزوج | do well | يبلي بلاءً حسناً |
| get worried about | يتوتر/يقلق بخصوص | get on a plane | يصعد إلى طائرة |
| catch a plane | يلحق بطائرة | for the first time | لأول مرة |
| in the foreground | فى المقدمة | down a hill | أسفل تل |
| in the background | فى الخلفية | feel pleased about | يشعر بسرور بخصوص |
| in the middle of.... | فى وسط.... | (be) grateful for | كن ممنون لـ |
| on the right / left | على اليمين/اليسار | towards the right / left | ناحية اليمين/اليسار |



CamScanner

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| buy | يشترى | bought | bought |
| sell | يبيع | sold | sold |
| hang | يعلق | hung | hung |
| fly | يطير | flew | flown |
| win | يفوز | won | won |

| Word | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sharp | حاد | blunt | غير حاد |
| light | فاتح | dark | غامق |
| carefully | بحرص | carelessly | بإهمال |
| normal | طبيعي | abnormal | غير طبيعي |

## Definitions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| wedding | حفل زفاف | a ceremony in which people get married | ١- مراسم |
| striped | مخطط | with long narrow lines of colour that are a different colour from the ones next to them | ٢- خطوط |
| background | خلفية | the part that seems furthest to you in a picture or photograph | ٣- مناطق |
| foreground | مقدمة | the part that seems nearest to you in a picture or photograph | ٤- يبدو |
| teenager | مراهق | a boy or girl aged 13-19 | ٥- أبعد |
| normal | طبيعي - معتاد | usual, not different | ٦- في سن |
| alone | بمفرده | not with other people | ٧- معتاد |
| grateful | ممتن - شكر | feeling happy about the good things in your life | ٨- البشر |
| nature | الطبيعة | everything in the world that is not made by humans | |

## Language Notes

### 1) elder - eldest

• كلا الكلمتان تستخدمان خصوصًا بين أفراد العائلة الواحدة.

- تستخدم **elder** بمعنى (أكبر سنًا) للمقارنة بين أعمار شخصين. لاحظ أن **elder** لا يتبعها **than** بعكس **older**.

Ex. Hamdy is my elder brother.

- تستخدم **eldest** للتفضيل بين أعمار أكثر من شخص بمعنى (الأكبر سنًا).

Ex. My eldest sister is sitting next to the tree.





### 2) It + be + adj. + to + inf.

Ex. It's important to drive carefully.

• يستخدم هذا الأسلوب لوصف حدث معين.

Ex. It's important for Mahmoud to drive carefully.

• يمكن استخدام (الشخص) بعد الصفة لتحديد الشخص: **for**

Ex. It's important not to drive carelessly.

• عند النفي يمكن أن نضيف **not** قبل **to**:

### 3) in + a piece of clothes

• **In the striped shirt = who is wearing the striped shirt**

Ex. The man in the striped shirt is my uncle.

• يستخدم هذا الأسلوب بمعنى (يرتدي):

### 4) else

• تستخدم كلمة **(else)** بمعنى (آخر) بعد كلمات تبدأ (**some / every / any / no**) مثل:

**someone / everyone / anything / nothing**

Ex. A: Two cups of tea, please. B: Anything else?

• تستخدم كلمة **(else)** بمعنى (آخر) بعد بعض كلمات الاستفهام مثل:

**What / Who**

Ex. Who else was at the party?

### 5) make

• **make** + مفعول (اسم أو ضمير) + **inf.** بجعل

Ex. Running makes me feel better.

• **make** + مفعول (اسم أو ضمير) + **adj.** بجعل

Ex. The news made Hossam happy.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I have two brothers. My ..... brother is a computer engineer.
   a. elder b. older than c. as old d. old
2. It's necessary ..... a jacket when it's very cold.
   a. wear b. wearing c. to wearing d. to wear
3. The woman ..... the green dress is my aunt.
   a. for b. in c. on d. into
4. Here's what you want. Do you want anything .....?
   a. else b. also c. as d. much
5. Sleeping for a long time makes me ..... lazy.
   a. to feel b. feeling c. to feeling d. feel



CamScanner

# Audioscript

SB Page (16)

استمع إلى النصوص



Girl 1: This is a photo of my sister's wedding[1]. It's at the end of the day and the guests[2] are slowly leaving. Most of the family are still there, though[3], and still enjoying the party. That's my sister smiling happily at the camera and the man next to her is Youssif, her husband[4].



**Boy 1:** That's my class on our school trip to the mountains. We're sitting carefully on the rocks because they are very sharp![5]. We got up at 5 o'clock in the morning and walked for hours and hours. You can't see me in this picture. I'm sitting under a tree and hungrily[6] eating my lunch.



Boy 2: This is me at the airport[7]. I'm waiting excitedly[8] to get on a plane for the first time! My family were with me but you can't see them because my sister is taking the photo while my parents are quickly buying some sandwiches for us to eat on the plane.



Girl 2: This is my aunt's new baby. Isn't she sweet[9]? She is laughing loudly[10] in this picture because she can see my aunt's cat. She always laughs when she sees this cat - she thinks it's very funny[11].

١- حفل زفاف
٢- ضيوف
٣- بالرغم من ذلك
٤- زوج
٥- حاد
٦- بنهم/بشراهة
٧- مطار
٨- بحماس
٩- جميل
١٠- بصوت عال
١١- مضحك

SB Page (17)

Girl: This is a photo of my family in Al Azhar Park[1] in Cairo. My mother and my sisters are sitting under a tree in the foreground[2] of the photo. In the background[3], you can see the Umm al-Sultan Shaban Mosque[4]. The tree is towards the right[5] of the photo and my eldest sister Reem is sitting in front of it. Our mother is behind her - we can't see her face. My middle sister Tala is in the middle[6] of the picture. She is taking a selfie - of course[7]! Our aunt is behind them, down the hill and on the left[8]. I think she is getting ready to take a photo, too.



١- حديقة الأزهر
٢- في مقدمة
٣- في الخلفية
٤- مسجد أم السلطان شعبان
٥- ناحية اليمين
٦- في وسط....
٧- كالمعتاد
٨- على اليسار





# Reading

SB Page (18)

استمع إلى النصوص

## Happiness for teenagers

It's normal[1] to get worried or to feel sad sometimes - but what helps teenagers[2] to feel happy? We found five things that can help.

**1. Get lots of rest[3]**

Teenagers often don't sleep enough[4], but this is a time in your life when you need a lot of sleep. Young people who sleep eight to ten hours a night are much happier!

**2. Be friendly[5]**

It's good to be alone[6] sometimes, but people need people. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes teenagers happy.

**3. Go outside**

People need nature[7] to be happy. Go to the desert[8] or the river[9] or, if you live in the city, go to a park.

**4. Help someone**

When you do something kind for someone else[10], this makes you feel happy, too. Try[11] it! You feel really good.

**5. Be grateful[12]**

One of the best ways to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel pleased[13] about them.

١- عادياً
٢- مراهقون
٣- راحة
٤- بشكل كافٍ
٥- ودود
٦- بمفردك
٧- الطبيعة
٨- صحراء
٩- نهر
١٠- آخر
١١- يجرب
١٢- ممتن
١٣- مسرور

SB Page (82)

## New Message

**Dear Help! Magazine**

I am a normal teenager but I often feel worried[1] about things. Every day, I stay at home and do my homework. Then I get texts[2] from my friends and they say they are all doing exciting[3] things! What am I doing wrong?

I do well[4] at school and I enjoy my weekends with my family. We often go to the park or the beach, but I sometimes think that my friends are having a better time than me. Please can you help me?

**Yours, Osama!**

١- قلق
٢- رسائل نصية
٣- مثير
٤- أقضي بلاء حسنا



CamScanner

Dear Osama

Thank you for writing to us and yes, we will try to help you. It is normal to think that other people are doing more exciting things than you, but remember[5]: you are wrong![6] Your friends probably feel worried, just like you.

When you go to the park or the beach, do you send photos to your friends? They probably[7] think YOU are having a better[8] time than they are! Remember that we all work and relax[9] at different times[10].

Be grateful for the good things in your life and continue[11] to work hard!

Yours truly, Help! Magazine.

Send

٥- تذكر
٦- مخطئ
٧- محتمل
٨- افضل
٩- يسترخى
١٠- أوقات مختلفة
١١- يستمر

## Videoscript

SB Page (18)

Cities are very busy places. Lots of people live and work in them and there is always lots of traffic[1] and noise. This makes some people feel worried and unhappy. When people feel like this, it is a good idea to go outside and experience[2] nature.

In Cairo, many people like going to the Al Azhar Park.

Here, they walk slowly around the gardens and look at the many fountains[3], palm trees[4], plants and flowers. This makes them calm in the middle of a very big city. These people are meeting friends and family, and having picnics outside.

In other parts of Egypt, people can experience nature in many different ways. This is Ahmed and he lives in Sharm EL-Sheikh. He is a tourist guide[5] and always works hard. Here he is speaking on the phone.

Ahmed always feels happy when he visits the Ras Mohammed nature reserve. This is a national park[6] in the Sinai peninsula[7].

Today, he is visiting the park to go scuba diving[8] in the Red Sea. He feels relaxed[9] when he sees all the things that live under the water, such as the fish and the coral[10].

When you want to be outside, there are many beautiful places on the Nile.

١- حركة المرور
٢- يجرب
٣- نافورات
٤- النخيل
٥- مرشد سياحى
٦- حديقة قومية
٧- شبه جزيرة سيناء
٨- الغوص
٩- يشعر بالاسترخاء
١٠- الشعاب المرجانية





This is Lamia and she lives in Aswan. Today, she is sailing happily on the river with her father on a felucca[11].

She likes doing this because ...she likes the different birds that she can see, like herons[12], geese[13] and vultures[14].

Some people, however, like visiting the deserts of Egypt when they want to be outside.

People like walking in the deserts to see the sand dunes[15] because it is very quiet.

And these people are flying slowly above the desert in a hot air balloon[16].

We all feel good when we go outside. Where do you like to go?

١١- مركب شراعى
١٢- طائر مالك الحزين
١٣- أوز
١٤- النسور
١٥- الكثبان الرملية
١٦- منطاد

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. When you invite a person to your house, he/ she is your _____. WB
   a. guess b. guest c. customer d. partner
2. When you go on holiday, you can put your clothes in a _____. WB
   a. suit b. pan c. pencil case d. suitcase
3. The skin of a zebra is _____. WB
   a. striped b. lines c. silver d. golden
4. The cat was moving _____ away from the dog.
   a. happily b. loudly c. quietly d. hungrily
5. When two people get married, they have a _____. WB
   a. weeding b. prize c. medal d. wedding
6. A _____ is a boy or girl aged 13-19. WB
   a. teenager b. child c. baby d. manager
7. You can catch a plane from a/an _____. WB
   a. port b. station c. airport d. stop



CamScanner

WB أسبوط - مستقطط 2023

8. If you are tired, why don't you ..... a rest?
a. have b. be c. make d. do

العربية - النسطة 2023

9. She is ..... a selfie under the tree.
a. making b. spending c. having d. taking

## Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Sara is sitting in the ..... of the picture.
a. moon b. medal c. middle d. metal

11. The car moved ..... the right not to hit the boy.
a. towards b. about c. at d. of

12. There were three trees in the ..... of the picture.
a. roof b. background c. underground d. farm

13. A ..... isn't as high as a mountain.
a. river b. lake c. sea d. hill

14. I'm very ..... to everyone that helped me with my problems.
a. angry b. grateful c. ugly d. nervous

15. It's ..... to feel nervous before an exam.
a. careless b. noisy c. normal d. amazing

16. We never leave my little sister ..... in the house.
a. fast b. badly c. well d. alone

17. I always ..... worried when I have exams.
a. make b. help c. take d. get

18. Dina felt ..... about getting high marks in the final exams.
a. sad b. angry c. pleased d. cheap

19. We all waited for the exam results .....
a. easily b. excitedly c. hungrily d. quickly

20. The opposite of "sharp" is .....
a. blunt b. tidy c. wet d. pale

21. This student ..... the blue uniform is my cousin.
a. on b. by c. with d. in





# Language

## Adverbs of manner ظروف الطريقة

- الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم:
Ex. I saw a beautiful girl yesterday.
- ظرف الطريقة (الحال) هو كلمة تصف كيفية حدوث الفعل ويجيب عن السؤال بـ How :
Ex. A: How does Aya sing? B: She sings beautifully.
Ex. B: How does Ali speak? B: He speaks slowly.
- يأتى ظرف الطريقة غالبًا بعد الفعل أو بعد المفعول:
Ex. He drives carefully. (بعد الفعل)
Ex. Hossam threw the ball quickly. (بعد المفعول)

### Form التكوين

- يتكون ظرف الطريقة غالبًا بإضافة y / ly / ily إلى الصفة:

١- القاعدة العامة هى إضافة ly إلى الصفة:
quick سريع → quickly بسرعة
excited متحمس → excitedly بحماس

٢- إذا كانت الصفة منتهية بـ l يضاف ly :
careful حريص → carefully بحرص
beautiful جميل → beautifully بجمال

٣- الصفة المنتهية بـ le يحذف منها حرف e ويضاف y :
probable محتمل → probably بشكل محتمل
possible ممكن → possibly بشكل ممكن

٤- الصفة المنتهية بـ y ويسبقها حرف ساكن تحول y إلى ily :
happy سعيد → happily بسعادة
hungry جوعان → hungrily بنهم

- هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| good | جيد → | well | بشكل جيد | fast | سريع → | fast | بسرعة |
| hard | جاد - صعب → | hard | بجد/بصعوبة | late | متأخر → | late | متأخرًا |
| early | مبكر → | early | مبكرًا | high | مرتفع → | high | عاليًا |

Notes

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hard | بجد/بصعوبة | hardly | بالكاد/ تقريبًا لا |
| late | متأخرًا | lately | حديثًا/ مؤخرًا |

Ex. Ali studies hard.
Ex. Hatem hardly visits us.



CamScanner

# Exercises on Language

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### SB, WB & Exams

1. That's my sister. She is smiling ..... at the camera. SB
   a. careless b. careful c. happy d. happily
2. It's at the end of the day and the guests are ..... leaving. SB
   a. slow b. slowly c. happy d. careful
3. The teacher treats all her students ..... SB
   a. kind b. bad c. kindly d. good
4. I'm waiting ..... to get on a plane for the first time. SB
   a. excitedly b. excited c. careful d. hungrily
5. I'm sitting under a tree and ..... eating my lunch. SB
   a. hungry b. beautiful c. hungrily d. beautifully
6. The children are singing ..... in the playground. WB الدقهلية-مدينة النصر 2022
   a. loudly b. loud c. happy d. careful
7. The cat is sitting in the sun ..... القليوبية/ طوخ 2022
   a. lazy b. lazily c. lazier d. laziest
8. Huda's uncle always sings ..... when he's working. بني سويف- ناصر 2023
   a. slow b. happy c. happily d. quiet
9. Salma speaks English ..... القليوبية/كفر الشيخ 2023
   a. well b. clear c. good d. bad

### Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Tamer is a careful driver. He drives ..... .
    a. hungrily b. careful c. angrily d. carefully
11. The mother looked ..... at her naughty child.
    a. hungrily b. angry c. angrily d. careful
12. He was sad because he answered the questions ..... .
    a. bad b. badly c. well d. good
13. A: ..... does Ola play the piano?
    B: She plays the piano beautifully.
    a. How b. What c. When d. Who





14. The little boy woke up ..... this morning.
    a. loudly b. careful c. lazily d. careless
15. She is strong. She is lifting the weight ..... .
    a. easy b. easily c. careful d. excited
16. The man was afraid and left the room ..... .
    a. quiet b. careless c. careful d. quietly

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams

1. My friend sews ..... (bad). SB
2. Rania is good at drawing. She draws ..... (good). بني سويف - ناصر 2023
3. The students are talking ..... (loud). الشرقية - منشأة القناطر 2023

### Bit by Bit Exercises

4. My sister is crying ..... (sad) in her room.
5. You should study ..... (hardly).
6. He answered the test ..... (easy).
7. This exercise is ..... (easily).
8. You should drive ..... (slow) along this road.
9. The boy was sad because he sang ..... (bad).
10. The doctor examined the patient ..... (careful)

# Speaking

## Describing a photo

وصف صورة

تستخدم التعبيرات الآتية أثناء وصف صورة:

| | |
|---|---|
| - This is a photo of..... | هذه صورة لـ..... |
| - It shows.... | إنها تبين..... |
| - In the foreground, we can see.... | فى مقدمة الصورة، نستطيع رؤية.... |
| - In the background, we can see.... | فى خلفية الصورة، نستطيع رؤية..... |
| - On the right / left of...., there is/ are..... | على اليمين/اليسار من.... ، هناك ..... |
| - In the middle, we can see.... | فى وسط الصورة، نستطيع رؤية..... |



CamScanner

# General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Mustafa is showing Magdy a photo of his family.**

Mustafa : This is a photo of me and my family in Al Orman Park in Giza.

Magdy : ① ..... ?

Mustafa : In the foreground, there are my mother and my sisters sitting under a tree

Magdy : ② ..... ?

Mustafa : In the background, you can see the Cairo University.

Magdy : Is this your sister who is taking a selfie?

Mustafa : ③ .....

Magdy : How are they feeling?

Mustafa : ④ .....

Magdy : Great! ⑤ .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. **A:** What can you see in the picture?
   **B:** ..... the left, there is a big man.
   a. On b. In c. Of d. From
2. I bought a modern mobile phone because I like ..... selfies.
   a. doing b. taking c. discussing d. sitting
3. In a school, students play games in the .....
   a. playground b. theatre c. museum d. library
4. There were a lot of ..... at the party yesterday.
   a. teams b. suitcases c. guests d. classes
5. A young ..... of about fifteen hit the glass door with a ball.
   a. baby b. guide c. teenager d. teacher
6. I visited England ..... the first time in 2018.
   a. from b. at c. out d. for
7. **A :** Do you need anything .....?
   **B :** No, just a cup of coffee.
   a. also b. too c. else d. as





### Language

8. The boys ran ..... in the race.
   a. fast b. careful c. happy d. easy
9. Mai answered the questions ..... .
   a. correct b. correctly c. correcting d. incorrect
10. Smoking is ..... for your health.
    a. well b. badly c. good d. bad
11. The boys are waiting ..... for the football match to start. (القليوبية - فبراير 2023)
    a. excitedly b. excited c. exciting d. excite
12. My friends study ..... to get full marks in the exam. (العربية - السادسة 2023)
    a. hardly b. as hard c. hard d. hardest

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I can swim ..... (good).
2. He is always late. He always arrives ..... (lately).
3. She did her homework ..... (clever).
4. The girls are playing ..... (happy) in the street. (القاهرة - المعادي 2023)

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: WB

"A description of your friends' photo"

(أجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Who are in the photo?
- What does the photo show?
- Who are in the background / foreground of the photo?
- What are the people doing in this photo?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- This is a photo of .....
- It shows.....
- In the background/ foreground,we can see.....
- On the left .....



CamScanner

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 19-20 WB pages 83-84

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| pity | شيء محزن - شفقة | empathy | تعاطف |
| news | أخبار | miss (ed) | يفتقد (شخص) - تفوته (شيء) |
| congratulations | تهانينا (ألف مبروك) | worry (ied) | يقلق |
| sorry | آسف | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| term | فصل دراسي | soon | قريبًا |
| system | نظام | introduce (d) | يقدم (شخص) |
| pilot | طيار | share (d) | يشارك/يتقاسم |
| journalist | صحفي | act (ed) | يمثل |
| market | سوق | pass (ed) | ينجح - يجتاز |
| amazing | مذهل | move (d) | ينتقل (يعزل) |
| coach | مدرب | wait (ed) | ينتظر |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| get / be better | يتحسن | have a drink | يتناول مشروب |
| make friends | يكوّن صداقات | have an interview | لديه مقابلة شخصية |
| It's a pity.. | إنه من المؤسف أن... | do an interview | يجري مقابلة شخصية |
| Well done! | أحسنت! | Congratulations on ... | تهانينا على |
| fly a plane | يقود طائرة | speak on the phone | يتحدث في الهاتف |
| go sailing | يذهب للإبحار | on a bicycle | على دراجة |
| Guess what? | خمن ما هي؟ | | |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| sleep | ينام | slept | slept |
| tell | يخبر | told | told |

| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| cloudy | ملبد بالغيوم | foggy | clear | صافي |
| happiness | سعادة | joy | sadness | حزن |





## Language Notes

### ① much + comparative

• تستخدم بعض الكلمات مثل **much** تليها صفة مقارنة لتحديد مقدار الفارق بين طرفي المقارنة:

Ex. Ali is much taller than Omar.

Ex. Hala is much more beautiful than Sara.

### ② such

• تستخدم **such** بمعنى (جدًا) في الأسلوب التالي:

• such + a /an + صفة + اسم مفرد يُعد

Ex. Mrs Tahany is such a good teacher.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Fruits are _____ more delicious than vegetables.
   a. many  b. such  c. best  d. much
2. Mr Hafez is _____ a skilful engineer.
   a. so  b. that  c. such  d. as

## Audioscript

SB Page (19)

استمع إلى النصوص

-1-



Ali : Hi Yasser! Are you coming to football practice[1] on Thursday?

Yasser : Oh Hello Ali. No I can't come this week. My granddad is in hospital again. I have to look after my little brothers while my mum goes to visit him.

Ali : I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he gets better[2] soon. It's a pity[3] that you can't come. Maybe[4] I'll see you next Thursday, then.

Yasser : Thanks Ali.

١- تدريب
٢- يتحسن
٣- من المؤسف
٤- ربما



CamScanner

-2-



Yasser : Hey Ali, Guess what[5] I'm in the football team![6] The coach[7] told me after football practice last night.

Ali : Well done, Yasser! That's great news.

-3-



Hana : Hello Salma. How are you? Great to see you! How's it going at your new school? Are you enjoying it?

Salma : Hello, Hana. Great to see you too! The new school is really hard[8]! I don't know anyone, and I feel everyone is much cleverer than me. I have to do hours of homework every night

Hana : That must be difficult. But don't worry: I'm sure things will get better. You were always the best student in our class!

٥- خمن ماذا؟
٦- فريق
٧- مدرب
٨- شاق
٩- تهانينا

- 4-



Hana : Hi Huda. How are things?

Huda : Hello Hana! Fine thanks. I passed my English exam!

Hana : Congratulations![9] I'm so happy for you. Everyone knows that's a really difficult exam.

WB Page (84)

**New Message**

Hi Tarek

How's it going? Congratulations on passing your maths test! Do you have more exams next term?



The news[1] from me is that we are moving to a new house! I'm so excited[2] because my bedroom in the new house is very big. I have got some bad news, too. I'm sharing[3] the room with my brother! But this is only for a week until his room is ready[4].

I'm looking forward to meeting you in the summer. Do you want to go swimming or sailing[5] at the beach this year? I can't wait to see you.

Write soon!

Tamer

Send

١- الأخبار
٢- مثار/متحمس
٣- يتقاسم/يشارك
٤- جاهز
٥- الإبحار





WB Page (85)

This is a photo of a market. In the foreground towards the left, we can see a man. I think it is his shop and he is selling fruit and other things. In the middle of the picture, we can see a man on a bicycle. He is carrying something. On the right, we can see two women. I think they want to buy something. In the background, we can see some other people.

## Reading

SB Page (20)

**New Message**

Hi Salma



How are you? I hope you are enjoying your new school. We really miss[1] you.

I am fine, but there is some bad news from school. Mrs Tahany is leaving! She is such a good science teacher[2] and we are feeling very sad.

I have some good news, too. Guess what? My parents say I can go on the school trip[3] to Amman[4]. I am very excited[5]! There are many amazing[6] places to visit there. The trip is in March and I can't wait.

So what's your news? Write soon!

Injy

Send

١- يفتقد
٢- مدرسة علوم
٣- رحلة مدرسية
٤- مدينة عمان
٥- متشوق
٦- مذهل

SB Page (21)

**New Message**

Hi Jana!

How are you? I hope you are well. Guess what! I've passed[1] my maths exam. I'm really happy, but my brother didn't pass. He is working hard[2] to pass it next time.

It's raining today, so I'm happily sitting in my bedroom. I'm playing a game with my sister. What's your news?

Write soon!

Huda

Send

١- يجتاز
٢- بجد



CamScanner

WB Page (84)

**New Message**

My name is Dina. I am Egyptian but my mother is from England. I live with my parents, my brother, my sister and my grandmother. Who do you live with? Write soon, from Dina.

Send

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he ..... better soon. SB
   a. gets b. gives c. takes d. makes
2. We are ..... to a new house. WB
   a. sharing b. moving c. passing d. missing
3. Congratulations ..... passing your maths test. WB
   a. at b. in c. up d. on

### Bit by Bit Exercises

4. He has deep ..... with the poor.
   a. empathy b. suggestion c. term d. news
5. Mo Salah had a/an ..... on TV last night.
   a. review b. view c. interview d. revision
6. When he joined a new school, he ..... friends with lots of students.
   a. built b. made c. did d. came
7. My brother didn't ..... his exam. He is very sad.
   a. hope b. act c. pass d. be
8. It's a ..... that you can't come to my birthday party.
   a. normal b. dear c. pity d. sorry
9. Every summer, they go ..... in the Red Sea.
   a. sailing b. selling c. saying d. sewing
10. Hady goes to school ..... a bicycle.
    a. in b. on c. with d. at





## Speaking

### 1) Responding to news

الاستجابة للأخبار

**Good news**

- عند سماع أخبار سارة يمكنك أن تقول:
- Well done, ..... أحسنت يا....
- That's great news! هذه أخبار رائعة.
- Congratulations! تهانينا!
- I'm so happy for you. أنا سعيد للغاية من أجلك.

**Bad news**

- عند سماع أخبار غير سارة يمكنك أن تقول:
- It's a pity that.... من المؤسف أن.....
- I'm sorry to hear that. أنا حزين لسماع هذا.
- That must be difficult. من المؤكد أن هذا صعب.

### 2) Useful phrases to use in an email

عبارات مهمة تستخدم فى كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Phrases to begin** | عبارات للبداية | Dear / Hi / Hello ..... |
| **Asking how someone is:** | السؤال عن شخص | - How are you?<br>- How are things?<br>- How's it going?<br>- How's life? |
| **Introducing news:** | تقديم الأخبار | - The news from me / us is that...<br>- Guess what? |
| **Talking about feelings:** | التحدث عن المشاعر | - I / we miss you.<br>- I / we hope that you are ...<br>- I'm so excited / sad because |
| **Talking about the future:** | التحدث عن المستقبل | - I'm looking forward to ...<br>- I can't wait (to) ... |
| **Phrases to end:** | عبارات للخاتمة/ النهاية | - Write soon.<br>- See you soon |



CamScanner

## General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

WB

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Dalida's mother is ill and she didn't go to work.**

Dalida : My mother didn't go to work today because she is ill.

**Heba** : 1 .....

Dalida : She had an interview at the bank for a new job. 2 .....

**Heba** : 3 ..... ?

Dalida : She did the interview online from her bed!

**Heba** : 4 ..... ?

Dalida : Yes, but she got the job!

**Heba** : 5 ..... ! I'm so happy for her.

Dalida : She is still not feeling very well.

**Heba** : Don't worry, I'm sure she'll be better soon.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Vocabulary**

1. It's a ..... that you won't travel this summer holiday.
   a. sorry b. congratulations c. great d. pity
2. ..... done, Yasser! That's great news! SB
   a. Well b. Wall c. Wheel d. Will
3. That must be difficult. But don't ..... I'm sure things will get better. SB
   a. hurry b. marry c. worry d. carry
4. Congratulations! I'm so ..... for you. SB
   a. unhappy b. happy c. sorry d. sad
5. We all like Leila; she is ..... a lovely girl.
   a. so b. very c. such d. that
6. I ..... the train because I went to the station late.
   a. missed b. shared c. moved d. did
7. ..... what? I have passed my exams.
   a. Miss b. Guess c. Pass d. Cross
8. **A:** ..... 's life? **B:** Good.
   a. Where b. How c. When d. Why



# Unit 2 Review

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| airport | مطار | sign language | لغة الإشارة | congratulations | تهانينا |
| wedding | حفل زفاف | empathy | تعاطف | sewing | الخياطة |
| suitcase | حقيبة سفر | sorry | آسف | miss (ed) | يفتقد - يفوته (شيء) |
| normal | طبيعي/معتاد | teenager | شخص مراهق | worry (ied) | يقلق |
| deaf | أصم (الطرش) | ward | عنبر (في مستشفى) | communicate (d) | يتواصل |
| pity | شيء محزن/شفقة | make (made) sure | يتأكد | look (ed) forward to | يتطلع إلى |
| sharp | حاد | food stall | كشك لبيع الطعام | repair (ed) | يُصلح |
| news | أخبار | striped | مخطط | guess (ed) | يخمن |
| guest | ضيف | alone | بمفرده | park (ed) (n) | يركن (مَركَبة) / متنزه |
| grateful | ممتن/شاكر | painting the kitchen | دهان المطبخ | | |
| calligraphy | فن خط اليد | | | | |

### Jobs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| call-centre worker | عامل مركز اتصالات | nurse | ممرضة |
| computer engineer | مهندس كمبيوتر | police officer | ضابط شرطة |
| shop worker | عامل في محل | street-food seller | بائع طعام متجول |
| artist | فنان | cook | طاهي - طاهية |

## Language

### 1 The present continuous tense الزمن المضارع المستمر

- يتكون زمن المضارع المستمر من:

**am, is, are + V-ing.**

Ex. Dina is watching TV now.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن:

١- فعل يحدث الآن (في وقت الكلام)

Ex. Listen! The boys are singing.

٢- أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام):

Ex. My brother is learning to speak English.



CamScanner

٣- أحداث مؤقتة:

Ex. Esraa is taking a course at university.

• لنفى فعل فى زمن المضارع المستمر نستخدم (not) بعد (am / is / are) كما بلى:

Ex. He isn't watching TV at the moment.

• نسأل عن فعل في زمن المضارع المستمر بالصيغة الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) + am, is, are + فاعل + V-ing ...?

Ex. Is Ahmed studying English?

Ex. What is Mariam doing?

## 2 Adverbs of manner ظروف الطريقة

• يتكون ظرف الطريقة غالبًا بإضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:

quick سريع → quickly بسرعة excited متحمس → excitedly بحماس

## Speaking

### 1 Describing weekend activities - وصف أنشطة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

- What do you usually do at the weekend?

- At the weekend, I usually visit my grandparents.
- At the weekend, I do my homework.

### 2 Describing a photo - وصف صورة

• تستخدم التعبيرات الآتية أثناء وصف صورة:

- This is a photo of.....
- It shows....
- In the foreground, we can see....
- In the background, we can see....

### 3 Responding to news الاستجابة للأخبار

| Good news | Bad news |
|---|---|
| • عند سماع أخبار سارة يمكنك أن تقول: | • عند سماع أخبار غير سارة يمكنك أن تقول: |
| - Well done, ..... | - It's a pity that.... |
| - That's great news! | - I'm sorry to hear that. |
| - Congratulations! | - That must be difficult. |
| - I'm so happy for you. | |





### 4 Useful phrases to use in an email عبارات مهمة تستخدم فى كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى

| | |
|---|---|
| Phrases to begin | - Dear / Hi / Hello ..... |
| Asking how someone is: | - How are you? |
| | - How are things? |
| | - How's life? |
| Introducing news: | - The news from me / us is that... |
| Talking about feelings: | - I / we miss you. |
| Talking about the future: | - I'm looking forward to ... |
| | - I can't wait (to) ... |
| Phrases to end: | - Write soon. |
| | - See you soon |

# General Exercises on Unit 2

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samy is asking Kamal about his job.

Samy : What do you do?
Kamal : ① .....
Samy : Where are you parking your food stall?
Kamal : ② .....
Samy : ③ ..... ?
Kamal : Because lots of people and tourists come this way.
Samy : ④ ..... ?
Kamal : They start to buy their breakfast at 7 o'clock.
Samy : What are you looking forward to?
Kamal : ⑤ ..... I'm so tired.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Vocabulary** SB

1. My sister speaks very .....
   a. beautiful b. careful c. quiet d. quietly
2. When I arrived at the clinic, there were four ..... there.
   a. engineers b. sellers c. patients d. managers

WB

3. This is a photo of my parents' .....
   a. married b. marry c. wedding d. weeding
4. Fatma is ....., so she cannot hear you.
   a. dear b. blind c. deaf d. strong



CamScanner

5. The nurse works on the ..... for children. WB
a. stadium b. ward c. word d. playground
6. Your father can ..... the car on this road, it is very quiet.
a. park b. break c. remind d. remember
7. Please ..... sure that you write your emails carefully. WB
a. build b. take c. do d. make
8. It is usually easy to ..... with people in other countries if you speak English. WB
a. communicate b. listen c. shout d. cry
9. My little brother is very ..... He always wants to stay at home and watch TV!
a. active b. angry c. interesting d. lazy

**Language**

10. We're sitting ..... on the rocks because they are very sharp! SB
a. happy b. happily c. carefully d. careful
11. We ..... a film and it is very funny.
a. watch b. watching c. watches d. are watching
12. My cousins are not standing under the tree, they are ..... by the fountain. WB
a. sit b. sits c. sat d. sitting
13. What is Emad ..... ? It looks very nice!
a. eat b. eating c. eats d. ate
14. I can't come to the park because I .....the house today. WB
a. clean b. cleaning c. am cleaning d. cleans
15. Ola ..... sports today because she hurt her leg. WB
a. are not doing b. is not doing c. doesn't do d. don't do

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. This boy is crying ..... (loud).
2. Mr Ahmed speaks English ..... (good). SB
3. Mr Osman ..... (live) in a lovely flat. SB
4. We ..... (learn) English now. المنيا - مصطفى 2023
5. Maya and Rami ..... (text) their cousins in Canada now. WB

**4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"What you do at the weekend"

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you usually do at the weekend?
- Who do you spend the weekend with? - Who do you visit at the weekend?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- At the weekend, I usually get up..... - I often spend time with.....
- At the weekend, I usually visit .....



# Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات انشائية ورسائل بريد الكترونى عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

## 1- Different people in my family

**(Lessons 1 & 2 )**

I have many people in my family. We are all now in the park. My dad is playing chess with my uncle. My brothers are playing football. My mum and aunt are making us sandwiches. We are in a quiet place in the park. My sisters are taking selfies beside the flowers. We usually come to the park at the Weekends. We enjoy our time together there. We feel very happy at the park.

## 2- A description of my friends' photo

**(Lessons 3 & 4)**

This is a photo of my friends. It shows that we are all happy. We took it in a nearby park. In the background, our fathers and mothers are sitting under a big tree. In the foreground, my friends Tamer and Salah are sitting on the grass. You can see some people walking. We usually take photos when we get out together. I have a lot of photos in a big album.

## 3- What I do at the weekend / Your weekend activities

**(General Exercises -Al Azhar)**

Hi, I'm Omar. I'm a prep-school student. I'm twelve years old. I live with my mum and dad in a small flat in Minya. At the weekend, I'm usually quite lazy. I usually spend a nice time with my family. My parents and I go and visit my grandparents at their house. Their house is bigger than our flat. On Saturday morning, I often stay in bed and then I have a late breakfast with grandmother - she's a fantastic cook!

## 4- A trip to Al Azhar Park (Test)

**To** : sarahamdi@yahoo.com
**From** : salmazaki@gmail.com
**Subject** : A trip to Al Azhar Park

Dear Sara,

I live with my family in Cairo. My family and I always go on trips. Once, we went on a trip to Al Azhar Park. It was sunny. We arrived at Al Azhar Park at 9 am. My mother and father sat under a tree. We visited the Umm al-Sultan Shaban Mosque. It was really amazing. We took wonderful photos there. My middle sister took selfies as usual. We got home at 6. It was a fantastic day and all of us felt happy.

Yours,
Salma



CamScanner

# Unit 2 Al Azhar Test



## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Nature makes us .....
   a. unhappy  b. happy  c. worry  d. sad
2. If we live in the ....., we can go to a park.
   a. village  b. country  c. city  d. sea

## B Language Functions

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

**1-** Ramy : You live near the sea. Do you have a boat?

**Yaseen** :.....

**2-** Omar :.....?

**Adel** : Sami is learning sign language because he is deaf.

## C Usage

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We should be ..... to our parents.
   a. careful  b. normal  c. grateful  d. hungry
2. ..... Osman staying in London now?
   a. Is  b. Has  c. Are  d. Does
3. All the kids are looking forward ..... to the beach.
   a. to go  b. going  c. to going  d. go
4. ..... means unable to hear.
   a. Blind  b. Deaf  c. Dumb  d. Strong
5. The players ..... to score a goal at the moment.
   a. try  b. are trying  c. tried  d. tries
6. The baby is crying .....
   a. loudly  b. loud  c. as loud  d. load





## D Reading Comprehension

**4 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Hi Samia,

It's better to meet you on Saturday because I'm going out with my family on Friday. So, if that's still good for you, why don't you come here? Then you can see the new flat. **We** can eat at home and then go for a walk in the afternoon. I want to hear all about your new job! Our address is in Nahda Street, but it's a bit difficult to find because the house numbers are really strange here. There's a small side street behind it. Don't ask me why the side street doesn't have a different name! But call me if you get lost and I'll come and get you. Let me know if there's anything you do/don't like to eat. See you soon!

Gehan

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why can't Gehan meet Samia on Friday?
   .....
2. Where does Gehan live?
   .....
3. What does the underlined pronoun **"We"** refer to?
   .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Gehan wants Samia to see the new .....
   a. job  b. flat  c. street  d. address
5. Gehan suggests eating at .....
   a. home  b. a restaurant  c. the club  d. a café

## E Writing

**5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"Your weekend activities"

(مجاب عنه قبل الإختبار)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What activities do you usually do at the weekend?
- Where do you go at the weekend?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- At the weekend, I usually play .....
- I usually spend nice time with ....
- On Saturday morning, I often .....



CamScanner

# Unit 2 TEST

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker looks after ..... at a hospital.
   a. pupils b. friends c. patients d. boys
2. The speaker looks after children in a children's .....
   a. house b. flat c. school d. ward
3. The speaker is feeling ..... tonight.
   a. happy b. tired c. sad d. glad
4. The speaker is looking forward to going home and having a .....
   a. rest b. food c. fruit d. drink

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Hadeer has some good news.**

Hadeer : How are you?

**Khaled** : I am fine. ❶ .....?

Hadeer : Fine. Thanks. I have good news.

**Khaled** : Really! ❷ .....?

Hadeer : I got the full mark in the science exam.

**Khaled** : ❸ .....

Hadeer : What did you do in this exam?

**Khaled** : ❹ .....

Hadeer : Well done! That's great news.

**Khaled** : ❺ .....





## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

This is Nelly. She's a nurse. She's tall and thin. She works at a hospital. She looks after **sick** people. She gets up at six o'clock in the morning. She takes a shower and puts on her clothes. Then she eats breakfast at half past six. At seven o'clock, she catches the bus to the hospital. Nelly starts work at eight o'clock. **She** helps the doctors. At twelve o'clock, she has lunch. She goes home at five o'clock. She has dinner at half past six in the evening. Then, she watches TV. At ten o'clock, she goes to bed.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
   .....
2. What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?
   .....
3. Do you think people like Nelly? Why / Why not?
   .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Nelly watches TV in the .....
   a. morning b. afternoon c. evening d. midday
5. The word "sick" means .....
   a. well b. good c. ill d. healthy
6. Nelly works as a/an .....
   a. nurse b. engineer c. doctor d. architect

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I love my friends so much. I really like to ..... with them.
   a. take b. comment c. clean d. communicate
2. On Saturday, I usually ..... time with my cousins. WB
   a. spend b. spends c. spending d. am spending
3. We must all be ..... to those who help us.
   a. tired b. grateful c. careless d. rude
4. I buy food from this street-food ..... . His food is delicious.
   a. seller b. officer c. worker d. thief
5. The boy cried when he felt that he was ..... at home.
   a. happy b. careful c. alone d. cheerful



CamScanner

6. Nabila feels ill, so she ..... in bed this morning. WB
a. staying b. is staying c. stay d. is stayed

7. Hassan wants his handwriting to be fine. That's why he is learning .....
a. calligraphy b. sign language c. music d. sewing

8. Mrs Ola is learning ..... these days because she wants to be a dressmaker.
a. drawing b. hunting c. painting d. sewing

9. Our football team will win because they are playing very ..... WB
a. good b. well c. badly d. bad

10. Deaf people can use ..... language to communicate.
a. sign b. signal c. sight d. safe

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. What time do you ..... (doing) your homework after school? WB
2. Watch out! The bus ..... (comes) too fast.
3. It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it is raining. WB
4. Look! The sun ..... (shines) and the sky is clear.

## Writing

**6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:**

To your friend Sara telling her about a trip to Al Azhar Park.
- **Your name is Salma and your email address is salmazaki@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's email address is sarahamdi@yahoo.com**

[مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار]

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الالكترونى:
- Do you usually go on trips?
- Where did you last go on a trip?
- How was the weather then?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- Once, we went on a trip to .....
- We took photos there.
- It was sunny and .....
- We felt .....



Prep 2

New Hello!



# 3 UNIT

# Great jobs

## Objectives

**Reading:**
An article about the Egyptian handball team; a text about Ancient Egyptian doctors; a text about heroes

**Writing:**
A paragraph about rubbish collectors, a paragraph about someone you are proud of

**Listening:**
Descriptions of different heroes; a talk about a family history; a discussion about what makes a hero

**Speaking:**
Talking about heroes; discussing your family history; saying what you are proud of; checking you understand

**Language:**
*used to*

**Life Skills:**
Collaboration; Communication

**Values:**
Work values; Love and respect for homeland and the family

**Issues:**
Citizenship; Loyalty and belonging; National unity

SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب

CamScanner

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22-25 WB pages 86-87

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hero (heroes) | بطل «أبطال» | charity | جمعية خيرية / عمل خيري |
| competition | مسابقة / مناهسة | handball | لعبة كرة اليد |
| junior | ناشىء / مبتدىء | the final | المباراة النهائية |
| junior team | فريق الناشئين | female | أنثى / مؤنث |
| senior | كبير فى السن / راشد | win (won / won) | يفوز |
| senior team | الفريق الأول | | |

### Jobs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| patron | راع / كفيل | sports coach | مدرب رياضى |
| nuclear scientist | عالم نووى | surgeon | طبيب جرّاح |

### Verbs & Nouns

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| do a job | يؤدى وظيفة / يقوم بمهمة | start a charity | ينشئ مؤسسة خيرية |
| do / play a sport | يلعب رياضة | win a competition | يفوز بمسابقة |
| do experiments | يجرى تجارب عملية | get a prize | يحصل على جائزة |
| start school | يبدأ الدراسة | get a job | يحصل على وظيفة |

### Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| date of birth | تاريخ الميلاد | shark | سمكة قرش |
| heart problems | مشاكل فى القلب | princess | أميرة |
| goal | مرمى / هدف | Khedive | خديوى |
| nuclear | نووى | national | قومى |
| treatment | علاج | organise (d) | ينظم |
| teamwork | عمل جماعى | score (d) | يسجل (أهداف / نقاط) |
| event | حدث (هام) | attack (ed) | يهاجم |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| get married | يتزوج | play for | يلعب لصالح |
| improve in a sport | يتحسن فى رياضة | find out about | يعرف / يكتشف |
| (be) born into a rich family | يولد لعائلة ثرية | throw the ball into ... | يلقى بالكرة في ... |
| give money | يمنح مالاً | good at + n / V-ing | جيد فى |
| look inside | ينظر بداخل ... | died in + year | مات في سنة .... |
| win... against | يفوز بـ... ضد | help children with heart problems | |
| lose... against | يخسر... ضد | يساعد أطفال لديهم مشاكل بالقلب | |
| under - 19 (adj) | تحت سن ١٩ | | |





## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| lose | يفقد / يخسر | lost | lost |
| bear | تلد | bore | born |
| mean | يعنى | meant | meant |
| throw | يرمي / يلقي | threw | thrown |

| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| similar | مشابه | alike | different | مختلف |
| brave | شجاع | courageous | cowardly | جبان |
| patient | صبور | - | impatient | غير صبور |
| successful | ناجح | - | unsuccessful | فاشل |
| junior | ناشئ / مبتدئ | young | senior | كبير السن / راشد |
| win | يفوز | succeed | lose | يخسر |
| national | قومي | local | international | دولي |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| sports coach | مدرب رياضى | - a person who trains or helps people to do a sport<br>- a person who teaches people how to play or improve in a sport |
| surgeon | طبيب جرّاح | a special doctor who knows how to look inside a person's body to help people who are ill |
| scientist | عالم | someone who does experiments to study and find out about how things work |
| charity | جمعية خيرية | you can give money to this to help poor people |
| hero | بطل | a person that people admire(1) because they have done something very brave(2) or good |
| patron | راع/كفيل | a person who gives money to help people or places |
| handball | لعبة كرة اليد | a sport with seven players in a team. They score by throwing(3) the ball into a goal |
| competitions | مسابقات | events when people try to get a prize by being the best at something |
| win | يفوز | to be the first person or team in a game or competition |
| junior | ناشىء / مبتدىء | for younger people |
| senior | كبير/راشد | for older people |
| female | انثى/مؤنث | a woman or a girl |

١- يعجب بـ
٢- شجاع
٣- إلقاء/رمى



CamScanner

## Language Notes

### 1) win - earn

- win (won / won) يفوز بـ
  (a medal - a prize - a competition)
  Ex. All students hope to win the first prize.

- earn (ed - ed) يكسب مالاً/قوت يومه
  (money - a living / his living)
  Ex. We earn money from our work.
  Ex. My dad works hard to earn his living.

### 2) lose - miss

- lose (v) (lost / lost) يخسر - يضيع/يفقد (شيء)
  Ex. Barcelona lost the last match.
  Ex. I lost my keys yesterday.

- miss (v) (ed) يفوته شيء/يفتقد شخص
  Ex. I missed the train, so I took the next one.
  Ex. I really miss you.

### 3) patient

- patient (adj) صبور
  Ex. You should be patient, the food will be ready soon.

- patient (n) شخص مريض
  Ex. Doctors examine patients and give them medicines.

### 4) as - like

- as ك: تأتي قبل وظيفة «شخص/شيء»
  Ex. He works as a doctor.
  Ex. We use this drink as medicine for cold.

- like تستخدم بمعنى «مشابه لـ»
  Ex. This soldier is like a lion.

### 5) the first ... to + inf.

- يستخدم هذا الإسلوب بمعنى (الأول فى القيام بشيء)
  Ex. He was the first player to score five goals in a match.





## Check on Language Notes

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Mr Ali works hard to _____ his living.
   a. win b. lose c. earn d. take
2. My friend _____ his bag on a bus.
   a. lost b. won c. missed d. earned
3. Dr Magdy Yacoub treats many _____ for free.
   a. doctors b. parts c. patrons d. patients
4. Dr Zewail worked _____ a scientist.
   a. like b. as c. such d. unlike
5. That team was the first _____ the gold cup.
   a. win b. winning c. to win d. won

## Audioscript

SB Page (23)

استمع إلى النصوص



1- **Photo one** shows Omar Abdelkader. He was born in 1994. When Omar was 22, a shark[1] attacked[2] him and he lost a leg[3], but this did not stop him wanting to be successful[4]. Now he helps other people with similar[5] problems and he is an important sports coach[6].



2- **Photo two** shows Sameera Moussa. Sameera was born in 1917 and studied science[7] at Cairo University. She was Egypt's first female[8] nuclear scientist[9] and wanted to use nuclear treatments[10] in medicine[11]. She died in 1952.



3- **Photo three** shows Magdy Yacoub. He was born in Bilbeis in 1935. He went to Cairo University and became an important heart surgeon[12]*. He then helped people with heart problems[13] for many years. He stopped most of his work a long time ago, but in 2006, he started a charity[14] to help children with heart problems.



4- **Photo four** shows Princess[15] Fatma Ismail. The princess was the daughter of Khedive Ismail[16] and she was born in 1853. She became a patron[17] of Egypt's first national[18] university after she gave a lot of money and land to help it to open in 1908. From 1908 to 1940, people called it the Egyptian University, but it is now called[19] Cairo University[20].

١- سمكة قرش
٢- هاجم
٣- فقد ساق
٤- ناجح
٥- مشابه
٦- مدرب رياض
٧- العلوم
٨- أنثى
٩- عالم نووى
١٠- علاج نووى
١١- الطب
١٢- جراح قلب
١٣- مشاكل فى القلب
١٤- عمل خيرى
١٥- أميرة
١٦- الخديوى اسماعيل
١٧- راع/كفيل
١٨- قومى
١٩- يسمى الآن
٢٠- جامعة القاهرة

**Say it correctly**

* surgeon (bird) ينطق المقطع الملون مثل حرفي (ir) فى كلمة



CamScanner

# Reading

SB Page (24)



## Egyptian heroes!

The Egyptian handball team[1] are heroes[2]! They won the handball Africa Cup of Nations[3] in Tunisia*[4] in 2020. They won the final[5] against Tunisia 27- 23. That means they are the best team in Africa!

This is not the first time Egypt's handball team played in a final. In 2019, the junior team[6] won the under-19[7] World Cup Final 32-28 against Germany[8]. They were the first team from Africa to win it. In 2018, the senior team[9] were also in the final of the Africa Cup of Nations, but lost the final against Tunisia.

Now, lots of people in Egypt love the sport. Let's hope the Egyptian team can win competitions[10] again!

١- فريق كرة اليد
٢- أبطال
٣- كأس الأمم الأفريقية
٤- دولة تونس
٥- المباراة النهائية
٦- فريق الناشئين
٧- تحت سن ١٩
٨- دولة ألمانيا
٩- فريق الكبار/الفريق الأول
١٠- مسابقات

**Say it correctly**

* Tunisia — ينطق حرف [t] في هذه الكلمة مثل حرف [t] في كلمة tube وينطق حرف S مثل Z

WB Page (86)

When my parents were younger, they lived in Luxor. Then they moved to Port Said in 1990. My father got a job in Cairo 15 years ago. They then lived in a small flat from 2005 to 2006. They moved to the bigger flat a year later when I was born.

WB Page (87)



My brother Ahmed loves playing handball, and he's very good at[1] at it. When he was eight, he played in a junior competition[2] for a team in our city. The team didn't win[3], but it was second. Ahmed is now 21 and last year, he played for[4] an important senior team. He was very pleased[5]. Next year, the team are playing in an important competition. I hope they win it!

١- جيد في
٢- مسابقة للناشئين
٣- لم يفز
٤- يلعب لصالح
٥- مسرور





# Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

SB, WB & Exams

1. Players score by throwing the ball into a goal in _____. SB
   a. handball b. chess c. swimming d. karate
2. The _____ Egyptian handball team did not win the final in 2018. SB
   a. ancient b. final c. nuclear d. senior
3. Teams from Africa never won the handball World Cup _____. SB
   a. Ball b. Total c. Final d. Goal
4. To _____ means to be the first in a game or competition. SB
   a. miss b. win c. lose d. earn
5. A _____ is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something. SB
   a. charity b. coach c. competition d. team
6. A/An _____ does experiments to study and find out about how things work. WB
   a. event b. hero c. worker d. scientist
7. A _____ knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill. WB
   a. scientist b. nurse c. surgeon d. chemist
8. The _____ Egyptian handball team won the under-19 World Cup Final in 2019. مطروح - الحمام 2023 SB
   a. junior b. poor c. general d. moral
9. A _____ gives money to people or place. إدارة مطروح 2022 WB
   a. scientist b. patron c. surgeon d. coach
10. The nurse was a _____. She saved a lot of people. القليوبية / غرب شبرا الخيمة 2022
    a. begger b. manager c. servant d. hero
11. Sameera Moussa was Egypt's first _____ nuclear scientist. إدارة بورسعيد 2022
    a. male b. man c. female d. daughter
12. A _____ helps people who are poor, sick or have no home. القليوبية - بنها 2022
    a. chair b. charity c. shoe d. ship
13. Scientists do many experiments to find _____ for many illnesses. القليوبية - دمنهور 2023
    a. treatments b. development c. moments d. monuments
14. After the match, the _____ told me that I would be in the football first team. شبين القناطر - بنها 2023
    a. worker b. coach c. surgeon d. volunteer



CamScanner

## Bit by Bit Exercises

15. Dr Magdy Yacoub looks after children with heart ..... .
a. trips b. experiments c. competitions d. problems

16. Tunisia has one of the best handball ..... in Africa.
a. teams b. hearts c. surgeons d. flats

17. My neighbour Tarek was born ..... a rich family.
a. under b. for c. into d. at

18. The Egyptain football team won 1-0 ..... Italy in 2009.
a. for b. against c. to d. from

19. Mohamed Salah plays ..... Liverpool.
a. to b. in c. for d. on

20. "Cowardly" is the opposite of ..... .
a. brave b. patient c. junior d. similar

## Language

### Remember: The past simple tense

- يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط كالآتي:

(فعل فى التصريف الثانى) + فاعل

- تنقسم الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط الى نوعين:

### 1- Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

- هى الأفعال التى يضاف إليها (d) أو (ed) أو (ied) فى التصريف الثانى لتكوّن صيغة الماضى البسيط:

| الفعل فى المصدر | الفعل فى التصريف الثانى | الإضافة |
|---|---|---|
| cook | cooked | فعل غير منتهي بـ (e) يضاف له (ed) |
| arrive | arrived | فعل منتهي بـ (e) يضاف له (d) |
| play | played | فعل منتهي بـ (y) قبلها حرف متحرك يضاف له (ed) |
| study | studied | فعل منتهي بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن تحذف الـ (y) ويضاف (ied) |
| stop | stopped | بعض الأفعال التي تنتهي بحرف ساكن قبله حرف متحرك يكرر الحرف الأخير ويضاف (ed) |





### Pronunciation of (ed)

- هناك ثلاث طرق لنطق (ed) المضافة للفعل فى الماضى البسيط.

| ينطق إذا انتهى الفعل بـ /d/ | ينطق إذا انتهى الفعل بـ /t/ | ينطق إذا انتهى الفعل بـ /Id/ |
|---|---|---|
| g - l - n - r - s - v - w - y - z | c - k - x - p - ch - sh - gh - th - ss | t - d |
| managed - called | danced - cooked | wanted |
| cleaned - offered | mixed - helped | needed |
| used - loved | watched - washed | |
| followed - enjoyed | laughed - breathed | |
| | passed | |

### 2- Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

- الأفعال غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هى مثل:

hit → hit teach → taught see → saw

- ادرس تصريف الأفعال (have) (do) (be):

| Infinitive | | Present simple | Past simple |
|---|---|---|---|
| be | يكون | am / is / are | was / were |
| do | يفعل | do / does | did |
| have | يمتلك/لديه | have / has | had |

يوجد جدول لأهم تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة في آخر الكتاب

- تعبر الكلمات الآتية عن زمن الماضى البسيط:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| - yesterday | أمس | - last (week - month - year - night ...) | السابق ... |
| - this morning | هذا الصباح | - once (upon a time) | ذات مرة |
| - in the past | فى الماضى | - ago | منذ |
| - in 2016 | فى عام ٢٠١٦ | | |

- يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن:

Ex. We went to Aswan for a holiday last winter. ١- فعل بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى.

Ex. When I was young, I rode a bike. ٢- عادات تكررت في الماضى.

Ex. The naughty boy woke up, had breakfast and left for school. ٣- سرد قصة.



CamScanner

• تنفى الفعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط باستخدام الصيغة الآتية:

فاعل + did not (didn't) + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. I did not (didn't) arrive at school late.

• كما يمكن أن نستخدم (never) فى النفى بوضعها قبل الفعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط ويبقى الفعل ماضيًا.

Ex. I never lost money.

• للسؤال عن الماضى البسيط بـ «هل..؟» نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

Did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ..?

Ex. Did you watch TV last night?

- Yes, I did / No, I didn't.

• للسؤال عن الماضى البسيط بـ «كلمة استفهام..؟» نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

Ex. What time did you go to bed?

- I went to bed at 10 pm.

## Exercises on Language

**① Complete the following dialogue:**

**Suzan is asking Yomna about her study.**

Suzan : Hi, Yomna. Can I ask you some questions?

**Yomna** : ❶ .....

Suzan : ❷ .....?

**Yomna** : I was born on 3rd May 2007.

Suzan : ❸ .....?

**Yomna** : I went to primary school when I was 6.

Suzan : When did you start preparatory school?

**Yomna** : ❹ .....

Suzan : What was your favourite subject in primary school?

**Yomna** : ❺ .....





**② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. My grandfather _____ work in 2015. WB
   a. stopping b. stop c. will stop d. stopped
2. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he _____ a leg. SB
   a. is lost b. lost c. loses d. to lose
3. Magdy Yacoub _____ born in 1935. SB
   a. was b. is c. be d. has
4. He started playing chess when he was very little and he _____ always very good at it. WB
   a. does b. were c. has d. was
5. _____ your friends ready for the exam last week? الأقصر/أرمنت 2022
   a. Was b. Did c. Were d. Do
6. When you arrived at the party, who _____ there? القاهرة/المعادي 2023
   a. do b. did c. were d. are
7. Did Mohamed _____ to the shops yesterday? الشرقية/منيا 2022
   a. goes b. go c. went d. gone
8. When _____ you start this job? الدقهلية/المنزلة 2022
   a. does b. are c. did d. have
9. They _____ at home yesterday. قنا - نقادة 2023
   a. don't b. aren't c. didn't d. weren't

### Bit by Bit Exercises

10. I _____ a bike when I was young.
    a. having b. has c. had d. have
11. Tamer _____ know what marks he got in the last test.
    a. don't b. didn't c. do d. isn't
12. Why _____ those students punished by the teacher yesterday?
    a. was b. have c. are d. were
13. Who _____ you yesterday?
    a. called b. did called c. call did d. to call
14. In 2016, a thief _____ me and stole my money.
    a. attacked b. attacks c. attacking d. attack
15. I met an old friend _____ month.
    a. next b. in c. for d. last



CamScanner

16. When ..... you have dinner last night?
a. were b. had c. did d. will

17. My brother bought his car two years ..... .
a. last b. ago c. once d. since

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. Waleed ..... (be) a farmer for more than thirty years. WB
2. Aunt Leila ..... (lives) in England from 1995 to 2010. WB
3. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ..... (age). SB
4. Magdy Yacoub ..... (was helped) people with heart problems for many years. SB
5. Last year, I ..... (go) to Cairo and visited a museum. القاهرة 2023

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

6. ..... (Do) you meet your friends yesterday?
7. Basmala ..... (weren't) at school yesterday.
8. How long did it ..... (took) you to write this story?
9. I watched a nice film ..... (next) week.
10. ..... (Do) your parents help you at school when you were young?
11. Why ..... (doesn't) Adel take his medicine yesterday?
12. A long time ..... (since,) I went to London.

## Speaking

**1 Talking about heroes.** الحديث عن الأبطال.

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - What makes a hero? ما الذي يصنع البطل؟ | - A hero is a brave person, kind and patient. البطل هو الشخص الشجاع والعطوف والصبور. |
| - Why is a firefighter a hero? لماذا يُعد رجل الإطفاء بطلاً؟ | - He saves people form fires. ينقذ الناس من الحرائق. |
| - Is a nurse a hero? Why? Why not? هل الممرضة من الأبطال؟ لماذا؟ لم لا؟ | - Yes, she is. She saves patients' lives. نعم، أنها تساعد في انقاذ حياة المرضى. |





**2 Talking about teamwork.** الحديث عن العمل الجماعي

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Why is teamwork important? لماذا يعتبر العمل الجماعى امرا هاما؟ | - Teamwork makes team wins. العمل الجماعى يؤدى لفوز الفريق. |
| - Which team do you like? Why? اى فريق تحب؟ لماذا؟ | - Chelsea is my favourite team. They play very well. تشيلسى هو فريقى المفضل. إنهم يجيدون اللعب. |
| - Did the team win many games last year? Why? هل فاز الفريق بالكثير من المباريات العام الماضى؟ لماذا؟ | - Yes, they won many games last year. They scored many goals. نعم، فازوا بالعديد من المباريات العام الماضى. سجلوا العديد من الأهداف. |
| - When did your favourite team last win a competition? متى فاز فريقك المفضل باحدى المسابقات؟ | - They won the last competition. فازوا بالمسابقة الأخيرة. |
| - Would you like to play in a team? Why? Why not? هل تحب فى أن تلعب ضمن فريق ؟لماذا؟ لم لا؟ | - Of course, I'd like to play in a team because teamwork helps us win. بالطبع، أحب أن العب ضمن فريق لأن العمل الجماعى يساعدنا على الفوز. |

## General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

**1 Complete the following dialogue:** القاهرة - دور 2023

**Jana is telling Hala about her hero.**

Hala : Who is your hero, Jana?
Jana : ❶ .....
Hala : What is your father's job?
Jana : ❷ .....
Hala : ❸ ..... ?
Jana : He works in a hospital in Cairo.
Hala : ❹ ..... ?
Jana : No, he isn't a surgeon. He is a dentist.
Hala : Are you proud of him?
Jana : ❺ .....



CamScanner

## ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. The Egyptian player won the gold medal, he's a real ..... .
   a. coach b. junior c. hero d. trainer

2. A ..... is a girl or woman. SB
   a. man b. female c. male d. child

3. Magdy Yacoub started a ..... to help people with heart problems.
   a. work b. team c. competition d. charity

4. ..... is a sport with seven players in a team. SB
   a. Tennis b. Boxing c. Handball d. Snorkelling

5. The Egyptian handball team won an important ..... in 2020. SB
   a. competition b. station c. experiment d. expression

6. Omar is the first student ..... a prize in sports in our class.
   a. wins b. to win c. winning d. to winning

7. We ..... experiments at the school lab every Monday.
   a. make b. fly c. look d. do

### Language

8. **A:** Did you win the first prize? **B:** No, I ..... .
   a. didn't b. don't c. did d. do

9. Egypt's football team ..... the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010. WB الدقهلية/مبت عمر 2023
   a. win b. won c. to win d. winning

10. When ..... your grandfather born?
    a. is b. had c. was d. did

11. The Pyramids were ..... thousands of years ago.
    a. built b. build c. building d. to build

12. ..... the children in the park yesterday?
    a. Was b. Did c. Are d. Were

13. Once, I ..... money to a poor man.
    a. give b. gave c. giving d. to give





## ③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Did you ..... (bought) a new T-shirt yesterday?
2. Yousef ..... (be) born in 1962.
3. He ..... (come) first last year.
4. Karim ..... (visit) Luxor last week.
5. Heba ..... (travel) to Canada a week ago. WB
6. Magdy ..... (not / be) at home yesterday.

## ④ Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: WB

"What makes a hero"

(أجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Who's a hero?
- What do heroes often do?
- Why do you think someone is a hero?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- A hero is someone who ....
- A hero is someone who is able to.....
- A person can become a hero by.....



CamScanner

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26-28 WB pages 88-89

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| volunteer | متطوع | great grandfather | الجد الأكبر |
| the countryside | الريف | great grandmother | الجدة الكبرى |
| emergency | حالة طوارئ | body | جسم |
| natural disaster | كارثة طبيعية | proud | فخور |
| scary | مرعب / مخيف | patient (n/adj) | مريض / صبور |

## Parts of the body

### In your head

| | |
|---|---|
| brain | المخ |
| eyes | العينان |
| mouth | الفم |

### In your body

| | |
|---|---|
| heart | القلب |
| lungs | الرئتان |
| stomach | المعدة |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| family history | تاريخ العائلة | broken bones | عظام مكسورة |
| nature | الطبيعة | dirty water | مياه قذرة |
| function | وظيفة / مهمة | special | من نوع خاص |
| earthquake | زلزال | jewellery | مجوهرات |
| serious | خطير - جاد | organisation | منظمة / هيئة |
| the Red Crescent | الهلال الأحمر | breathe (d) | يتنفس |
| burns | حروق | research (ed) (n) | يجرى بحث / بحث |
| blood | دم | mend (ed) | يصلح / يجبر كسر |

## Verbs & Nouns

| Noun | | Verb | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cut | جرح | cut (cut / cut) | يجرح / يقطع |
| pump | مضخة | pump (ed) | يضخ |
| plant | نبات | plant (ed) | يزرع |
| infection | عدوى | infect (ed) | يعدى |





## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| work for no money | يعمل بدون مقابل مالي | pass an exam | يجتاز امتحان |
| feel pleased with | يشعر بسعادة تجاه | proud of | فخور بـ |
| do research | يجرى بحث | take in air | تأخذ الهواء |
| do a school project on | يقوم بمشروع مدرسي عن | write down | يدون / يسجل |
| stop infection | يمنع العدوى | different to | مختلف عن |
| mend broken bones | يجبر العظام المكسورة | pay for | يدفع مالاً من أجل |
| sew cuts | يخيط الجروح | fall off | يسقط من على |
| start school | يبدأ الدراسة | cut... into | يقطع ... إلى ... |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| sew | يخيط | sewed | sewn / sewed |
| pay | يدفع مالاً | paid | paid |
| burn | يحرق / يحترق | burnt / burned | burnt / burned |

| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| serious | خطير | dangerous | safe | آمن |
| different | مختلف | various | the same | نفس (الشيء / الشخص) |
| ancient | قديم جدًا | old | modern | حديث |
| sick | مريض | ill | healthy / well | بصحة جيدة |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| charity | جمعية خيرية | an organisation[1] that gives money, food, etc. to people who are in need[2] |
| the countryside | الريف | the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature |
| emergency | حالة طوارئ | something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about |
| natural disaster | كارثة طبيعية | - a terrible event, such as an earthquake[3]<br>- something that happens in nature and causes a lot of damage, for example a flood[4] or an earthquake |
| infection | عدوى | a disease[5] in a part of your body |
| proud | فخور | If you are proud of someone, you feel pleased with them. This is because you think they are or have done something very good. |

١- منظمة
٢- في احتياج
٣- زلزال
٤- فيضان
٥- مرض



CamScanner

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| volunteer | متطوع | - someone who works for no money to help people<br>- a person who does a job without being paid for it |
| cut | جرح | an injury when something cuts you, made by something sharp[7] |
| brain | المخ | it tells the parts of our body what to do |
| heart | القلب | it pumps blood around the body |
| lungs | الرئتان | they take in air into the body and help us to breathe[8] |
| pump | يضخ-مضخة | make water, air, gas, etc move in a particular direction; the thing you use to do this |

٦- إصابة
٧- حاد
٨- يتنفس

## Language Notes

### 1) feel - fall - fill

- feel (felt - felt) + adj. يشعر

Ex. I felt pleased with my brother. He won a prize.

- fall (fell - fallen) يقع/يَسقُط

Ex. The boy fell off his bike and broke his arm.

- fill (ed-ed) يملأ

Ex. Hany filled his football with air.

### 2) breathe - breath

- breathe (v - d) يتنفس

Ex. I can't breathe because of the smoke in the room.

- breath (n) النفس (شهيق وزفير)

Ex. He was sad. He took a deep breath.

### 3) special - private

- special مميز/من نوع خاص

Ex. It a special hospital for children.

- private خاص بشخص/ملكية خاصة

Ex. Don't read private letters. It's impolite.

### 4) stop

- stop + V-ing. يتوقف (عن شئ كان يفعله)

Ex. Omar stopped smoking last year.

- stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئًا ما

Ex. On my way home, I stopped to buy some fruits.





### 5) jewellery - furniture

uncountable وتعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد أى تأخذ فعل مفرد

• لاحظ أن هذه الكلمات لاتعد is - has - was - (v+s)

Ex. The furniture in our house is new and expensive.

## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The child _____ the balloon with air.
   a. felt b. failed c. filled d. fell
2. The jewellery in that museum _____ fantastic.
   a. is b. are c. were d. be
3. The doctor asked me to _____ slowly.
   a. breath b. birth c. breathe d. break
4. You should stop _____ the boy next to you, Hazem.
   a. to hit b. to hitting c. hitting d. hit
5. Patients in this hospital receive _____ treatment
   a. special b. ancient c. private d. brave

## Audioscript

SB Page (26)

استمع إلى النصوص

Yasser:

I didn't use to know very much about my family history. Then, last week, I did a school project[1] about someone in my family so I did some research[2] and I found out some really interesting things about my great grandfather. I knew he used to be a doctor, but I didn't know he worked for a charity[3]!

My great grandfather used to live in the countryside[4] and he worked as a volunteer*[5] doctor for the Red Crescent*[6] when there was a natural disaster*[7] or a health emergency[8]. For example, when there was an earthquake[9], my great grandfather went to help. The work was difficult and sometimes scary[10]. He also used to look after people who didn't have much money. I feel very proud[11] of him.

١- مشروع مدرسي
٢- بحث
٣- جمعية خيرية
٤- الريف
٥- متطوع
٦- جمعية الهلال الأحمر
٧- كارثة طبيعية
٨- حالة طوارئ
٩- زلزال
١٠- مرعب/مخيف
١١- فخور

**Say it correctly**

* volunteer
* Crescent
* disaster

ينطق حرف o فى هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق فى كلمة got

ينطق الحرف الأول مثل صوت k وينطق المقطع الأخير مثل كلمة sent

ينطق حرف s الملون مثل الصوت z



CamScanner

# Reading

SB Page (28)



## Ancient Egyptian doctors

We know how Ancient Egyptian[1] doctors helped their patients[2] because they wrote down[3] their ideas[4] thousands of years ago.

**The body**

Ancient Egyptian doctors understood that the heart pumps[5] blood[6] around the body. However, they used to think that the heart[7] also pumped air to our lungs[8]. They were also the first people to understand some of the things the brain[9] does, but they did not know how important it was.

**Ways to help**

Doctors used to use plants[10] to help people with burns[11] and to stop infections[12]. We still use some of these plants today. They also knew how to mend broken bones[13] and sew cuts,[14] but they didn't use to know everything. For example, they used to make medicine[15] from animal eyes[16]. They used to think that an animal's eye helped people who could not see!

١- المصريون القدماء
٢- مرضى
٣- يضخ/يدفع
٤- الهواء
٥- يضخ الدم
٦- الطب
٧- قلب
٨- الرئتان
٩- المخ
١٠- نباتات
١١- حروق
١٢- العدوى
١٣- يجبر العظام المكسورة
١٤- يخيط الجروح
١٥- دواء
١٦- عيون الحيوانات

**Say it correctly**

- pump — ينطق حرف U في هذه الكلمة كما ينطق في كلمة bull
- burn — تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة bird مع اختلاف نطق الحرف الأخير

WB Page (88)



## Magdy Yacoub

We should all be proud of[1] Magdy Yacoub. He was born[2] in 1935 in Bilbeis, but the family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he used to work in a special[3] hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy used to help to give people new hearts for the first time. Before the 1980s, people with heart problems often died. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives!

١- فخورون بـ
٢- وُلد
٣- من نوع خاص





WB Page (89)

Life in Ancient Egypt was different to today's. Poor children didn't use to go to school, but children from rich families used to start school[1] when they were about seven. When they were at home, children used to enjoy[2] playing games. When older parents died, they used to leave[3] their houses to the sons[4]. However, they used to leave things inside the house, such as jewellery[5] and furniture[6], to the daughters[7].



١- يبدأ الدراسة
٢- يستمتع بـ
٣- يترك
٤- الأبناء
٥- مجوهرات
٦- أثاث
٧- البنات

# Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. A natural ..... is a terrible event, such as an earthquake. SB
   a. water b. science c. gas d. disaster
2. A ..... helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home. SB
   a. school b. charity c. museum d. theater
3. ..... the meat into small pieces before you cook it. WB
   a. Boil b. Mend c. Pump d. Cut
4. The ..... is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature. SB
   a. countryside b. earthquake c. mountain d. crescent
5. My grandmother was born in 1955 and my ..... grandmother was born in 1930! WB
   a. big b. senior c. high d. great
6. If you are ..... of someone, you feel pleased with them. SB
   a. interested b. bored c. proud d. keen



CamScanner

7. Dirty water from a river can ..... you if you drink it. WB
a. infect b. enjoy c. clean d. mend

8. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do. SB
a. heart b. brain c. eye d. stomach

9. You can only open this door in a/an ....., such as a fire. WB
a. emergency b. charity c. pleasure d. organisation

10. He was a ..... for the Red Crescent.
a. beggar b. charity c. donation d. volunteer

11. This football has no air inside it. I need a ..... to fill it.
a. cut b. plant c. pump d. box

12. ..... is usually made of gold.
a. Furniture b. Jewellery c. Information d. Sheets

13. My friend had an accident, so he had a ..... arm.
a. break b. broke c. breaking d. broken

14. Can you tell me the ..... of the brain?
a. homework b. function c. housework d. career

## Bit by Bit Exercises

15. Children in Egypt ..... school at the age of four.
a. start b. walk c. finish d. play

16. The little child ..... off his bike and broke his leg.
a. felt b. filled c. failed d. fell

17. Ola went to a surgeon to ..... the cut in her hand.
a. cook b. break c. sew d. plant

18. Lungs take in air and help us to .....
a. release b. breathe c. please d. relax

19. The opposite of "ancient" is .....
a. modern b. awful c. old d. dangerous

20. I feel pleased ..... my good exam result.
a. at b. with c. on d. for





# Language

## used to اعتاد أن

### Affirmative الإثبات

Subject فاعل + used to + inf. اعتاد أن

• نستخدم (used to + inf.) للحديث عن عادات أو أفعال تكررت فى الماضى ولا تحدث الآن.

used to play = played

Ex. I used to eat much bread, but now I don't.

### Negative النفى

didn't use to + inf. لم يعتاد أن

Ex. I didn't use to drive cars when I was younger, but I drive cars now.

### Question السؤال

• يمكن أن نسأل بـ [هل ...؟] كالتالى:

Did + subject فاعل + use to + inf....? هل... اعتاد أن...؟

Ex. Did you use to read books when you were a child?

- Yes, I did. / - No, I didn't.

• يمكن أن نستخدم كلمات الاستفهام كما يلى:

كلمة استفهام + did + subject فاعل + use to + inf ...?

Ex. What did your brother use to do when he was young?

- My brother used to play music.



CamScanner

**Notes**

Ex. I used to be lazy, but now I am not.

- في المثال السابق، جاء فعل be بعد used to ثم الصفة ولذلك استخدمنا am not لتعني أنني لم أعد أتصف بهذه الصفة:

ولكن

Ex. I used to come late to school, but now I don't.

- أما إذا جاء فعل أساسي come بعد used to كما في المثال السابق نستخدم don't للإشارة أني لم أعد أفعل هذا الفعل:

- وردت الجملة التالية في امتحان محافظة المنوفية / تلا ٢٠٢٣

Ex. He used to be fat, but now he ----------.

a. hasn't b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't

Answer d. isn't

## Exercises on Language

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. I used to ------ basketball, but I don't now. SB
   a. played b. play c. playing d. plays
2. Before he got married, Yasser's dad ------ live in Cairo. SB
   a. was using b. don't use to c. uses to d. didn't use to
3. When you were ten, ------ you use to live in a different house? SB
   a. do b. does c. did d. to do
4. Yasser's uncle ------ live in Tunisia. SB
   a. used to b. used c. using d. is used to
5. When she was a child, Yasser's Mum ------ play the piano every day. SB
   a. was used to b. used to c. was using to d. use to
6. There ------ a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three. WB
   a. weren't b. didn't c. isn't d. didn't use to be
7. My grandfather ------ football when he was young, but he can't walk now. WB
   a. play b. used to play c. use to play d. plays
8. Dina ------ give money to charity, but now she does. إدارة دسوقي 2022 SB
   a. used b. didn't use c. used to d. didn't use to





9. Yasser's grandmother ------ work in a hospital. 2023 SB
   a. used to b. is used c. uses to d. is using to
10. When I was young, I used ------ chess. 2023
    a. playing b. to playing c. to play d. played
11. Did he ------ to walk to work? 2022
    a. used b. uses c. using d. use
12. Where did you ------ ? 2022
    a. use to live b. used to live c. lived d. living

### Bit by Bit Exercises

13. ---------- you use to go on boat trips when you lived in Aswan?
    a. Do b. Did c. Does d. Are
14. I ------ to do sport in the club when I was a child.
    a. use b. uses c. using d. used
15. We used to ------ in the countryside, but now we live in the city.
    a. lived b. live c. lives d. living
16. Dad used to be late for work, but now he -------.
    a. do b. does c. doesn't d. isn't

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. Yasser's grandfather ---------- (doesn't) use to know how to drive a car. SB
2. ---------- (Do) you use to have a lot of homework? WB
3. How did you ---------- (used) to go to school? أسيوط / منفلوط 2023 WB
4. I used to ---------- (had) my lunch with my father when I was young. الشرقية / الزقازيق 2022
5. Where did he ---------- (used) to live? الشرقية / مشتول السوق 2023
6. I ---------- (not used) to smoke. الجيزة / منشأة القناطر 2023

### Bit by Bit Exercises

7. What ---------- (do) your father use to do in the past?
8. When I was young, I used to ---------- (playing) tennis.
9. My father used to ---------- (worked) in a tourist company five years ago.



CamScanner

## Speaking

### 1) Discussing family history

-مناقشة تاريخ الأسرة:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Do you know much about your family history?<br>هل تعرف الكثير عن تاريخ أسرتك؟ | - Yes, I know much about my great grandparents.<br>نعم، أعرف الكثير عن تاريخ أجدادي الكبار. |
| - What job did your great grandfather do?<br>ما الوظيفة التي كان يشغلها جدك الأكبر؟ | - My great grandfather was a famous doctor.<br>كان جدي الكبير طبيبًا مشهورًا. |
| - What things did your great grandfather use to do?<br>ما الأشياء التي اعتاد جدك الكبير على فعلها؟ | - He was a hero, he used to look after poor patients.<br>كان بطلاً، حيث اعتاد على الاعتناء بالمرضى الفقراء. |

### 2) Talking about Ancient Egyptian doctors

-الحديث عن أطباء مصر القدماء

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - How do we know about Ancient Egyptian doctors?<br>كيف نعرف عن أطباء مصر القدماء؟ | - They wrote down their ideas thousands of years ago.<br>كتبوا (دونوا) أفكارهم منذ آلاف السنين. |
| - What did they use to know about the heart?<br>ماذا عرفوا بشأن القلب؟ | - They understand that the heart pumps blood around the body.<br>فهموا أن القلب يضخ الدم إلى الجسم. |
| - What did they use to do to help patients?<br>ماذا اعتادوا على فعله لمساعدة المرضى؟ | - They used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop infections.<br>اعتادوا على استخدام النباتات لمساعدة الناس من الحروق وإيقاف العدوى. |
| - Are you proud of Ancient Egyptian doctors? Why/ Why not?<br>هل أنت فخور بأطباء مصر القدماء؟ لماذا؟ | - Yes, because they used to think how to help people all the time.<br>نعم، لأنهم اعتادوا على التفكير في الاعتناء بالناس طوال الوقت. |





## General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

### 1) Complete the following dialogue:

**Ali is talking to Khalid about his great grandfather.**

Khalid : Do you know much about your great grandfather?

Ali : ❶ ---------- .

Khalid : ❷ ---------- ?

Ali : He used to have a big charity in his village.

Khalid : ❸ ---------- ?

Ali : Yes, he used to give money to the poor.

Khalid : Are you proud of him?

Ali : ❹ ---------- .

Khalid : Do you want to be like him?

Ali : ❺ ---------- .

### 2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Vocabulary**

1. The _____ take air into the body. الدقهلية / منية النصر 2022
   a. ears b. lungs c. teeth d. eyes

2. The _____ pumps blood around the body. SB الجيزة / منشأة القناطر 2023
   a. stomache b. brain c. heart d. lung

3. I wrote _____ the ideas which the teacher suggested.
   a. down b. about c. over d. above

4. A _____ is someone who works for no money to help people. المنيا / مغاغة - القاهرة 2023
   a. scientist b. volunteer c. nurse d. police officer

**Language**

5. Huda's mother _____ be a nurse ten years ago.
   a. uses to b. use to c. used d. used to



CamScanner

6. ..... you use to go to museums when you were a child?
a. Do b. Are c. Did d. Have

7. Ali used to ..... up early for school.
a. gets b. get c. got d. getting

8. Did Hossam Hassan ..... captain of the Egyptian Football Team? SB
a. uses to be b. was c. be d. use to be

9. My father ..... play chess when he was a child.
a. used to b. use c. using to d. didn't used

10. Where ..... you use to live before you came to Cairo?
a. does b. do c. doing d. did

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Manal ..... (use) to like maths when she was at school.
2. How long ..... (do) you use to study when you were young?
3. What games did you ..... (used) to play with your friends? WB
4. She ..... (used) to drink milk, but now she does.
5. When older parents died, they used to ..... (left) thier houses to the sons. WB

**4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"How your life used to be"

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What did you use to do?
- How did you help your father?
- How did you help your mother?
- What did you use to do for your grandparents?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- When I was ...., I used to.....
- I used to ..... father .....
- I helped .... in the kitchen.



# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 29-31 WB pages 90-92

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| scared | مرعوب | street cleaners | عمال نظافة الشوارع |
| heroic | بطولى/نبيل | nursing | تمريض |
| sure | متأكد | manager | مدير |
| rubbish collectors | عمال جمع القمامة | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| education | التعليم | Athens | أثينا (عاصمة اليونان) |
| firefighter | رجل إطفاء | the Parthenon | البارثينون (معبد إغريقى بأثينا) |
| captain | كابتن (قائد فريق) | the Island of Crete | جزيرة كريت |
| Faculty of Nursing | كلية التمريض | reason | سبب/مبرر |
| main idea | فكرة رئيسية | continue (d) | يستمر |
| painting | لوحة فنية/الرسم بالألوان | agree (d) | يوافق |
| statue* | تمثال | collect (ed) | يجمع |
| championship | بطولة | study (ied) (n) | يدرس - دراسة |
| society | مجتمع | | |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| try their best | يحاولون بأقصى مالديهم من جهد | at university | فى الجامعة |
| do something useful | يفعل شىء مفيد | answer to | إجابة عن |
| put (someone) first | يضع (شخص) فى مقدمة/أولوياته | on TV | فى التليفزيون |
| keep our cities clean | نحافظ على مدننا نظيفة | scared of | مرعوب من |
| get better | يتحسن | In other words,... | بمعنى آخر |
| help pay for | تساعد على دفع تكلفة | | |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| put | يضع | put | put |
| keep | يحافظ | kept | kept |



CamScanner

## Confusing words

عادة ما نخلط بين معاني الكلمات الآتية، ادرس الفرق بينهم جيدًا:

| | |
|---|---|
| • to حرف جر بمعنى (إلى/أن/لكي)<br>Ex. I went to the zoo yesterday.<br>Ex. Omar wants to be a doctor.<br>Ex. He studies hard to be a doctor. | • too ظرف يعني (جدًا/أكثر من اللازم)<br>Ex. This box is too heavy, I can't carry it.<br>• two اثنان<br>Ex. Dad bought two books yesterday. |
| • know فعل بمعنى (يعرف)<br>Ex. This is Ali. Do you know him? | • no لا (تستخدم للإجابة عن سؤال بهل في النفي)<br>Ex. A: Do you have a car?<br>B: No, I don't. |
| • their صفة ملكية للفاعل الجمع (They)<br>Ex. The kids are eating their meals. | • there ظرف مكان للبعيد بمعنى (هناك)<br>Ex. Aswan is a big city. I live there. |
| • its صفة ملكية للفاعل الغائب غير العاقل<br>Ex. The cat drank its milk. | • it's اختصار (it is) ويليها (n / adj):<br>Ex. I like pizza, it is (it's) delicious. |
| • than حرف جر يستخدم مع صفات المقارنة<br>Ex. Magdy is taller than me. | • then حال بمعنى (بعد ذلك)<br>Ex. I got a degree. I then got a good job. |

| Word | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|
| useful | مفيد | helpful | useless غير مفيد |
| true | حقيقي | real | untrue غير حقيقي |
| scared | مرعوب | frightened | brave شجاع |
| main | رئيسي | major | minor ثانوي |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| heroic | بطولي/نبيل | very brave or great |
| manager | مدير | a person whose job is to organise[1] people in a company or business |
| scared | مرعوب | frightened[2] or afraid that something bad could happen |

١- ينظم
٢- مرعوب





## Language Notes

### 1) reason - cause

• reason (for) مبرر/تفسير
Ex. What is the reason for leaving your job?

• cause (of) سبب
Ex. Do you know the cause of the accident?

### 2) scared - scary

• scared خائف/مرعوب
Ex. When the baby saw the dog, it was scared.

• scary مخيف/مرعب
Ex. I saw a huge snake on TV. It was scary.

### 3) painting - drawing

• painting لوحة فنية - الرسم بالألوان
Ex. This painting is very colourful.

• drawing رسمة - الرسم (بالقلم الرصاص/الجاف)
Ex. He is good at drawing with pencils.

### 4) nursing - nursery

• nursing التمريض
Ex. She studies at the Fuculty of Nursing.

• nursery الحضانة
Ex. The company has a nursery for the worker's children.

### 5) captain

• captain كابتن (قائد فريق)
Ex. Salah is the captain of the Egyptian Football National Team.

• captain قبطان (قائد سفينة)
Ex. The clever captain saved the ship from the storm.



CamScanner

WB Page (90)



Soha : All art is important.
Sara : What do you mean?
Soha : We all need art.
Sara : I'm not sure what you mean.
Soha : In other words, art can teach us things.
Sara : Sorry, I don't understand.
Soha : I mean, when we see a painting[2] or a statue[3], we can learn things about life.

١- الفن
٢- لوحة فنية
٣- تمثال

***



Karim : I think that all teachers are heroes.
Tarek : What do you mean?
Karim : I mean, without teachers, we would not learn anything.
Tarek : There's the internet.
Karim : Sorry, I don't understand. I'm not sure what you mean.
Tarek : In other words, we don't need teachers because we have the internet.
Karim : I don't agree. We will always need teachers.

WB Page (91)

**New Message**

Hi!



My name's Adam and I want to write about a person I am very proud to know. Her name is Mrs Karima Mohamed. When she was younger, she used to study very hard because she wanted to be a nurse. She also used to work to help pay[1] for her studies, but that is not the reason[2] I am proud of her! In 2020, there was a health emergency[3] and many people were in hospital. I became ill, too. I was in hospital for two weeks and Mrs Karima Mohamed helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind[4]. I now know that she is one of the most important nursing managers in Cairo, so I am very happy she helped me. I am very proud of her!

١- تساعد فى نفقة
٢- سبب/مبرر
٣- حالة طوارئ صحية
٤- عطوفة





## Videoscript

SB Page (29)

There are some great jobs that you can do. Many great jobs do something to help other people.

Many people think that being a firefighter[1] is a great job because they save people's lives. Sometimes they have to do dangerous things to save people.

It is also a great job to be a doctor or nurse. They save the lives of people every day. Many people think they are heroes!

This is a famous doctor called Professor Rashad Barsoum. He was born in Asyut in 1941. Today, he is one of the most important kidney[2] doctors in the world.

He also teaches people to become doctors at Cairo University. One day these people will save lives and be new heroes.

A lot of people think teachers are heroes. They teach us to read, to write and to do many other things.

Which job would you like to do? Will you be a hero?

١- رجل إطفاء
٢- كُلية

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. Street _____ help to keep our cities clean. SB
   a. builders b. makers c. walkers d. cleaners
2. I think rubbish _____ can be heroes. SB
   a. reviewers b. managers c. collectors d. bakers
3. We went to my cousin's house this morning, but nobody was _____. WB
   a. there b. their c. they are d. they're
4. I don't think I _____ the answer to this question. WB
   a. go b. know c. no d. show
5. Warda is good at maths, and she's good at English, _____. WB
   a. too b. two c. to d. twice



CamScanner

6. Athens is a great city and the Parthenon is _____ most famous building. WB
a. it is b. it's c. its' d. its

WB الأهرام التجريبي/التجريبية 2022
7. Are you taller _____ your brother?
a. that b. than c. this d. then

القاهرة 2023
8. You can see _____ in a museum.
a. castles b. players c. statues d. tents

التجريبية / مصر 2023
9. My sister is a nurse. She helps her patients to _____ better.
a. get b. have c. do d. make

## Bit by Bit Exercises

10. I asked Samy about the _____ for his happiness.
a. season b. reason c. cause d. manager

11. Kind teachers always give presents to _____ clever students.
a. there b. they're c. their d. they are

12. My brother is trying his _____ to pass this year's exams.
a. better b. best c. good d. the best

13. That poor girl works to help _____ for her study.
a. to paying b. for paying c. paying d. pay

14. The word "scared" means _____.
a. brave b. dangerous c. frightened d. scary

15. Do you know the answer _____ this question?
a. at b. to c. on d. in

16. The little girl is always _____ of dogs. She doesn't like them.
a. scary b. proud c. scared d. fond

17. We all helped _____ our street clean.
a. keep b. come c. do d. stop

18. My mother works as a nursing _____ in a big hospital.
a. farmer b. officer c. tour guide d. manager

19. This nurse won a prize for her _____ work.
a. silly b. useless c. heroic d. ugly

20. You must be _____ that the food you eat is healthy.
a. true b. sure c. care d. able





## Speaking

### Checking you understand

- التأكد من فهمك

• عندما نتأكد من فهمنا لموضوع نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

- What do you mean? ماذا تقصد/تعنى؟
- I'm (not) sure what you mean. إنى متأكد/لست متأكدًا مما تعنى.
- Sorry, I don't understand. آسف، لا أفهم.

• عند توضيح معلومة خاصة بموضوع، نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

- I mean... اقصد/اعنى...
- In other words, ... .... بعبارات أخرى،

• للموافقة/للرفض على رأى نستخدم:

- I (don't) agree! أوافق/لا أوافق!

## General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

مصر / الحمام 2023

**Youssif is asking Mohammed about his father's job.**

**Youssif** : Hi, Mohammed. What does your father do?

**Mohammed** : ① _____.

**Youssif** : ② _____?

**Mohammed** : He works in a big hospital in Cairo.

**Youssif** : ③ _____?

**Mohammed** : He examines them and gives them medicine.

**Youssif** : Does he like helping the poor?

**Mohammed** : ④ _____.

**Youssif** : Do you like to be a doctor, too?

**Mohammed** : ⑤ _____.



CamScanner

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**Vocabulary**

1. Our ..... is full of great heroes.
   a. captain b. society c. statue d. reason
2. I ..... with you, we should be proud of our teachers.
   a. agree b. collect c. study d. continue
3. ..... hard work, you wouldn't pass your exams.
   a. For b. By c. Without d. Of
4. Rami is an active student, he ..... rubbish from his class.
   a. manages b. studies c. drops d. collects
5. The opposite of "useful" is .....
   a. useless b. unable c. helpful d. able
6. Samy is the ..... of our team. He plays very well.
   a. manager b. coach c. captain d. doctor
7. The colours of this ..... is very bright.
   a. painting b. hero c. charity d. drawing
8. Rubbish ..... come to our street every day to take rubbish away.
   a. cleaners b. managers c. collectors d. volunteers

**3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:** WB

"A hero you are proud of" (مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Who are you proud of?
- What did he/she do when he/she was young?
- How did he / she become your hero?
- Why do people like him / her?
- Is he/she important?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm proud of.....
- He / She helped in .....
- He / She studied ..... to become a .....
- He / She ..... very kind.



# Unit 3 Review

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| handball | لعبة كرة اليد | proud | فخور | volunteer | متطوع |
| hero (heroes) | بطل (أبطال) | competition | مسابقة/منافسة | body | جسم |
| junior | ناشىء/مبتدىء | the final | المباراة النهائية | sure | متأكد |
| junior team | فريق الناشئين | win (won / won) | يفوز | heroic | بطولى |
| senior | كبير فى السن/راشد | charity | جمعية خيرية/اعمال خيرية | nursing | تمريض |
| senior team | الفريق الأول | | | manager | مدير |
| emergency | حالة طوارىء | the countryside | الريف | patient (n) | شخص مريض |
| natural disaster | كارثة طبيعية | great grandmother | الجدة الكبرى | | |
| scared | مرعوب/خائف | great grandfather | الجد الأكبر | | |
| scary | مرعب/مخيف | female | أنثى/مؤنث | | |

## Jobs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| scientist | عالم | nuclear scientist | عالم نووى |
| surgeon | طبيب جرّاح | street cleaners | عمال نظافة الشوارع |
| patron | راع/كفيل | rubbish collectors | عمال جمع القمامة |
| sports coach | مدرب رياضى | | |

## Verbs & Nouns

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| do a job | يؤدى وظيفة/يقوم بمهمة | start a charity | ينشئ مؤسسة خيرية |
| do / play a sport | يلعب رياضة | win a competition | يفوز بمسابقة |
| do experiments | يجرى تجارب عملية | get a prize | يحصل على جائزة |
| start school | يبدأ الدراسة | get a job | يحصل على وظيفة |



CamScanner

# Language

## 1 The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

- يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط من التصريف الثانى للفعل. تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة يضاف لها (d / ed / ied) وأفعال غير منتظمة (شاذة) والتي تحفظ كما هي:

**walk → walked** **see → saw**

- يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث فى الماضى وانتهى ولسرد أحداث قصة.
- ننفى الفعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط باستخدام (did not = didn't) قبل مصدر الفعل:

**فاعل + did not = didn't + inf.**

Ex. I did not (didn't) watch the film yesterday.

- للسؤال عن الماضى البسيط بـ «هل..؟» نستخدم:

**Did + فاعل + inf...?**

Ex. Did you travel to Alexandria last night?

- Yes, I travelled to Alexandria last night.

- ويمكن أن نجيب بإجابة مختصرة كالآتى:

- Yes, I did. الإجابة فى الإثبات - No, I didn't. الإجابة فى النفى

- للسؤال بـ «كلمة استفهام» في زمن الماضي البسيط نتبع الصيغة الآتية:

**كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + inf...?**

Ex. When did you buy this laptop? - I bought it last week.

## 2 used to اعتاد أن

١. نستخدم (used to + inf.) للحديث عن عادات أو أفعال كانت متكررة فى الماضى ولا تحدث الآن.

Ex. I used to visit my uncle's farm when I was young.

٢. ننفي (used to) كالآتي:

**فاعل + did not (didn't) + use to + inf.**

Ex. I didn't use to sleep early when I was in Alexandria.

٣. نسأل بـ (هل) عن (used to) كالآتي:

**Did + فاعل + use to + inf ...?**

Ex. Did you use to read stories when you were younger?

- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

٤. نسأل بـ (كلمة استفهام) عن (used to) كما يلي:

**كلمة استفهام + did + فاعل + use to + inf...?**

Ex. How did you use to go to school? - I used to take the school bus.





# Speaking

## 1 Talking about heroes. -الحديث عن الأبطال.

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - What makes a hero? | - A hero is a brave person, kind and patient. |
| - Why is a firefighter a hero? | - He saves people form fires. |
| - Is a nurse a hero? Why? Why not? | - Yes, she is. She saves patients' lives. |

## 2 Talking about teamwork. الحديث عن العمل الجماعي

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Why is teamwork important? | - Teamwork makes team wins. |
| - Which team do you like? Why? | - Chelsea is my favourite team. They play very well. |

## 3 Discussing family history مناقشة تاريخ الأسرة

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Do you know much about your family history? | - Yes, I know much about my great. grandparents |
| - What job did your great grandfather do? | - My great grandfather was a famous doctor. |

## 4 Talking about Ancient Egyptian doctors. الحديث عن أطباء مصر القدماء

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - How do we know about Ancient Egyptian doctors? | - They wrote down this ideas thousands of years ago. |
| - What did they use to do to help patients? | - They used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop infections. |



CamScanner

## 5 Checking you understand

- التأكد من فهمك.
- عندما نتأكد من فهمنا لموضوع نستخدم العبارات الآتية:
- What do you mean?
- I'm (not) sure what you mean.
- Sorry, I don't understand.
- عند توضيح معلومة خاصة بموضوع، نستخدم العبارات الآتية:
- In other words.
- I mean...
- للموافقة/للرفض على رأي نستخدم:
- I (don't) agree!

# General Exercises on Unit 3

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Dina and Rama are talking about the Red Crescent.**

Dina : Have you heard about the Red Crescent?

Rama : 1 ..... It is one of the most important charities in the world.

Dina : Who helps in the charity?

Rama : 2 .....

Dina : 3 ..... ?

Rama : Volunteers help ill and injured people when there is a natural disaster.

Dina : 4 ..... ?

Rama : Yes, many people give money and clothes.

Dina : Thank you for this information.

Rama : 5 .....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Vocabulary**

1. I bought ..... books yesterday. WB
   a. two b. to c. too d. toe
2. You should ..... sport to keep healthy.
   a. make b. do c. give d. take
3. A/An ..... does a job without being paid.
   a. patient b. engineer c. volunteer d. adult
4. You can give money to a ..... to help poor people. SB
   a. charity b. farm c. beach d. cinema
5. Adam fell off his bike and had a big ..... on his arm. WB
   a. pump b. way c. infection d. cut
6. The ..... of our company is active and kind.
   a. police officer b. manager c. teacher d. farmer





7. A ..... teaches people how to play or improve a sport. WB
   a. sports coach b. scientist c. teacher d. professor
8. This book is about some ..... Egyptian people who we are all proud of.
   a. useless b. silly c. dangerous d. heroic
9. A/An ..... is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about. SB
   a. charity b. emergency c. nature d. organisation

**Language**

10. My uncle ..... to be a police officer.
    a. using b. is used c. used d. uses
11. My uncle Rashid ..... born in 1961. WB
    a. were b. was c. is d. does
12. I started preparatory school a year ..... SB
    a. at b. for c. in d. ago
13. I used to play football, but now I .....
    a. didn't b. don't c. am not d. will not
14. How did people use to ..... in the past?
    a. travels b. travelled c. travel d. travelling
15. He ..... a junior chess competition when he was only 12! WB
    a. won b. win c. wins d. to win

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My uncle lived in Giza ..... (for) 2016.
2. I ..... (go) to primary school for six years. SB
3. Where ..... (does) you use to live in the past?
4. Tamer didn't ..... (used) to study hard at school.
5. Yesterday, we ..... (have) lunch in a big restaurant.
6. ..... (Do) you use to do sport when you were a child?

### 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How life used to be different in Ancient Egypt"

(اكتب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Was life in Ancient Egypt different to today's life?
- Did all children use to go to school?
- What did children use to do at home?
- What did the daughters use to get?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Life in Ancient Egypt was....
- Poor children didn't use to.....
- Children used to enjoy.....



CamScanner

# Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات درست بالوحدة

### 1- What makes a hero

(Lessons 1 & 2)

A hero is a person who is able to help others. A person who saves someone who is in danger. A hero thinks about other people. Firefighters are heroes. They think about saving people. Sometimes a hero can be a teacher. He/ She can teach you to read and write. That will make a difference to your life. We have a lot of heroes who we're proud of in Egypt.

### 2- How my life used to be

(Lessons 3 & 4)

My life was different when I was young. I used to have different activities. When I was seven, I used to help my parents in the house. I helped my mother with the kitchen work. I used to help my father with his work in the garden. I used to help my grandfather on his farm. Now, I'm much older. I have a different house, different friends and different activities.

### 3- A hero I am proud of

(Lessons 5 & 6)

I'm proud of Mrs Karima Mahmoud. She is a great woman. When she was young, she used to study hard to become a nurse. She worked hard to pay for her study. When she became a nurse, she helped many people in her hospital. Her patients like her because she is very kind. She became an important nursing manager.

### 4- How life used to be different in Ancient Egypt

(General Exercises)

Life in Ancient Egypt was different to today's life. Poor children didn't use to go to school. Children from rich families used to go to school. Children used to enjoy playing games. When parents died, they left their houses to the sons. The Ancient Egyptians lived around the Nile River. They could grow crops. They built pyramids.

### 5- My future job

(Al Azhar)

I would like to be a scientist in the future. I like this job. I can make people's life easier. I can do something new and helpful. Without science life could be hard.

### 6- A person that I am proud of

(Test)

To : radi(a)ali@yahoo.com
From : nadi(a)omar@gmail.com
Subject : A person I'm proud of

Dear Nadi(a),
How are you? I want to tell you about my mother. My mother is a person I am very proud of. When she was younger, she used to study very hard. She wanted to be a doctor. She used to work to help pay for her studies. In 2020, there was a health emergency. I became ill. I was in hospital for two weeks. She helped me and other people in the hospital. She was always very kind. I am very proud of her!
Yours,
Radi(a)



Unit 3

# Al Azhar Test

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker's uncle is a/an _____.
   a. doctor b. engineer c. teacher d. farmer
2. The speaker's uncle works for _____.
   a. a factory b. a school
   c. the Red Crescent d. a farm

## B Language Functions

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1. Abdullah : Did you meet your friends yesterday?
   Amr : .....
2. Esraa : .....?
   Farha : Because he works as a volunteer for the Red Crescent.

## C Usage

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We should help _____ collectors and keep our city clean.
   a. water b. money c. rubbish d. stamp
2. Leila used to eat outside, but now she _____.
   a. don't b. doesn't c. isn't d. didn't
3. I always _____ my family when I travel for a long time.
   a. lose b. waste c. throw d. miss
4. Our neighbour _____ to a new house last month.
   a. moved b. has moved c. will move d. moves
5. The _____ helped the team to play the match well.
   a. volunteer b. coach c. engineer d. nurse
6. The firemen _____ two women from the fire in this building yesterday.
   a. saved b. are saved c. were saved d. was saved



CamScanner

## D Reading Comprehension

**4 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Every person in this world has a dream which he/she wants to achieve during his / her life. This dream encourages him / her to do better and better and move towards his / her goal.

Not everything you think of can be your dream. Some things are just a part of the character you grow up with during your childhood. However, your dream plays an important role in your life. You should know how to realise a dream. So, don't leave your dream and try to make it come true.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What does every person in this world have?
.....
2. How can you realise your dream?
.....
3. What is your dream for the future?
.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. A person's dream ..... him/her to do better.
   a. stops  b. encourages  c. asks  d. collects
5. A dream plays a/an ..... role in our life.
   a. important  b. slow  c. fast  d. simple

## E Writing

**5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"Your future job" (محاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What would you like to be?
- Why do you choose this job?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'd like to be a/an .... in the future.
- This job will make me be able to.....



# Unit 3 TEST

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker's parents lived in ..... when they were younger.
   a. Cairo  b. Luxor  c. Giza  d. Aswan
2. They moved to Port Said in .....
   a. 2005  b. 2000  c. 2006  d. 1990
3. The speaker's father got a job in Cairo ..... years ago.
   a. 10  b. 12  c. 15  d. 20
4. They moved to a bigger ..... a year later when the speaker was born.
   a. flat  b. house  c. village  d. villa

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:** SB

**Esraa and Amal are talking about ancient Egyptian doctors.**

Esraa : Did you read about ancient Egyptian doctors?
Amal : ①.....
Esraa : Do you think that they helped their patients?
Amal : ②.....
Esraa : ③.....?
Amal : They used plants to help people with burns and to stop infections.
Esraa : Did they know anything about the heart?
Amal : ④.....
Esraa : ⑤.....?
Amal : You can visit museums and temples to know more about them.



CamScanner

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Omar and Salma went to Greece on holiday. They stayed in a nice, big hotel. In the mornings, they had breakfast at the hotel and in the evenings, they ate dinner at restaurants.

One night, they went to a famous restaurant and they sat outside because it was lovely, warm weather. They ordered fish with salad and chips. The waiter served it. They saw a big sign. It said, 'Don't feed the cats.' Soon, they saw a beautiful cat. It came up to their table. It sat beside Salma.

Salma cut a piece of fish and gave it to the cat. It ate the fish. The waiter was not happy! The cat did not wait for another piece. It jumped on the table, took the fish and quickly jumped back down. At that moment, the waiter came back out. He saw the cat with the fish. He looked at Salma, but he didn't say a thing. His look said it all.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Where did Omar and Salma go on holiday?

.....

2. Why did they sit outside the famous restaurant?

.....

3. What did the sign say?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the .....
   a. fish b. table c. cat d. piece
5. The restaurant was ..... to put the sign.
   a. bad b. right c. wrong d. rude
6. The waiter gave Salma a bad .....
   a. meal b. fish c. cat d. look

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I always ..... money to a charity that helps poor children. WB
   a. win b. make c. do d. give
2. When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the .....? WB
   a. side b. earth c. countryside d. continent
3. A ..... worker helps people or animals that need help. WB
   a. charity b. sports c. nuclear d. fruit
4. She helped to look ..... poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969. SB
   a. for b. in c. after d. from





5. This is the town where I .....
   a. bearing b. was born c. bear d. to bear
6. Lina's cousin is in hospital with an eye .....
   a. infection b. part c. nature d. look WB
7. Winning the gold medal is ..... work for any player.
   a. hero b. heroic c. poor d. bad
8. My uncle ..... a firefighter, but now he is a police officer.
   a. used to be b. is c. uses to be d. were SB
9. Where ..... live before you moved to Alexandria?
   a. are you b. do you c. you used to d. did you use to WB
10. Mona's mother is a/an ..... at the hospital; they don't pay her for her work.
    a. coach b. adult c. patient d. volunteer WB

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. In 1990, he ..... (becomes) the number one chess player in our city. WB
2. Did you visit the Pyramids when you ..... (are) young?
3. Hany ..... (uses to) eat much chocolate when he was young.
4. Amany used to ..... (playing) music when she was at school.

## E Writing

**6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:**

to your friend Nadi(a) telling him/ her about a person you are proud of:

- **Your name is Radi(a) and your email address is radi(a)ali@yahoo.com**
- **Your friend's email address is nadi(a)omar@gmail.com**

(محاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الألكترونى:

- **Who is the person you are very proud of?**
- **What is this person's job?**
- **Why are you proud of him / her?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **.... is a person I'm proud of.**
- **He / She works as a/an .....**
- **When he/ she was younger, he / she used to .....**



CamScanner

# Review A

SB pages 32-33 WB pages 93-94

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | |
|---|---|
| Antarctica | maths test |
| advertisement | dark |
| experience | daily life |
| weather | look forward to |

## Audioscript

SB Page (32)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Dalia** : Hi Dad, I'm doing a school project about our family history. Can I ask you some questions?

**Dad** : Of course, what do you want to know?

**Dalia** : Where did you live when you were a child? Was it in Luxor?

**Dad** : No, I moved to Luxor when I was a teenager. When I was a child, I used to live in a village outside the city.

**Dalia** : Oh, I see. Who did you live with?

**Dad** : I lived with my mum, dad, my sisters and also my grandparents. We used to live in my grandparents' house?

**Dalia** : What time did you usually get up?

**Dad** : Very early! On a school day, I got up at about 4.30 am!

**Dalia** : Really? Why did you get up so early?

**Dad** : Because my school was very far from where we lived. It took me an hour to get there.

**Dalia** : How did you travel to school?

**Dad** : I went on my bike. We didn't have a car then.

**Dalia** : What subjects did and didn't you like at school?

**Dad** : My favourite subject was maths, but I didn't like history.





WB Page (93)

My name's Hana. This is a picture of my class. We are walking through an attractive[1] park on a school trip. There are three teachers with us. Our English teacher, Miss Badria, is on the left, near a large lake[2]. I am in the foreground, with my best friends Lamia and Ola. I am in the middle and Lamia is on the right. My twin[3] cousins Azza and Randa are in the background. Azza has striped[4] school bag.

## Reading

SB Page (33)



### Life in Antarctica[1]

**. Why did you come to work in Antarctica?**

I used to work as a scientist[2] at a university. Then I saw a job advertisement[3] for scientists to work in Antarctica for a year and I thought it looked interesting.

**. What's daily life like in Antarctica?**

Some things are the same as home! We usually get up at about 7a.m. We have breakfast and do some exercise. Then we start work at 9 a.m. and finish at 5 p.m. We eat dinner together and then watch TV, play some games or read.

**. What is different about life in Antarctica?**

At the moment it is winter so it is dark[4] all day and night! The weather is very cold and windy. Only 20 people are working here now. I miss my friends and family, but it is an amazing experience[5]!

SB Page (33)

**New Message**

Hi!

How are you? I wanted your help with something. My homework is to write about life for children around the world. I have some questions about life in Egypt when you were a little child. What games did you use to play? What did your favourite toy use to be? What did you use to eat?

I hope you can answer the questions for me.

Write soon!

Max

Send



CamScanner

# Test on Units 1, 2 & 3

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker used to work as a/an .....
   a. teacher  b. engineer  c. scientist  d. farmer
2. The speaker saw a job .....
   a. advertisement  b. poster  c. uniform  d. money
3. The job was in a big .....
   a. company  b. city  c. school  d. factory
4. The speaker thought the job looked .....
   a. boring  b. hard  c. interesting  d. easy

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:** SB

**Ayman is doing a school project.**

Samy : What are you doing?

Ayman : 1 .....

Samy : Do you mean a project about your family history?

Ayman : 2 .....

Samy : 3 .....?

Ayman : My great grandfather lived in the countryside.

Samy : 4 .....?

Ayman : He was a doctor at the Red Crescent.

Samy : I think he was a helpful man.

Ayman : 5 .....





## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Tamer works at a bank. He is the manager. He starts work every day at 8:00 a.m. He finishes work every day at 6:00 p.m. He lives very close to the bank. He walks to work every day. His brother and sister also work at the same bank. But, they don't live close to it. **They** drive to work. They start work at 9:00 a.m. Tamer likes his job. He is very good at it. People in the bank like Tamer because he is very kind and friendly. They say hello to him when they come to the bank. Tamer likes to talk to them and make them feel happy. All managers should be like Tamer.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Where does Tamer work?
   .....
2. What time does he start work?
   .....
3. Where do Tamer's brother and sister work?
   .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Tamer goes to work .....
   a. by bike  b. on foot  c. in a car  d. by train
5. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....
   a. the cars  b. Tamer's parents
   c. people  d. Tamer's brother and sister
6. Tamer is a/an .....
   a. manager  b. worker  c. officer  d. waiter

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I saw a/an ..... for a job in the newspaper.
   a. development  b. pavement
   c. movement  d. advertisement
2. Osama ..... the tennis game easily because his brother is only four. WB
   a. designs  b. prays  c. wins  d. drives
3. Amir is carrying the eggs ..... because he doesn't want to drop them. WB
   a. carefully  b. hardly  c. carelessly  d. noisily



CamScanner

## Review A

4. The girl _____ happily on the bed and talking on the phone.
   a. has sat  b. sit  c. is sitting  d. is sat

5. In this photo, I am lying lazily on the _____ because it is very hot.
   a. beach  b. arch  c. ruin  d. view

6. The view from the top of the tower is _____.
   a. expensive  b. careful  c. ancient  d. attractive

7. This train is going _____ so that it does not arrive late.
   a. hard  b. fast  c. slowly  d. quietly

8. Where _____ you use to eat pizza when you lived in Cairo?
   a. do  b. have  c. did  d. are

9. _____ did you live when you were a child?
   a. What  b. Where  c. Why  d. Who

10. I _____ a selfie with a famous person yesterday.
    a. hit  b. made  c. gave  d. took

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. _____ (When) time did you usually get up?
2. Huda and Fareeda _____ (studies) hard because they have an English test next week.
3. Nabila is talking _____ (quiet) to her friend because they are working in a library.
4. What subjects did you _____ (used) to study hard at school?

### E Writing

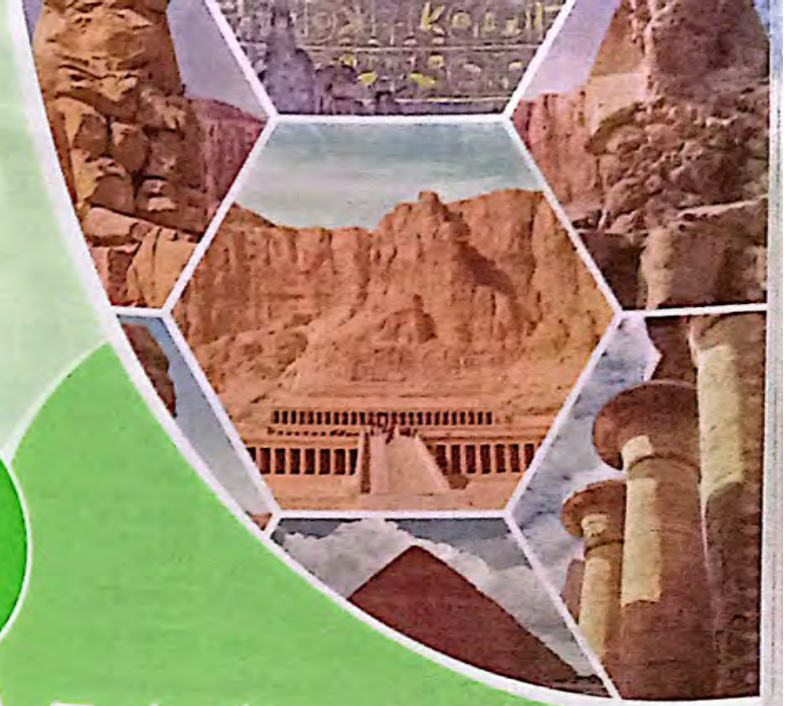
**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"Your city / village in the past and today"



Module 2

# Different places



# 4 UNIT

# Into the past

## Objectives

**Reading:**
Reviews of historic places in Egypt; a student's account of Jerash; information about a museum; a text about ancient objects; a text about the Stone Circles of Senegambia

**Writing:**
A paragraph describing a historic place; a report about a historic site

**Listening:**
A talk about a school trip; a talk about a historic place; an account of a trip to a museum; a class debate

**Speaking:**
Describing a historic place; a telephone call asking for information; a debate about the effects of tourism

**Language:**
Past continuous

**Life Skills:**
Self-management; Critical thinking

**Values:**
Coexistence values; Responsible behaviour

**Issues:**
Environmental and developmental issues

SB / WB Answers جميع اسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب

CamScanner

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 34-37 WB pages 95-96

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| arch | قنطرة | entrance | مدخل |
| castle | قلعة | amazing | مذهل |
| mosque | مسجد | ancient | أثرى (قديم جداً) |
| museum | متحف | guide | مرشد |
| pyramid | هرم | view | منظر |
| ruins | آثار (بقايا) | awesome | مذهل |
| stadium | استاد | historic | تاريخى |
| statue | تمثال | interesting | شيق |
| temple | معبد | protect (ed) | يحمى |
| theatre | مسرح | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| stone | حجر | picnic lunch | وجبة غداء للنزهة |
| objects | أشياء | rules | قواعد |
| the Romans | الرومان | safely | بأمان |
| Roman times | العصور الرومانية | litter = rubbish | قمامة |
| horse race | سباق خيل | behave (d) | يتصرف |
| hill | تل | explain (ed) | يشرح |
| complete (adj) | كامل | pray (ed) | يصلى |
| properly | بشكل سليم | touch (ed) | يلمس |
| walls | أسوار/حوائط | plan (ned) | يخطط |
| a packed lunch | وجبة غداء جاهزة (معبأة) | drop (ped) | يلقى/يرمى |

## Historic cities & places

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Abydos, Sohag | معبد أبيدوس فى سوهاج | Jerash, Jordan | مدينة جرش فى الأردن |
| Elephantine Island, Aswan | جزيرة فيلة فى اسوان | Leptis Magna, Libya | مدينة لبدى العظمى فى ليبيا |
| Petra, Jordan | مدينة البتراء فى الأردن | The Roman Theatre, Alexandria | المسرح الرومانى فى الاسكندرية |





| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Djenne, Mali | مدينة جنى فى مالى | The Karnak Temple, Luxor | معبد الكرنك فى الأقصر |
| Djemila, Algeria | مدينة جميلة فى الجزائر | The South Theatre, Jordan | المسرح الجنوبى فى الأردن |
| Baalabeck, Lebanon | مدينة بعلبك فى لبنان | The Pyramids of Dahshur, Giza | اهرامات دهشور فى الجيزة |
| the National Stadium | الاستاد الوطنى | | |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| It is important to | مهم جداً أن | excited about | متشوق لـ |
| It's a long drive | إنها رحلة طويلة بالسيارة | on time | فى الوقت المحدد |
| It was great fun. | كانت متعة كبيرة | interested in | مهتم بـ |
| recommend a visit | يوصى بزيارة | walk around | يتجول |
| enjoy our visit | نستمتع بزيارتنا | it dates to | يرجع تاريخه إلى |
| leave straight away | نغادر على الفور | show.. round | يصطحب فى جولة |
| the whole day | اليوم بأكمله | go back to | يعود/يرجع إلى |
| a day out | يوم للتنزه | walk for a long way | يسير لمسافة طويلة |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| show | يعرض | showed | shown |
| drive | تسير (للسيارة) | drove | driven |

## Word Meaning Opposite

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| strong | قوى | powerful | weak | ضعيف |
| careful | حريص | cautious | careless | مهمل |
| go in | يدخل | get in | go out | يخرج |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| historic | تاريخى | - connected with[1] history or with the past<br>- important in history |
| awesome | مذهل | - very good, great<br>- amazing |
| guide | مرشد | a person who can show you round a place |
| ancient | أثرى (قديم جداً) | very old |

[1] مرتبط بـ



CamScanner

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| view | منظر | what you can see from the top of something |
| arch | قنطرة | - a curved (half circle) part of buildings ٢-مقوس/منحنى<br>- an entrance to another place |
| castle | قلعة | a place which usually has very strong walls |
| mosque | مسجد | a place where Muslims pray |
| ruins | آثار «حطام» | the broken parts that are left of a building or city |
| stadium | استاد | a place where we can watch a sports match |

## Language Notes

### 1) hundred - thousand - million

لاحظ أن هذه الكلمات لا تجمع إذا جاء بعدها اسم لكن يجمع الاسم الذى يليها.

Ex. He gave me a thousand pounds.

Ex. Dinosaurs lived on earth for more than 150 million years.

كما أنها لا تجمع إذا سبقها تعبير عدد مثل : a few of

Ex. We need a few hundred dollars.

ويمكن جمعها إذا أتى بعدهم : of

Ex. Hundreds of people were at the concert.

### 2) recommend - advise

- recommend + n./ v-ing. يوصى بـ - يرشح شيء

Ex. I recommend a visit to / visiting the museum.

- advise (someone) to + inf. ينصح (شخص ما) بفعل (شيء ما)

Ex. She advised me to visit the Karnak Temple.

### 3) so that

تعني (كى) وتأتى بعدها can / could كالتالى:

مضارع → so that → can.
ماضى → so that → could.
} + inf.

Ex. We hurry / hurried up so that we can / could catch the train.

### 4) litter / letter

- litter = rubbish كمية القمامة (نفايات)

Ex. We try to solve the litter problem in our town.

- letter خطاب (رسالة مكتوبة) / (اسم لا يُعد)

Ex. I got a letter from My cousin today.





## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. This temple dates to five ..... ago.
   a. thousands years b. thousands year c. thousand years d. thousand year
2. My brother ..... a visit to the Cairo Tower.
   a. advised b. recommended c. told d. lent
3. Tamer studies well so that he ..... pass the test.
   a. can b. would c. could d. did
4. Don't drop ..... in the street.
   a. letter b. later c. litter d. little

## Audioscript

SB Page (35)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Teacher:** I'm sure you're all excited[1] about visiting the pyramids next Sunday. It's important that we plan[2] our trip properly[3], so I need to talk to you about rules[4].

On Sunday morning, you must arrive at school on time so that[5] we can leave straight away[6]. It's a long drive[7] to Giza from the school. We are going to be away from school for the whole day, so you must bring a packed lunch[8]. It's going to be very hot, so you must also bring a hat and a bottle of water.

Of course, the pyramids are very important to the history and culture[9] of our country. We must help to protect[10] them. You mustn't climb the pyramids or sit on them. You mustn't drop litter[11]. We must bring all of our rubbish home with us.

So, are there any questions about the trip?

١- متشوق
٢- يخطط
٣- بشكل سليم
٤- قواعد
٥- لكي
٦- نعلق على الفور
٧- رحلة طويلة بالسيارة
٨- وجبة غداء جاهزة
٩- حضارة
١٠- يحمى
١١- يلقى بالقمامة

## Reading

SB Page (36)



**An amazing day out! *******

I visited Abydos[1] last week with my cousins. There's so much to see: temples, amazing art and ruins[2] in the desert. I'm not usually very interested in[3] history, but this place is awesome[4]! It is really amazing!

**Maged, Cairo**

١- معبد فرعونى فى سوهاج
٢- أطلال
٣- مهتم بـ
٤- مذهل



CamScanner

**Get a guide** ****

The ruins at the Karnak Temple were amazing and we really enjoyed our visit! It's a big place, so you need a few hours to walk around[5] it. It's also a good idea to get a guide[6] to tell you all about the history.

**Leila, Assiut**

**Go back to Roman times!**[7] *****

I visited the Roman theatre[8] in Alexandria with my cousins last week. It's easy to imagine[9] what life in Roman times was like here. There are also statues[10] and the ruins of a temple in the museum there. It was great fun[11].

**Samir, Giza**

٥- يتجول
٦- مرشد
٧- العصور الرومانية
٨- المسرح الرومانى
٩- يتخيل
١٠- تماثيل
١١- متعة

**Say it correctly**

*awesome or ينطق المقطع الأول الملون فى هذه الكلمة awe مثل نطق حرف o فى كلمة

SB Page (37)

**The City of Jerash** **By Azza**



Jerash is a Roman city[1] in Jordan. It is more than 2,000 years old!

When you go there, the first thing you see is the entrance[2] to the city. The arch* [3] is very tall. You must buy a ticket[4] before you go in.

The Romans enjoyed watching sport. This stadium[5] is for Roman horse races[6]. You can watch races there today.

Jerash has three Roman theatres. The biggest theatre is the South Theatre. Five thousand people can sit here.

This temple[7] is on a hill[8]. There is an amazing view[9] of the city from here.

I think it is important to learn about historic[10] places around the world. We must protect them so that people can visit in the future, too.

١- مدينة رومانية
٢- مدخل
٣- قنطرة
٤- تذكرة
٥- استاد
٦- سباقات الخيول
٧- معبد
٨- تل
٩- منظر مذهل
١٠- تاريخى

**Say it correctly**

*arch ينطق حرفى (ch) فى هذه الكلمة مثلها فى كلمة (watch)

WB Page (95)



It is a long walk[1] to the temple so you must all listen carefully[2]. It is hot today, so you must all wear a hat. You must take some water, too. Cars mustn't drive on this road so we can walk on it safely[3]. However, you must stay on the road and you must walk. You mustn't run there. When we arrive at the temple, you mustn't touch[4] any of the buildings because it is very old. We can eat our picnic lunches[5] after we visit the temple, but you mustn't eat in the temple. Finally, you mustn't forget[6] to write about what you see!

١- تمشية
٢- بعناية/بحرص
٣- بأمان
٤- يلمس
٥- وجبات غداء للنزهة
٦- ينسى





WB Page (96)

**My trip to Petra**



I love historic places like Petra in Jordan. It dates to[1] around 300 BCE[2], so it is more than two thousand years old!

You must buy a ticket to visit, but when you are inside, you can walk for a long way through the old city and the views from some of the higher places are awesome, but you must be careful[3]! Our guide explained[4] how old the temples are: they are really ancient[5].

I really enjoyed our day there and recommend[6] a visit!

١- يعود تاريخها إلى
٢- قبل الميلاد
٣- حريص
٤- شرح
٥- قديم جداً
٦- أوصى بـ

WB Page (101)

**What do these signs mean?**

- You mustn't drink this. لا تشرب هذا.
- You mustn't touch this. لا تلمس هذا.
- You must turn right. اتجه لليمين.
- You must watch out of cows. احترس من البقر.

## Videoscript

SB Page (37)

**Narrator:** These people are visiting the ancient site[1] of Karnak, near Luxor. People were also visiting Karnak thousands of years ago.

There are lots of different ruins at Karnak. It is one of the most important historic places in the world.

You can see many awesome things, such as ancient statues and temples.

This is an obelisk[2]. This obelisk is nearly thirty metres tall and it has hieroglyphics[3] on it.

There is even a lake at Karnak called the Sacred Lake[4]. Important people came here to wash themselves.

١- موقع
٢- مسلة
٣- كتابات بالغة الهيروغلفية
٤- البحيرة المقدسة



CamScanner

This is the amazing Temple of Amun[5]. It was one of the first buildings to be built at Karnak around four thousand years ago. It has huge columns[6].

In the past, people came to Karnak from all over Egypt. More than two thousand people could be in the Temple of Amun at the same time.

Today, people visit Karnak from all over the world. They must walk past[7] lots of statues of sphinx[8] when they enter the Temple of Amun.

Visitors mustn't enter some parts of Karnak. This is because they are very old and protected[9]. These are the ruins of the Temple of Montu[10]. It is more than three thousand years old.

We know a lot about the history of the world because of historic places like Karnak.

٥- معبد آمون
٦- اعمدة ضخمة
٧- يسير مارًا
٨- ابو الهول
٩- محمى
١٠- معبد مونتو

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. Last year, I visited Karnak with my family. We saw the _____ temples. SB
   a. ancient b. new c. difficult d. careless
2. A/An _____ is an entrance to another place. WB
   a. pyramid b. arch c. view d. stone
3. You can watch a sports match at a/an _____. WB
   a. entrance b. statue c. museum d. stadium
4. We pray at a/an _____. WB
   a. mosque b. theatre c. pyramid d. arch
5. A/An _____ has very strong walls. WB
   a. object b. desert c. castle d. ticket
6. A _____ is not a complete building. WB
   a. stone b. ruin c. house d. hill





7. You might see a _____ in a museum. WB
   a. castle b. race c. temple d. statue
8. I love going to _____ places such as museums and ancient places.
   a. carriage b. culture c. historic d. history
9. Don't drop _____. Put it in bins.
   a. litter b. letter c. ladder d. water
10. People wear sunglasses to _____ their eyes from the sun.
    a. affect b. protect c. infect d. give
11. We have a house with a wide _____.
    a. castle b. statue c. entrance d. emergency
12. We can see plays at the _____.
    a. theatre b. mosque c. temple d. castle

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

13. The Pyramids are really _____.
    a. expensive b. careful c. useless d. awesome
14. A _____ shows tourists interesting tourist places.
    a. guide b. keeper c. teacher d. statue
15. My new house has a wonderful _____ of the sea.
    a. ruin b. guide c. arch d. view
16. More than thirty _____ people live in my town.
    a. thousands' b. thousand's c. thousand d. thousands
17. The _____ has a lot of objects of the Pharaohs.
    a. guide b. museum c. club d. view
18. The Karnak _____ was built thousands of years ago.
    a. Theatre b. Stadium c. Tower d. Temple
19. The Great Pyramid _____ to around 2600 BCE.
    a. dates b. takes c. keeps d. lasts
20. We have a holiday, could you _____ a place to visit?
    a. advice b. comment c. recommend d. reply



CamScanner

# Language

## must / mustn't

### 1- must + inf.

تستخدم must بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شيء ما (في المضارع).

Ex. You must arrive at school on time.

Ex. We must put your rubbish in the bin.

### 2- mustn't + inf.

تستخدم mustn't بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن النهي/التحريم (في المضارع).

Ex. You mustn't be noisy in class.

Ex. You mustn't run near the pool.

• نسأل عن الالزام/التحريم بالصيغة الآتية

(كلمة الاستفهام) + must / mustn't + فاعل + inf.....?

Ex. **A :** Must I call before I come to see the doctor?

**B :** Yes, you must.

Ex. **A :** Why mustn't I park here?

**B :** Because it's against the law.

**Notes**

١- لا تستخدم to قبل مصدر الفعل الذى يأتى بعد must / mustn't

- واعلم أن المصدر من (am , is , are) هو be

- ومن have, has هو have

Ex. You must be careful when you cross the road.

Ex. Travellers must have a passport when they travel abroad.

٢- فى النفى ضع not (n't) مباشرة بعد must وليس بعد الفعل

must not (mustn't) go ✓ ~~must go not~~ ✗





# Exercises on Language

**(1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. You _____ put your rubbish in the bin. SB
   a. must b. has c. mustn't d. isn't
2. You _____ listen to the teacher. SB
   a. can't b. must c. mustn't d. doesn't
3. You _____ be quiet in the library. SB
   a. am b. don't c. mustn't d. must
4. In a museum, you _____ touch the objects. SB
   a. must b. can c. mustn't d. will
5. Cars _____ drive on this road so we can walk on it safely. WB
   a. must b. mustn't c. doesn't d. isn't
6. You _____ smoke at hospitals. الجيزة - عينة الصباحية 2023
   a. mustn't b. have to c. must d. has to
7. He _____ be at work on time. القاهرة - العينة - 2023
   a. mustn't b. must c. has d. hasn't

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

8. Drivers _____ stop when the light is red.
   a. can't b. have c. mustn't d. must
9. All students _____ follow the school rules.
   a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. won't
10. You _____ speak loudly. Your dad is asleep.
    a. can b. mustn't c. must d. not
11. You _____ use your mobile phone while driving.
    a. must b. can c. will d. mustn't
12. What _____ to get this job, Ahmed?
    a. must do I b. do I must c. must I do d. I must do
13. _____ I take this medicine every day?
    a. Must b. Aren't c. Haven't d. Wasn't
14. What _____ I do before I enter this museum?
    a. am b. must c. have d. aren't
15. We _____ wash fruits and vegetables before we eat them.
    a. won't b. are c. mustn't d. must



CamScanner

**2** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

### SB, WB & Exams

1. You ..... (must) run inside the building of the school. SB
2. You ..... (mustn't) buy your ticket before you enter. SB
3. You ..... (should) drink this water; it's dirty. WB
4. Students must ..... (are) quiet in class.
5. During an exam, you ..... (aren't) copy from the other students.
6. You mustn't ..... (going) to school late.
7. People ..... (must) throw rubbish in the street.

### Bit by Bit Exercises

8. ..... (Must) I smoke in public transport? -Yes, you mustn't.
9. We must ..... (to eat) healthy food.
10. Workers ..... (doesn't) work without safety boots.
11. ..... (Mustn't) we drink milk every day? - Yes, it's healthy.
12. You ..... (shouldn't) enter the museum with a camera. It's forbidden.

## Speaking

**1) Asking and answering about a historic place you visited**

السؤال والاجابة عن مكان تاريخى زرته

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| -What was the historic place you visited? ما المكان التاريخى الذى زرته؟ | - I visited..... .....قمت بزيارة |
| - What did you think of that place? ما رأيك فى هذا المكان؟ | - It was awesome. كان المكان مذهلاً. |
| - What could you learn from this historic place? ما الذى تمكنت من أن تتعلمه من هذا المكان؟ | - I could learn about the history of my country. تمكنت من معرفة تاريخ بلدي. |





## General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

**1** Complete the following dialogue:

A teacher is asking his student about the Karnak Temple.

**Teacher:** What was the last historic place you visited?

**Student :** ❶.....

**Teacher:** What could you see there?

**Student :** ❷.....

**Teacher:** ❸ .....?

**Student :** Around four thousands of years ago.

**Teacher:** ❹ .....?

**Student :** It was awesome.

**Teacher:** What could you learn from this historic place?

**Student :** ❺.....

**2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. Petra is a great .....place in Jordan. A lot of tourists visit it.
   a. funny b. hard c. historic d. interested
2. When we arrived at the museum, a ..... was waiting for us.
   a. statue b. waiter c. guide d. guest
3. We walked under a big ..... before we entered the museum.
   a. arch b. castle c. stadium d. theatre
4. There's a beautiful ..... from the top of the mountain.
   a. review b. preview c. view d. interview
5. We should ..... ourselves from pollution.
   a. bring b. protect c. make d. walk



CamScanner

6. I went to the National ..... and watched a nice play.
a. Museum b. Theatre c. Castle d. Cinema

7. A/An ..... is a building where Muslims pray.
a. attic b. sofa c. mosque d. church

## Language

8. Why ..... people smoke in hospitals?
a. must b. can c. mustn't d. haven't

9. You ..... touch any of the building because it is very old. WB
a. must b. can c. haven't d. mustn't

10. Children ..... play with matches.
a. must b. mustn't c. should d. have

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You ..... (not must) sail in bad weather. It is dangerous.
2. You ..... (mustn't) be careful when you do experiments in the laboratory.
3. What mustn't I ..... (to do) in class?
4. **A:** What ..... (does) we do when we drive?
   **B:** We must follow the traffic rules.
5. ..... (Has) Ziad take this exam to get the degree?

### 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: SB

"A description of a historic place you visited"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What and where is the historic place you visited?
- Why is it important?
- How old is it?
- What must people do to protect it?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I visited ....
- This place is ..... years old.
- This place is important because.....
- People mustn't ..... in that place.



# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38-40 WB pages 97-98

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | |
|---|---|
| object | شيء |
| keep away | يبعد |
| clay | صلصال |
| insect | حشرة |
| senet | السينيت (لعبة مصرية قديمة تشبه الشطرنج) |
| mirror | مرآة |
| wood | خشب |
| design (n) (ed) | تصميم - يصمم |
| open (adj) (ed) | مفتوح - يفتح |

### Museum objects



tool أداة | vase* | pot فازة | bowl سلطانية وعاء/قدر | papyrus* ورق البردي



mask قناع | figure* تمثال/نموذج | ring خاتم | necklace عقد | coin عملة معدنية

## Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| web page | صفحة على الانترنت |
| opening times | أوقات العمل |
| price | سعر |
| square | مربع |
| metal | معدن/معدني |
| ingredients | مقادير (أكلة) |
| doorbell | جرس الباب |
| equipment | معدات |
| sculpture | تمثال/فن النحت |
| model | نموذج |
| The Museum of Islamic Art | متحف الفن الإسلامي |
| runner | عدّاء |
| mixer | خلاط |
| sunglasses | نظارة شمس |
| curtains | ستائر |
| ticket officer | موظف حجز تذاكر |
| customer | زبون/عميل |
| except | ما عدا |
| chemical | مادة كيميائية |
| mosquito | ناموسة |
| cover (ed) | يغطي |
| mix (ed) | يخلط |
| paint (n) (ed) | طلاء / يلون |



CamScanner

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| answer the phone | يرد على الهاتف | go into | يدخل إلى |
| take a photo | يلتقط صورة | What's on? | ما المعروض؟ |
| travel home | يسافر عائداً للوطن | on the train | فى القطار |
| make.... look good | يجعل ..... يبدو جيد | under 12 | اقل من ١٢ عام |
| look around | يتفقد مكان | take off | يخلع (ملابس - حذاء.....) |
| protect....from | يحمى..... من | | |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| cost | يتكلف/يكلف | cost | cost |
| draw | يرسم (بالرصاص/بالحاف) | drew | drawn |
| ring | يرن | rang | rung |
| hold | يحمل/يمسك | held | held |
| keep away | يُبعد | kept away | kept away |

| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| huge | ضخم | enormous | tiny | ضئيل |
| open | مفتوح | unlocked | closed | مغلق |
| popular | شعبى/محبوب | famous | unpopular | غير محبوب |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| coins | عملات معدنية | - A small, flat piece of metal, usually round in shape that we use as money<br>- pieces of money made of metal |
| figure | نموذج/تمثال (الشخص) | a picture or model of a person, an animal or a sculpture(1) |
| mask | قناع | something people wear to cover or protect their face |
| necklace | عقد | jewellery you wear around your neck |
| tool | اداة | a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things |
| vase | فازة | - a pot used for holding flowers<br>- something which people put flowers in, or have in their home as decoration(2) |

١- تمثال منحوت
٢- تزيين/ديكور





## Language Notes

### (1) like - look like

**What is (somebody / something) like?**

• تستخدم هذه الصيغة الاستفهامية للسؤال عن الرأى فى شخص او شئ.

Ex. What is your teacher like?

- ما رأيك فى مدرسك؟

• للإجابة عن السؤال نذكر وصف عام للشخص او الشئ.

- He is kind and clever.

**What does (someone / something) look like?**

• تستخدم هذه الصيغة الاستفهامية للسؤال عن الصفات الشكلية للشخص او الشئ.

Ex. What does your teacher look like?

- He is tall, with glasses.

### (2) made of - made from

• made of

(مصنوع من) عندما لا تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشئ.

Ex. Mum uses pots and bowls which are made of strong glass.

• made from

(مصنوع من) عندما تتغير المادة المصنوع منها الشئ

Ex. Papyrus is a type of paper which is made from plants.

### (3) made of - made from

• (be) used to + inf.

Ex. Clay was used to make pots for cooking.

• (be) used for + v-ing

Ex. Clay was used for making pots for cooking.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. **A:** What is your father _____?
   **B:** He is clever and hard-working.
   a. look like b. looking c. like d. as
2. This cake is delicious. What is it made _____?
   a. in b. from c. of d. at
3. This knife is used to _____ meat.
   a. cutting b. cuts c. cut d. is cut



CamScanner

# Audioscript

SB Page (39)

استمع إلى النصوص

Boy : Last Tuesday, I went to *the Museum of Islamic Art*[1] with my family. While we were waiting to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir with his mum and dad! As my parents were buying the tickets, Amir and I decided[2] what we wanted to see first.



While we were looking around[3] the museum, Amir and I found some tall doors with amazing designs[4] on them. They were very interesting, so I wanted a photo. I put my bag on the floor while I was taking the photo.

We stayed in the museum for two hours before we went home. While we were travelling home, Amir phoned me. He had my bag - I left it in the museum! We got home an hour later. Amir arrived while I was taking off[5] my shoes! He gave me my bag.

١- متحف الفن الإسلامى
٢- قررت
٣- يتفقد (مكان)
٤- تصميمات
٥- يخلع (ملابس- حذاء...)

**Say it correctly**

- ينطق حرف s فى هذه الكلمة مثل صوت z ولا ينطق حرف e *vase
- ينطق حرف y فى هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق فى كلمة by *papyrus
- تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة bigger مع اختلاف الصوت الأول *figure

WB Page (97)

Ticket officer[1] : Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you?

Customer[2] : Good morning. Can you tell me what times the museum is open[3]?

Ticket officer : Certainly[4]. We open from 9.30 to 6.30 every day except[5] Friday. We close then.

**Customer** : I'd like to know how much a ticket for two adults[6] and one child is, please.

Ticket officer : Of course. Adults are 150 pounds and children under 12[7] are 75 pounds.

**Customer** : Can I buy the tickets at the museum?

Ticket officer : Yes, or you can buy them online[8].

**Customer** : Thank you for your help. Goodbye.

١- موظف حجز التذاكر
٢- زبون
٣- مفتوح
٤- بالتأكيد
٥- ما عدا
٦- البالغين
٧- تحت سن ١٢ عاماً
٨- عبر الانترنت





WB Page (98)

1- These are made of wood. People use them to play a game. **(chess)**



2- These are usually made of plastic. They help to protect[1] your eyes from the sun. **(sunglasses)**[2]



3- These are made of glass or wood. They help to keep away[3] insects[4]. **(window)**



4- This is made of metal and plastic. People use it to mix[5] ingredients[6] when they are cooking. **(mixer)**[7]



١- يحمي
٢- نظارة شمس
٣- يبعد
٤- الحشرات
٥- يخلط
٦- مقادير (أكلة)
٧- خلاط

# Reading

SB Page (40)

## Objects from Egypt's past



Objects[1] from the past can help us to understand what life was like many years ago. They can also show us that we use many of the same objects today!

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors[2] to help them paint[3] around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects. The mirrors were metal[4] and had interesting designs. Where do you have mirrors in your home?

The Ancient Egyptians used pots[5] and bowls*[6] for making food such as bread. These objects were made of clay[7], which came from the River Nile.

While some people were mixing ingredients for bread in bowls, other people used large stones to mix the ingredients in a bowl. How do we make bread today?

Ancient Egyptians liked playing games like senet[8]. Senet boxes have 30 squares[9]. This box is made of wood[10] and is about 3,500 years old. Some people did not have senet boxes, but they still played the game. They drew[11] the square on the floor. What games are popular[12] in Egypt today?

١- أشياء
٢- مرايا
٣- يلون
٤- معدن
٥- أوعية
٦- سلطانية
٧- صلصال
٨- السينيت (لعبة مصرية قديمة)
٩- مربعات
١٠- خشب
١١- يرسم
١٢- محبوب/شائع

**Say it correctly**

- تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة goal مع اختلاف اول صوت فقط *bowl



CamScanner

# Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

## SB, WB & Exams

1. Ancient Egyptians made ..... with clay from the Nile River. SB
   a. pots b. insects c. papyrus d. magazines
2. Can you tell me the ..... of the ticket, please? SB
   a. prize b. coin c. price d. object
3. Ancient Egyptians used ..... to help them paint around their eyes. SB
   a. chairs b. mirrors c. wood d. floors
4. A ..... has four corners. SB
   a. square b. bowl c. circle d. tool
5. There are more than 2,000 ..... in the museum. WB
   a. prices b. subjects c. objects d. phones
6. The black and white ..... around this window are beautiful. WB
   a. pages b. webs c. prices d. designs
7. ..... are pieces of money made of metal. WB
   a. Bowls b. Pots c. Coins d. Figures
8. This chemical helps to keep ..... mosquitoes. WB
   a. in b. away c. about d. over
9. A ..... is a model of a person, an animal or a sculpture. العربية / السنة 2023 WB
   a. figure b. design c. bowl d. vase
10. Ancient Egyptians used ..... for writing. الفصلية شتاء 2022
    a. wood b. papyrus c. cotton d. paper
11. A ..... is a piece of equipment you can use to make or repair things. العربية / شرق طنطا 2023
    a. vase b. tap c. tool d. pot
12. A ..... is a piece of jewellery you wear on your finger. فنا / مودس 2023
    a. vase b. necklace c. mask d. ring





## Bit by Bit Exercises

13. The waiter put a ..... of soup in front of each of us.
    a. vase b. bowl c. plan d. design
14. My mum put a ..... of flowers on the table.
    a. vase b. pool c. coin d. pan
15. The ..... she wears around her neck is very expensive.
    a. ring b. sock c. necklace d. skirt
16. You can see the ..... of Tutankhamun in the Grand Egyptian Museum.
    a. price b. mask c. chemical d. page
17. Most doors are made of .....
    a. clay b. paper c. cotton d. wood
18. The opposite of "huge" is .....
    a. tiny b. large c. enormous d. famous
19. Children like to use ..... to make shapes.
    a. water b. clay c. ingredient d. iron
20. The bee is a useful .....
    a. bird b. human c. object d. insect
21. We arrived at the Pyramids and looked ..... the area.
    a. around b. over c. up d. under
22. Pens are usually made ..... plastic.
    a. with b. in c. from d. of

# Language

## The past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

**Form التكوين**

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was
You / We / They / اسم جمع + were
→ + V-ing.

Ex. I was reading all morning.
Ex. They were travelling for a long time.



CamScanner

**Negative** النفى

فاعل + was not (wasn't) / were not (weren't) + V.ing

Ex. They weren't doing anything at that time.

**Question** السؤال ?

(كلمة استفهام) Was / Were + subject + V- ing.....?

Ex. Were you studying when your mother called you?
- Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.

Ex. What was Ali doing when you saw him?

**Usage** الاستخدام

١- يُستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حَدَث كان مستمرا في الحدوث أثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. I was waiting for the match to start at 8 last night.

٢- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث طويل كان مستمرا في الحدوث عندما قطعه أو وقع أثناءه حدث آخر قصير فيكون الحدث الطويل في الماضي المستمر والحدث القصير الذي وقع أثنائه في الماضي البسيط:

Ex. While I was reading a story, the telephone rang.

- وللتعبير عن فكرة الحدث الطويل المستمر والحدث القصير الذي وقع أثنائه او قطعه في الماضي نستخدم الروابط التالية:

While / As / Just as → Past continuous (ماضٍ مستمر (حدث طويل)) + Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط (حدث قصير))

• As / While we were walking into the museum, we saw some huge statues.

When → Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط (حدث قصير)) + Past continuous (ماضٍ مستمر (حدث طويل))

Ex. When Mona fell asleep, she was watching TV.

٣- يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس التوقيت في الماضي - وللتعبير عن هذه الفكرة نستخدم الروابط التالية:

While / As / Just as → Past continuous (ماضٍ مستمر (حدث طويل)) + Past continuous (ماضٍ مستمر (حدث طويل))

Ex. While I was having lunch, my sister was watching TV.





**While + V-ing**

٥- يمكن أن يأتي بعد (While) فعل مضاف له (ing) بشرط أن يكون فاعل الجملتين واحد.

Ex. While walking in the street, we met an old friend.

Ex. While playing, I scored an amazing goal.

**During** أثناء + n.

٤- تأتي During مكان While ولكن يأتي بعدها الإسم:

Ex. During the night, it rained heavily.

## Exercises on Language

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. As Karim _____ photos of the animals, he lost his phone. WB
   a. took b. is taking c. takes d. was taking
2. As my parents _____ the tickets, we decided what we wanted to see first. SB
   a. are buying b. were buying c. buy d. bought
3. As we _____ home, Amir phoned me. SB
   a. were travelling b. travelled c. travelling d. are travelling
4. As the teacher was talking, I _____ a question. SB
   a. ask b. asked c. am asking d. were asking
5. We _____ on the train for hours before it finally arrived at the station. WB
   a. are travelling b. travelling c. travel d. were travelling
6. I _____ my bag on the floor while I was taking a photo. SB
   a. was putting b. will put c. put d. am putting
7. While we _____ around the museum, we found some amazing designs. SB
   a. looking b. are looking c. will look d. were looking



CamScanner

8. When we ..... down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park. WB

a. was sitting b. sat c. sit d. to sit

9. While Mona was playing tennis, she ..... her arm. WB

a. is hurting b. was hurting c. hurts d. hurt

10. While we ..... to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir. SB

a. waited b. are waiting c. were waiting d. wait

11. While I was reading my book, the phone ..... SB

a. rang b. is ringing c. rings d. will ring

12. While Sahar ..... to school, she saw a famous squash player.

a. was walking b. walk c. walking d. walked

13. While I ....., the light went out.

a. studying b. was studying c. study d. studied

## Bit by Bit Exercises

14. ..... Tarek was crossing the street, he had an accident.

a. Because b. During c. Where d. As

15. ..... my father arrived home, we were preparing for the party.

a. Where b. During c. When d. On

16. While ..... to work, Hazem had an accident.

a. drive b. drives c. was driving d. driving

17. ..... I finished cooking, my sister Hana was setting the table.

a. When b. As c. While d. During

18. ..... the meeting, the manager had an important phone call.

a. While b. As c. While d. During

**(2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

## SB, WB & Exams

1. As I was walking to school, it ..... (start) to rain. SB
2. As Mr Badr was walking to work, he ..... (was seeing) an old friend. WB





3. I was sweeping the floor ..... (while) my father came.
4. At four p.m. yesterday, I ..... (do) my homework.
5. While he ..... (play) on the computer, his mother arrived.
6. As we ..... (go) out, Amir phoned me.

## Bit by Bit Exercises

7. What ..... (did you do) when I called you last night?
8. ..... (Be) Mona playing music at 5 yesterday?
9. Nada was sleeping ..... (while) the night.
10. While ..... (walked) around the temple, I hurt my feet.
11. While we ..... (shopped) in the market, we lost some money.
12. Jana was listening to a song ..... (while) the lights went out.
13. Tamer ..... (buys) a ticket while I was waiting for him.
14. The children ..... (didn't read) when dad came home.

## Speaking

### Asking for information on the telephone - طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف

صيغ الأسئلة والردود التالية تستخدم فى طلب وإعطاء المعلومات عَبْر الهاتف:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - A: Hello! How can I help you? هل يمكننى مساعدتك؟ | - B: Hello, can you tell me ...? مرحباً، هل يمكنك أن تخبرنى.....؟ |
| - A: Certainly./Of course. It's ... بالتأكيد./بالطبع. إنه..... | - B: I'd like to know what time أود أن أعرف فى أى وقت..... |
| | - Can I buy ...? هل يمكننى شراء.....؟ |
| | - Thank you for your help? شكراً لمساعدتك. |



CamScanner

# General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Nader is calling the Egyptian Museum for information.**

Nader : Hello! Is it the Egyptian Museum?

**Man** : Yes. ① .....?

Nader : Yes. Can I ask for some information, please?

**Man** : ② .....

Nader : ③ .....

**Man** : We open from 9:00 am till 5:00 pm every day except Friday.

Nader : ④ .....?

**Man** : 30 pounds and 10 pounds for students.

Nader : ⑤ .....

**Man** : You're welcome.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. The boy could make a horse with a piece of ..... . He likes making shapes.
   a. water b. clay c. papyrus d. paint
2. Scientists learnt the ancient Egyptian language from the old .....
   a. mirrors b. ingredient c. papyrus d. children
3. Ola has a gold ..... on her finger.
   a. necklace b. hat c. shoes d. ring
4. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... and bowls for making food. 2022 (اللغة / العربية)
   a. bins b. pots c. taps d. lambs
5. The little girl looked at the ..... to see herself. 2022 (الدقهلية / نموذج)
   a. mirror b. coin c. bowl d. pot
6. You can use these ..... for making a chair.
   a. squares b. tools c. ingredients d. insects

### Language

7. While I ..... about the museum, my mother brought me some juice.
   a. read b. were reading c. was reading d. is reading





8. It ..... when I went to the club.
   a. was raining b. rained c. rain d. rains
9. While I was waiting for lunch, mum ..... in the kitchen.
   a. cooks b. was cooking c. cooked d. is cooking
10. The men ..... when it rained heavily.
    a. were working b. work c. are working d. will work
11. While the teacher was marking the homework, we ..... quietly.
    a. was sitting b. sitting c. were sitting d. are sitting
12. While ..... at home, I phoned Ziad.
    a. was being b. am c. were d. being

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While Noura was sewing her dress, her sister ..... (looks) at her.
2. ..... (While) the match, it rained.
3. While ..... (was cooking), mum hurt her hand with a knife.

## 4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Fawzi(a) describing an object in your home.

- **Your name is Shadi(a) and your email address is shadi(a)post@gmail.com**
- **Your friend's email address is fawzi(a)mail@yahoo.com**

(امحاف عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:**

- **What object in your room would you like to describe?**
- **What is it made of?**
- **What do you use it for?**
- **What do you think of it? Why?**

**يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:**

- **I'd like to describe.....**
- **It's made of.....**
- **I use it for....**
- **..... bought it for me from.....**
- **I feel ..... when I look at it.**



CamScanner

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41- 43 WB pages 99 - 101

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| tourism | السياحة |
| tourist | سائح |
| company | شركة |
| historic places | أماكن تاريخية |
| pollution | التلوث |
| environment | البيئة |
| holiday companies | شركات تنظيم الإجازات |
| maybe | ربما |
| damage (d) | يتلف |
| agree (d) | يوافق |
| weigh (ed) | يزن |

## Vocabulary

| | |
|---|---|
| debate | مناقشة/مناظرة |
| local people | السكان المحليين |
| report | تقرير |
| across | عَبْر |
| oil | بترول |
| the British | البريطانيون |
| earthquake | زلزال |
| Pharaoh Thutmose III | الفرعون تحتمس الثالث |
| busy | مزدحم |
| monuments | آثار قديمة |
| storm | عاصفة |
| injure (d) | يصيب/يجرح |
| enter (ed) | يدخل |
| follow (ed) | يتبع |

## Famous places

| | |
|---|---|
| Cleopatra's Needle | مسلة كليوباترا |
| the River Gambia | نهر جامبيا |
| the River Thames | نهر التايمز |
| Stone Circles of Senegambia | الدوائر الحجرية بسينيجامبيا (السنغال وجامبيا) |

## Cities & Countries

| | |
|---|---|
| Senegal | السنغال |
| Gambia | جامبيا |
| Wassu | مدينة واسو بجامبيا |
| the United Arab Emirates | الإمارات العربية المتحدة |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|---|---|
| bring money to | يجلب المال لـ |
| drop litter | يلقى بالقمامة |
| behave well | يتصرف بشكل لائق |
| Let me know | دعنى أعرف |
| give work to | يوفر العمل لـ |
| 20 metres high | على ارتفاع ٢٠ متراً |
| research information | يبحث عن معلومات |
| make more pollution | يسبب مزيد من التلوث |
| in other ways | بطرق أخرى |
| pay for | يدفع مالاً لـ |
| work for | يعمل لدى |
| plan for | خطة لـ |
| walk up | يصعد |
| good / bad for | مفيد/مضر بـ |





## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| sink | يغرق (الأشياء) | sank | sunk |
| bring | يجلب/يحضر | brought | brought |
| build | يبنى | built | built |

| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| local | محلي | national | international | دولي |
| damage | يتلف | destroy | keep | يحافظ/يحفظ |

## Definitions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| company | شركة | a business that makes money by producing(1) or selling things or services(2) | ١- إنتاج<br>٢- خدمات |
| debate | مناظرة/مناقشة | when different people with different ideas talk about a subject(3) | ٣- موضوع |
| damage | يتلف/يدمر | have a bad or harmful(4) effect(5) on something so that it is broken or spoiled(6) | ٤- مؤذى/مضر<br>٥- تأثير<br>٦- فاسد |

## Language Notes

### 1) maybe - may be

- maybe = perhaps ربما
  (ظرف غالباً ما يأتى فى أول الجملة)
  Ex. Maybe it will be sunny tomorrow.

- may be من المحتمل ان يكون
  may هنا فعل ناقص يتبعه (مصدر الفعل .inf)
  Ex. It may be sunny tomorrow.

### 2) sink - drown

- sink - sank - sunk (يغرق (الأشياء
  Ex. The coin sank to the bottom of the lake.

- drown (ed) (يغرق (الأشخاص
  Ex. Don't swim in this deep water you may drown.



CamScanner

## Check on Language Notes

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Mustafa ..... at the club now.
   a. maybe  b. perhaps  c. may be  d. may
2. I threw a stone in the river and it .....
   a. sank  b. floated  c. drowned  d. flew

## Audioscript

SB Page (41)

استمع الى النصوص



**Amira:** What do you think, Hana? Is tourism[1] good for historic places[2]?

**Hana:** Yes, Amira. I think it is. Tourists[3] bring money to an area[4]. This helps the local people[5].

**Amira:** I don't think so ... a lot of the money goes to big companies[6], not local people.

**Hana:** Maybe, but some holiday companies help the environment[7] and the local people.

**Amira:** I don't agree that tourism helps the environment. Tourists drop litter[8] and damage[9] places in other ways, like sitting on ancient ruins.

**Hana:** I see what you mean, but most tourists behave well[10]. They know it's important to protect historic places.

١- السياحة
٢- الأماكن التاريخية
٣- السائحون
٤- منطقة
٥- السكان المحليون
٦- شركات
٧- البيئة
٨- يلقي بالقمامة
٩- يتلف
١٠- يتصرف بشكل لائق

WB Page (99)

**Fady:** Do you think this plan for a new hotel is a good idea, Baher?

**Baher:** I don't think so. It only has jobs for people in the city.

**Fady:** I don't agree. More tourists in the area can help the local people.

**Baher:** Maybe, but what about the water? Taking water from the lake will damage the environment.

**Fady:** I see what you mean. It's important to protect the environment.





## Reading

SB Page (42)

**Report on Stone Circles of Senegambia**



**Where are the stone circles[1]?**

- There are more than 1,000 Stone Circles of Senegambia. They follow the River Gambia for 350 kilometres across[2] two countries: Senegal and Gambia.

**Why are the stone circles important?**

- The stone circles are very important to the history of Senegal and Gambia. They tell us about the people who made them and how they lived.

**How old are the stone circles?**

- The oldest stone circles are around[3] 2,300 years old and the youngest are around 500 years old. This means that people were building the circles for more than 1,800 years.

**Can tourists visit them?**

- Tourists can visit them, but they must not damage them. Money from tourism helps to pay[4] for local people to look after the stones. It is important to protect the stones.

١- الدوائر الحجرية
٢- عبر
٣- حوالي
٤- يدفع مقابل

WB Page (99)

### New Message



While we were visiting the beach[1] last month, we decided[2] it was a great place to build a new hotel. The hotel will give work to a lot of people. We are a big company, so we can ask people from our city hotels to work here in the summer. This is the time when the hotel will be busy[3]. There is not much water near the beach at the moment, but while we were driving to the area, we saw a big lake[4]. We can use the water from the lake for the new hotel. Let me know what you think of our plan[5].

Send

١- شاطئ
٢- قررنا
٣- مزدحم
٤- بحيرة
٥- خطة

WB Page (100)

**Report on Cleopatra's Needle[1]**



**Where is Cleopatra's Needle?**

Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames[2] in London, England.

١- مسلة كليوباترا
٢- نهر التايمز



CamScanner

**How old is it?**

The Ancient Egyptians made the stone for Pharaoh Thutmose III[1] and it is about 3,500 years old.

**How big is it?**

The stone is more than 20 metres high and weighs*[4] about 200,000 kilograms.

**How did it get to this country?**

The British[5] made a special ship[6] for the stone in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank[7] in a storm. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

٣- الفرعون تحتمس الثالث
٤- تزن
٥- البريطانيون
٦- سفينة خاصة
٧- غرقت

**Say it correctly**

*weigh تنطق هذه الكلمة تماماً مثل نطق كلمة way

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. Tourists often travel by car. This makes more ..... . SB
   a. pollution b. tourism c. holiday d. history
2. It is important to protect all parts of the ..... . SB
   a. guide b. environment c. century d. pollution
3. ..... it will rain tomorrow, but I'm not sure. WB
   a. May be b. May c. Might d. Might be
4. Don't play football here or you might ..... that car. WB
   a. hurt b. injure c. damage d. repair
5. I love going to ..... places such as museums and ancient ruins. WB
   a. historic b. scary c. cultured d. historian
6. Ali's uncle works for a big oil ..... in the United Arab Emirates. WB العربية / شرق صيدا 2023
   a. work b. environment c. job d. company





7. ..... is very important for Egypt. SB التربوية / عين نبع الخيمة 2022
   a. Pollution b. Tourism c. Holiday d. Flood
8. There was a ..... in our class about how to help the environment.
   a. date b. carpet c. debate d. lamp
9. Tourism can help the ..... people. القاهرة / المعادي 2023
   a. historic b. local c. ancient d. hero

### Bit by Bit Exercises

10. We must encourage ..... from all over the world to visit Egypt.
    a. thieves b. museums c. ruins d. tourists
11. I don't like shopping at very ..... markets.
    a. clear b. high c. busy d. heavy
12. We shouldn't ..... litter on the beaches.
    a. draw b. drop c. collect d. clean
13. Thutmose III is a great ..... .
    a. tourist b. mask c. guide d. pharaoh
14. A good student ..... well at school.
    a. follows b. keeps c. behaves d. agrees
15. Cleopatra's Needle ..... about 200,000 kilograms.
    a. weighs b. sews c. damages d. behaves
16. Building new factories ..... work to many young people.
    a. takes b. weighs c. gives d. protects
17. We all ..... that education is very important for everyone.
    a. agree b. greet c. disagree d. give
18. The opposite of "local" is ..... .
    a. national b. international c. metal d. awful
19. Does iron ..... in water?
    a. drown b. sink c. fly d. drink



CamScanner

## Speaking

### 1) A debate about the effects of tourism

مناقشة عن آثار السياحة

- Do you think tourism is good or bad for historic places? Why?

هل تعتقد أن السياحة مفيدة أم ضارة للأماكن التاريخية؟ لماذا؟

نجيب عن هذا السؤال بآراء إيجابية أو سلبية كالآتي:

| Positive opinion | Negative opinion |
|---|---|
| - It brings money to the country. تجلب المال للدولة. | - A lot of tourism money goes to big companies. الكثير من أموال السياحة تذهب للشركات الكبيرة. |
| - Some holiday companies help the environment and local people. بعض شركات تنظيم الإجازات تساعد البيئة والسكان المحليين. | - Tourists drop litter and damage places in other ways. السائحون يلقون بالقمامة ويتلفون الأماكن بطرق أخرى. |
| - When people visit a historic place, they understand why we need to protect it. عند زيارة مكان تاريخي، يتفهم الزائرون لماذا نحتاج حماية المكان. | - Tourists often travel by car. This causes more pollution. غالباً ما يسافر السائحون بالسيارات. ذلك يحدث المزيد من التلوث. |

### 2) Asking for and responding to an opinion

- طلب الرأى والرد عليه

| Asking for opinion | Response |
|---|---|
| - Do you think.....? هل تعتقد.....؟ | **Agreeing:** - Yes, I think so / I agree. |
| - What do you think.....? ماذا تعتقد.....؟ | **Disagreeing:** |
| - Is..... good / bad for.....? هل.... مفيد/ضار لـ.....؟ | - I don't agree. لا أوافق. |
| | - I don't think so. لا أعتقد ذلك. |
| | - I think it is..... اعتقد انه..... |
| | - I see what you mean. أفهم ما تعنى. |
| | - Maybe,..... ربما..... |





## General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

### 1) Complete the following dialogue:

SB

**Amira and Hana are talking about tourism.**

Amira : I think tourism is good for our country.

Hana : ① ..... . Tourists bring money to us.

Amira : ② ..... ?

Hana : Yes, it's good for local people.

Amira : ③ ..... ?

Hana : I think it's sometimes bad for the environment?

Amira : How does this happen?

Hana : ④ ..... .

Amira : ⑤ ..... . Most tourists behave well.

Hana : You are right.

### 2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Vocabulary**

1. ..... gives work to young people.
   a. Pollution b. Damage c. War d. Tourism
2. Egypt has a lot of ..... places for tourists to visit.
   a. pollution b. historian c. historic d. century
3. A holiday ..... near our house makes many trips to famous places.
   a. company b. environment c. history d. pollution
4. Air ..... is when there are dangerous chemical in the air. أسيوط / يناير 2023
   a. port b. population c. bag d. pollution
5. All students took part in today's ..... about pollution.
   a. debate b. race c. match d. sport
6. Smoke can ..... our lungs.
   a. repair b. damage c. keep d. clean
7. This company ..... work to students during the summer holiday.
   a. takes b. makes c. does d. gives



CamScanner

WB

**3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"What you think of tourism. Is it good or bad for historic places? Why?"

(إجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Is tourism important?
- Do you think tourism helps the local people?
- What do you think tourists do at historic places?
- How can holiday companies help the environment?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Tourism brings money .....
- Some holiday companies help .....
- Tourists drop litter and .....



# Unit 4 Review

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| arch | قنطرة | awesome | مذهل | ring | خاتم |
| castle | قلعة | object | شيء | interesting | شيق |
| mosque | مسجد | keep away | يُبعد | necklace | عُقد |
| museum | متحف | clay | صلصال | coin | عملة معدنية |
| pyramid | هرم | insect | حشرة | tourism | السياحة |
| ruins | آثار (بقايا) | wood | خشب | tourist | سائح |
| stadium | استاد | mirror | مرآة | historic places | أماكن تاريخية |
| statue | تمثال | company | شركة | pollution | التلوث |
| temple | معبد | tool | أداة | environment | البيئة |
| theatre | مسرح | vase | فازة | maybe | ربما |
| entrance | مدخل | pot | وعاء/قدر | damage (d) | يتلف |
| amazing | مذهل | bowl | سلطانية | agree (d) | يوافق |
| ancient | أثرى (قديم جداً) | papyrus | ورق البردى | weigh (ed) | يزن |
| guide | مرشد | mask | قناع | protect (ed) | يحمى |
| view | منظر | figure | تمثال/نموذج (شخص) | design (n) (ed) | تصميم - يصمم |
| senet | السينيت (لعبة مصرية قديمة تشبه الشطرنج) | holiday companies | شركات تنظيم الإجازات | open (adj) (ed) | مفتوح - يفتح |

## Language

### 1 must / mustn't

١. تستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة والإلزام بفعل شيء ما (فى المضارع).

Ex. You must be careful when you cross the road.

٢. تستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (يجب ألا) للتعبير عن النهى/التحريم (فى المضارع).

Ex. You mustn't come to school late.

### 2 The past continuous tense

| فاعل | إثبات | نفى | استفهام (+ (كلمة الاستفهام) |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | was + v-ing | was not + v-ing | was + فاعل + v-ing? |
| He / She / It / اسم مفرد | | | |
| We / You / They / اسم جمع | were | were | were |



CamScanner

## Usage الاستخدام

• يعبر عن حدث استمر فى وقت محدد فى الماضى/حدث استمر فى الماضى عندما قطعه حدث آخر.

Ex. I was reading a book when someone phoned me.

Ex. Hani wasn't sleeping when I visited him.

## Speaking

### 1 Asking and answering about a historic place you visited

السؤال والإجابة عن مكان تاريخى زرته

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| -What was the historic place you visited? | - I visited..... |
| - What did you think of that place? | - It was awesome. |
| - What could you learn from this historic place? | - I could learn about the history of my country. |

### 2 Asking for information on the telephone

- طلب معلومات عبر الهاتف

صيغ الأسئلة والردود التالية تستخدم فى طلب واعطاء المعلومات عبر الهاتف:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - A: Hello! How can I help you? | - B: Hello, can you tell me ...? |
| - A: Certainly./Of course. It's ... | - B: I'd like to know what time |
| | - Can I buy ...? |
| | - Thank you for your help? |

### 3 A debate about the effects of tourism

مناقشة عن آثار السياحة

- Do you think tourism is good or bad for historic places? Why?

| Positive opinion | Negative opinion |
|---|---|
| - It brings money to the country. | - A lot of tourism money goes to big companies. |
| - Some holiday companies help the environment and local people. | - Tourists drop litter and damage places in other ways. |

### 4 Asking for and responding to an opinion

- طلب الرأى والرد عليه

| Asking for opinion | Response |
|---|---|
| - Do you think.....? | Agreeing: - I agree. |
| - What do you think.....? | Disagreeing: - I don't agree. |
| - Is..... good / bad for.....? | - I don't think so. |





# General Exercises on Unit 4

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

العربية / المعلمة 2023

**Nora and Mariam are talking about tourism.**

Nora : Are many tourists visiting Egypt these days, Mariam?

Mariam: ①.....

Nora : ②.....?

Mariam: They stay in hotels.

Nora : ③.....?

Mariam: Many tourists visit the Red Sea, Luxor, Aswan and many other places.

Nora How should we treat tourists?

Mariam: ④.....

Nora ⑤.....

Mariam: You're welcome.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**Vocabulary**

1. We have a..... in the bathroom. SB
   a. bed b. ruin c. temple d. mirror
2. Modern technology is .....
   a. interested b. amazing c. careful d. useless
3. Businessmen travel a lot ..... the world.
   a. under b. above c. around d. about
4. A ..... is a pot used for holding flowers. هبا / بغداد 2023 WB
   a. mask b. vase c. necklace d. figure
5. ..... means very old. WB
   a. Modern b. Awesome c. Public d. Ancient
6. Playing computer games is great ..... for children.
   a. fun b. report c. web d. view
7. A ..... is what you can see from the top of something. WB
   a. pyramid b. view c. review d. ruler
8. A ..... is a person who can show you round a place. WB
   a. tourist b. professor c. manager d. guide
9. Can you ..... a book to read at the weekend, Tarek?
   a. recommend b. advise c. say d. tell



CamScanner

10. There's ..... to see in old Cairo.
a. lot b. any c. much d. that

11. Tourists mustn't ..... places that they visit.
a. repair b. save c. protect d. damage

12. I ..... in Al-Ahmady Mosque in Tanta every Friday.
a. prey b. pray c. replay d. reply

## Language

13. I ..... my homework when my sister called me. WB
a. was doing b. will do c. did d. am doing

14. You ..... leave large bags at the ticket office before you enter the castle. SB
a. are b. must c. have d. shall

15. You ..... use your mobile while you are driving.
a. must b. aren't c. mustn't d. haven't

16. ..... Nadia was writing a message to Amany, her phone broke down.
a. Just as b. On c. After d. If

17. People were running quickly from the park because it ..... to rain. WB
a. starts b. is starting c. start d. started

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. While I was doing my homework, I ..... (drop) my pencil. SB
2. When the guide ..... (was arriving) at the museum, we were waiting outside.
3. It's a "No Smoking" area. You ..... (must) smoke here.
4. You ..... (must) touch the stones of the Pyramids. SB
5. ..... (While) the lesson, all the students were listening carefully.

### 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: WB

"The rules for a place you will visit"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية:

- What place will you visit?
- Where is it?
- What must you do there?
- What mustn't you do there?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'll visit ..... next week.
- It is in .....
- I must ..... there.
- I mustn't ..... there.





# Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات كتابية ورسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات درست بالوحدة

### 1- A description of a historic place I visited (Lessons 1 & 2)

We went to Luxor and Aswan. We flew to Luxor first. We began our tour with a guide. We visited all the places there. He was a clever guide. He gave us information about the ancient Egyptian culture. In Luxor, we visited the Luxor Temple and the Karnak Temple. In Aswan, we visited many wonderful places. We visited the High Dam, the Philae Temple and the Aswan Museum. I recommend this trip my friends.

### 2- An object in my home. (Lessons 3 & 4)

To : fawzi(a)mail@yahoo.com
From : shadi(a)post@gmail.com
Subject : An object in my home

Dear Fawzi(a),

I'd like to describe my favourite object in my home. It's a vase. My friend Samy bought the vase for me from Aswan in 2000. It is made of clay and it was made in Egypt. The vase is fantastic. It is coloured beautifully. I put fresh flowers in this vase every morning. At present, this vase is kept on my desk. It makes my desk more wonderful. It is the best present I got from Samy. I like it very much. I feel happy when I look at it. Write soon.

Yours,

Shadi(a)

### 3- What I think of tourism. (Lessons 5 & 6)

Tourism is very important to Egypt. It brings money to the country. This helps the local people. But I don't think that tourism helps the environment. Tourists drop rubbish and damage places in other ways. They often travel by car. This makes pollution. However, most tourists behave well. They know it's important to protect historic places. When people visit a historic place, they understand why we need to protect it.

### 4- The rules for a place I visited (General Exercises)

There are some rules I have to follow the Egyptian Museum. I mustn't drop rubbish. I mustn't damage objects. I mustn't touch any of them. I mustn't sit on stones. I must keep the place clean and safe. I mustn't use a camera. I must protect all the objects in the place. These historic places are very important to Egypt. Many tourists visit these places. We should treat them kindly.

### 5- A school trip to a museum (Al Azhar)

I went on a school trip to the Egyptian Museum last week. There were many statues and ancient monuments. It was fun. I recommend it because we can learn about Ancient Egyptian history. I saw many tourists there.

### 6- What I think we can do to protect the environment (Test)

We can help protect the environment. We can plant trees. We must also stop cutting down them. We mustn't destroy gardens and forests. We must use less water. We can walk, use bikes or public transport instead of our cars. Cars cause a lot of air pollution. We can collect rubbish and recycle it. This helps keep the environment clean.



CamScanner

Unit 4

# Al Azhar Test

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Ancient Egyptians liked playing ..... .
   a. wood b. senet c. chess d. tennis
2. Senet boxes have ..... squares.
   a. three b. thirteen c. thirty d. third

## B Language Functions

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1. Ticket officer : Good morning, City Museum. How can I help you?
   Elham : .....
2. Fahd : .....?
   Alaa : Certainly. What do you want to know?

## C Usage

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. After the end of the war, many houses became ..... .
   a. rains b. ruins c. arches d. statues
2. You ..... see today's programme. It's useful to you.
   a. mustn't b. have c. are d. must
3. ..... the party, the light went out.
   a. While b. During c. When d. As
4. Paper doesn't ..... in water.
   a. sleep b. drown c. sink d. drink
5. The new villa has got a wonderful ..... .
   a. design b. mask c. object d. guide
6. She ..... at her mobile while she was crossing the street.
   a. looking b. was looking c. looked d. is looking





## D Reading Comprehension

**4 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Tourists usually go to another country to see ancient buildings and works of art. They can learn new languages and enjoy scenery. By the start of 21st century, international tourism became one of the world's most important activities. The history of tourism is of nice interest and importance. Some companies organise tours to many ancient places. Tourism is important because it brings a lot of money. It also helps provide new jobs. It helps young people show new products and services. We should encourage tourism in our country. We should be helpful and kind to tourists who come to visit Egypt.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do tourists usually go to other countries?
   .....
2. What do some companies organise?
   .....
3. Why is tourism important?
   .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. We should ..... tourism in our country.
   a. damage b. drop c. encourage d. leave
5. Tourists visit another country to see ..... places.
   a. dirty b. clean c. busy d. ancient

## E Writing

**5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"A school trip to a museum"

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية :

- Where was the school trip to?
- How old is the place?
- What must or mustn't you do there?
- What can you see and do there?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I went on a school trip to.....
- We must / mustn't ..... there.
- There is / are.....
- I recommend it because.....



CamScanner

# Unit 4 TEST

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important ..... .
   a. statue b. stone c. castle d. temple
2. Cleopatra's Needle has beautiful ..... on it.
   a. paintings b. arches c. colours d. designs
3. You can see it ..... the River Thames.
   a. next to b. in front of c. under d. behind
4. The River Thames is in ..... .
   a. Paris b. Amsterdam c. London d. Tokyo

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Azza is asking Adel about a book he's reading.**

**Azza** : What are you reading?
**Adel** : ① .....
**Azza** : ② ..... ?
**Adel** : Yes, the ancient Egyptians were very clever.
**Azza** : ③ ..... ?
**Adel** : They built huge temples and Pyramids.
**Azza** : What other things did they do?
**Adel** : ④ .....
**Azza** : How did they make pots and bowls?
**Adel** : ⑤ ..... .





## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Last summer, Mr Adel and his wife went on holiday to Hurghada. They stayed in a small hotel. One day, Mr Adel went for a long walk. He found a cat! It was lost! It followed Mr Adel to the hotel. His wife liked the cat and she gave it some food. It ate the food very quickly. It sat down **outside** their front door.

At 10 p.m., it was cold, so Mr Adel's wife let the cat inside. **It** sat beside her on the sofa. They gave her the name Bosbos. Bosbos stayed in the hotel with them. Six days later, it was time to go home. Now, Bosbos lives with them, she sits on the wife's knee in the evenings. They love Bosbos and Bosbos loves them.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
   .....
2. Where did Mr Adel and his wife stay?
   .....
3. Why do you think Mr Adel's wife liked the cat?
   .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the ..... .
   a. home b. sofa c. cat d. food
5. Mr Adel's wife is ..... .
   a. kind b. bad c. unkind d. lost
6. The word **"outside"** means ..... .
   a. beside b. in c. outdoors d. inside

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. You ..... eat inside the castle. SB
   a. were b. must c. have d. mustn't
2. The guide showed us ..... the Temple of Luxor.
   a. behind b. round c. during d. without
3. These bowls are made of ..... . WB
   a. clay b. flour c. air d. oil
4. Bees and ants are important ..... . WB
   a. birds b. planes c. insects d. guides
5. Ramsis II's ..... was moved to the new museum many years ago.
   a. tower b. statue c. castle d. view



CamScanner

6. There's a beautiful _____ that leads to the inside of the palace.
a. chair b. ruin c. arch d. stone

7. Most of the people _____ when the earthquake started. WB
a. sleep b. were sleeping c. slept d. will sleep

8. After the earthquake, three buildings became _____.
a. arches b. views c. areas d. ruins

9. What _____ I do when I visit a historic place?
a. must b. have c. was d. am

10. A _____ is something people wear to cover or protect their face. WB
a. glove b. mask c. helmet d. sock

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. While I _____ (am playing) on the computer, I found out an interesting fact. SB
2. All people _____ (mustn't) wear a mask to avoid the dangerous disease.
3. We were all laughing when he _____ (finishes) that funny story. WB
4. Children _____ (must) play with matches.

**E Writing**

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"What do you think we can do to protect the environment"

[يجاب عنه قبل الاختبار]

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- How can we help to protect the environment?
- How much water must we use?
- What means of transport can we use to protect the environment?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- The most important way to protect the environment is.....
- To protect the environment, we can.....
- The environment needs.....



Prep. 2

New Hello!



# 5 UNIT

# Helping you, helping me

## Objectives

**Reading:**
An article about kindness; blogs about volunteering for charities; *A Little Princess*; a news report about a charity; a blog about a project

**Writing:**
A blog post on how to help your community

**Listening:**
Conversations about jobs in the house; descriptions of photos; stories about people who helped; people making suggestions

**Speaking:**
A discussion about jobs in the house; discussing random acts of kindness; making suggestions

**Language:**
*who, which, that, where*

**Life Skills:**
Participation; Collaboration

**Values:**
Coexistence values; Sharing; Random acts of kindness

**Issues:**
Community participation

SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب

CamScanner

# Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 44-47 WB pages 102-103

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| random | عشوائى (غير مقصود) | kindness | طيبة / عطف |
| stranger | شخص غريب | lift | مصعد (أسانسير) |
| fantastic | رائع | messy | فوضوى (غير منظم) |
| bin | سلة مهملات | smile (n) | ابتسامة |

### Jobs in the house

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cooking | الطهى | tidying up | التنسيق / الترتيب |
| looking after | الاعتناء بـ | washing up | غسل الأوانى |
| putting away the clothes | وضع الملابس فى مكانها المعتاد | taking out the rubbish | إخراج القمامة |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| stairs | درجات السلم | seat | مقعد ثابت |
| schoolbag | حقيبة المدرسة | What sort...? | ما نوع....؟ |
| apartment | شقة | distance | مسافة |
| shopkeeper | صاحب متجر (محل) | further | أبعد |
| acts | أفعال - أعمال | snack | وجبة خفيفة |
| attic | غرفة أعلى المنزل (سندرة) | care (d) (n) | يهتم/اهتمام |
| wheelchair | كرسى متحرك | check (ed) | يفحص - يتحقق |
| footballer | لاعب كرة قدم | | |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| do the cooking | تطهو/تطبخ | have a smile | لديه ابتسامة |
| take the lift/the bus | يستقل المصعد/الاتوبيس | get his bag ready | يجهز حقيبته |
| acts of kindness | أفعال خير | for no reason | بدون سبب |
| give ... back | يُعيد | go on a boat | يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب |
| make the bed | يرتب السرير | go down to | ينزل إلى |
| make sure | يتأكد | care about | يهتم بشأن |
| make a model for | يصنع نموذج لـ | walk into | يدخل مكان |
| make friends | يكون صداقات | run after | يطارد |





## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| put away | يضع الشيء فى مكانه | put away | put away |
| take out | يُخرج | took out | taken out |
| get... ready | يجهز.... | got... ready | got... ready |
| make | يصنع | made | made |
| write down | يدوّن | wrote down | written down |

| Word | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|
| lucky | محظوظ | fortunate | unlucky | غير محظوظ |
| messy | فوضوى | untidy | tidy | مرتب/منظم |
| fantastic | رائع | awesome | terrible | فظيع |
| surprised | مندهش | amazed | - | |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| kindness | طيبة/عطف | when you do things to help others and show you care about them |
| strangers | غرباء | people you don't know |
| fantastic | رائع | extremely[1] good; excellent[2] |
| tidy up | يرتب | make a place look better by putting things in their correct places |
| random | عشوائى | happening without a plan |
| a smile | ابتسامة | the shape[3] of your mouth that shows you are happy |
| messy | فوضوى | very untidy[4] |
| put away | يضع الشيء فى مكانه المعتاد | put something in the place where you usually keep it when you are not using it |
| bin | سلة مهملات | - you put rubbish in this / - a place for rubbish |
| lift | مصعد | a machine that carries people up or down a tall building |

١- للغاية
٢- ممتاز
٣- شكل
٤- غير منظم



CamScanner

## Language Notes

### 1) get ready - get on - get up

- **get ready** يستعد
  Ex. He trained well to get ready for the match.
- **get on** يصعد/يستقل (مركبة)
  Ex. I helped the old man to get on the train.
- **get up** يستيقظ
  Ex. I get up at seven o'clock every day.

### 2) on time - in time

- **on time** في الوقت المحدد
  Ex. I always arrive at school on time.
- **in time** في الوقت المناسب
  Ex. We arrived at the cinema in time. The movie was about to start.

### 3) every day - everday

- **every day (adverb)** حال بمعنى "كل يوم"
  Ex. I study English every day.
- **everyday (adjective)** صفة بمعنى "يومي" (تأتي فقط قبل الاسم)
  Ex. He writes about his everyday life in a diary.

### 4) spend

- **spend + time + (V- ing)** يقضي وقتًا في
  Ex. Seif spent three hours playing computer games.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The students are standing in a queue to get ..... the school bus.
   a. ready b. up c. on d. over
2. You should arrive at the train station ..... time.
   a. by b. for c. at d. in
3. These dishes are for ..... use.
   a. day b. everyday c. every day d. a day
4. Every morning, I spend an hour ..... up my room.
   a. tidying b. tidy c. to tidy d. to tidying





## Audioscript

SB Page (45)

استمع إلى النصوص

**Hala** : I'm Hala. I have to make my bed[1] every day and tidy up my bedroom[2] once a week. My mother isn't happy about how messy[3] I am, but I always tidy up once a week on Saturday morning. It takes a long time. I have to put away all my clothes[4].



**Munir** : My name's Munir. During the week, my sister and I take turns[5] to wash up[6] after meals. I wash up after dinner on Mondays and Wednesdays and she washes up after dinner on Tuesdays and Thursdays. Sometimes, I help my grandmother to do the cooking[7]. I love making koushari.



**Adam** : I'm Adam. I help with different things at home but my most difficult job is taking out our rubbish[8]. I don't have to do this every day; only when the bins[9] are full. I usually take out the bins in the evening on Wednesdays and Sundays. Our apartment[10] is on the third floor so I have to go down to the street in the lift[11]. The bins are heavy when they are full!



**Nader** : I sometimes have to look after my brother[12] after school, but I like doing this. We play games and I give him a snack[13] to eat. He doesn't have to do any homework yet, but he has to get his bag ready[14] for school and I make sure he has the right books.



١- أرتب فراشي
٢- أرتب حجرة نومي
٣- فوضوي (غير منظم)
٤- أضع ملابسي في مكانها
٥- أتبادل الأدوار
٦- يغسل الأواني
٧- الطهي
٨- أخرج القمامة
٩- سلة المهملات
١٠- شقة
١١- مصعد
١٢- أعتني بأخي
١٣- وجبة خفيفة
١٤- يجهز حقيبته

SB Page (46)

**Aya** : The girl looks sad to be alone. I think she is new in the school and doesn't have any friends yet. The other students shouldn't forget how it feels when you start school. They should try to make friends[1] with her.



**Samir** : A man forgot his bag. Someone should run after him and give the bag back[2] to him. Or they should look inside the bag to find his name and address.



**Aya** : The woman looks really tired! I think someone in her family should make her a cup of tea and she should have a rest. They should take the children outside and play with them.

١- يكونوا صداقات
٢- يعيد الحقيبة
٣- يحمل



**Samir** : She shouldn't carry[3] all those things. Someone should carry some of the things for her.





CamScanner

# Reading

SB Page (47)



## Random acts of kindness

In 1982, some friends were in a restaurant in California, USA. They wanted to make the world better. One of the friends, Anne Herbert, wrote down her idea: *Practise*[1] *random acts*[2] *of kindness*[3]. A random act of kindness is a kind thing that you do for someone, for no reason[4]. You can do random acts of kindness for the people you know: for example, buy flowers for your mother. You can also be kind to strangers[5]: for example, give your seat to someone on a bus. Now, February 17th is Random Acts of Kindness Day. All over the world[6], people do kind things for the day: not because they have to, but because they want to see a smile[7] on a person's face. Isn't that a fantastic[8] idea?

١- يمارس
٢- أفعال عشوائية
٣- عطف
٤- بدون سبب
٥- غرباء
٦- في جميع أنحاء العالم
٧- ابتسامة
٨- رائعة

WB Page (102)

We're going on a boat today. It's going to be hot, so you have to wear sunglasses[1] and a hat. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous. Dina uses a wheelchair[2], so she has to go on the boat first. You all have to be careful when you get on the boat. You also have to sit down when the boat is moving[3], but you don't have to sit when the boat stops. You can stand up then. Finally[4], if you see a dolphin[5], you have to tell us! That is why we are going!

١- نظارة شمسية
٢- كرسي متحرك
٣- يتحرك
٤- أخيراً
٥- دولفين

WB Page (103)



## Do you want to start running?

**Follow these tips[1]!**

- Start running short distances[2].
- Don't run too far, but go a bit further[3] each day.
- Go with a friend if you can - it will help!
- Don't run if your legs hurt[4].
- Drink lots of water after a run[5], but not before!
- Eat healthy food.
- Don't eat a lot of sweets[6].

١- نصائح
٢- مسافات
٣- أبعد قليلاً
٤- يؤلم
٥- جولة جري
٦- حلوى





# Exercises on Vocabulary

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Hanady and Yomna are talking about what they do to help in their houses.**

Hanady : Do you usually help in your house?

Yomna : ① .....

Hanady : ② .....?

Yomna : I have to tidy up my room, wash up... etc.

Hanady : ③ .....?

Yomna : I tidy up my room every morning.

Hanady : Does your sister Samya help you?

Yomna : ④ .....

Hanady : I think your mother is very lucky to have you both.

Yomna : ⑤ .....

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. The bin is full. Please can you take ..... the rubbish? WB
   a. up b. down c. out d. off
2. Karim is a happy person and always has a ..... on his face. WB
   a. smile b. pencil case c. knife d. tablet
3. I help to look ..... my little sister when my parents are busy. WB
   a. up b. after c. for d. to
4. Adam was surprised when a ..... walked into his shop. WB
   a. relative b. friend c. teacher d. stranger
5. Amal finds it very easy to ..... friends because she is so friendly. WB
   a. do b. give c. make d. hate
6. We all remember my grandfather's ..... : he always helped us when we were children. WB
   a. kindness b. weakness c. careless d. sadness



CamScanner

7. This book is ..... You should read it!
a. boring b. useless c. fantastic d. bad

8. Hala is a ..... person and there are often things on her bed.
a. tidy b. friendly c. kind d. messy

9. My clothes were clean and dry, so I put them all .....
a. away b. up c. off d. in

10. I was surprised when I saw the present. The synonym of "surprised" is .....
a. sad b. calm c. amazed d. frightened

11. I go to school every day, "every day" is a/an .....
a. noun b. adverb c. verb d. adjective

12. We can get to the top of a tall building in the .....
a. bin b. carriage c. left d. lift

13. Don't drop rubbish on the ground. Put it in the .....
a. pen b. bowl c. bin d. plate

## Bit by Bit Exercises

14. I read ..... pages from the book and then I decided to buy it.
a. friendly b. moving c. boring d. random

15. She can't walk so she uses a .....
a. sofa b. wheelchair c. toy d. lamp

16. My mother ..... the cooking alone.
a. makes b. has c. does d. takes

17. My sister always washes ..... after we finish eating.
a. up b. over c. away d. in

18. The opposite of "messy" is .....
a. untidy b. lucky c. terrible d. tidy

19. We arrived at the airport ..... time. The plane leaves in half an hour.
a. in b. at c. on d. for

20. Let's ..... the house; the visitors are coming soon.
a. wash up b. tidy up c. stand up d. make up





# Language

## Obligation and lack of obligation الإلزام وعدم الإلزام

### Obligation / Necessity الإلزام/الضرورة

**have to / has to** يجب أن/ضروري أن

• يقصد بالإلزام/الضرورة (أي قواعد معينة من الضروري أن نتبعها ولا خيار أمامنا)

• للتعبير عن ذلك في المضارع نستخدم:

**I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + have to**
**He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has to**
→ **+ inf.** مصدر الفعل

Ex. I have to wear the school uniform.
Ex. He has to do a research.

### Lack of Obligation / Necessity عدم الإلزام/الضرورة

**don't / doesn't have to** لا يجب أن/ليس ضروري أن

• يقصد بعدم الإلزام/ بعدم الضرورة (أشياء ليس من الضروري أن نعملها)

• للتعبير عن ذلك في المضارع نستخدم:

**I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + don't have to**
**He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't have to**
→ **+ inf.** مصدر الفعل.

Ex. We don't have to go to school on Saturdays.
Ex. My mother doesn't have to go to work today because it's a holiday.

• لعمل سؤال بمعنى (هل ..؟) عن (الإلزام/الضرورة) في المضارع نستخدم:

**Do + I / we / you / they / اسم جمع + have to + inf...?**

**- Yes, فاعل + do.** → (إثبات) **- No, فاعل + don't.** → (نفي)

**Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + have to + inf...?**

**- Yes, فاعل + does.** → (إثبات) **- No, فاعل + doesn't.** → (نفي)

Ex. Do you have to get up at seven o'clock?
- Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
Ex. Does she have to eat breakfast?
- Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

• لعمل سؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم:

**كلمة استفهام + do / does + فاعل + have to + inf...?**

Ex. When do we have to finish our homework?
Ex. Why does she have to go now?



CamScanner

## Check

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The red light means that you _____ stop.
   a. has to  b. don't have to  c. have to  d. doesn't have to
2. Hala _____ add salt. The food is already salty.
   a. has to  b. don't have to  c. have to  d. doesn't have to
3. My mother is sick. I _____ cook dinner.
   a. has to  b. have  c. have to  d. doesn't have to

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. _____ (Do) Hossam have to do that homework?
2. The driver _____ (have to) give his licence to the traffic policeman.
3. I can't walk. I _____ (doesn't have to) use a wheelchair.

### Advice النصيحة

should ينبغي أن / shouldn't لا ينبغي أن

• نستخدم (should / shouldn't) للتعبير عن النصيحة بالصيغة الآتية:

فاعل + should / shouldn't + inf. مصدر الفعل ...

• للنصيحة بفعل شيء نستخدم (should)

Ex. We should see that film. It's fantastic.

• للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء نستخدم should not (shouldn't)

Ex. You shouldn't eat unhealthy snacks.

• للسؤال عن النصيحة بـ «هل...؟» نستخدم:

Should + فاعل + inf. ....?

Ex. Should I write my name on my paper?

- Yes, you should.  - No, you shouldn't.

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + should + فاعل + inf. ...?

Ex. A: When should I start to revise for the exam?

B: Three days before the exam.





### Notes

• لا تستخدم to قبل مصدر الفعل الذى يأتى بعد should / shouldn't

واعلم أن المصدر من am, is, are, was, were هو be

ومن has, have هو have:

Ex. You should be helpful.

• فى النفى ضع not (n't) مباشرة بعد should وليس بعد الفعل.

should not (shouldn't) go ✓.  ~~should go not~~ ✗.

## Exercises on Language

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

SB, WB & Exams

1. I _____ walk to school. I take the bus. SB
   a. have to  b. doesn't have to  c. has to  d. don't have to
2. You _____ drink lots of water after a run, but not before! WB
   a. should  b. can't  c. doesn't have to  d. shouldn't
3. It's a holiday today. We _____ to go to school. SB
   a. have  b. has  c. don't have  d. doesn't have
4. You _____ tell your teacher if you don't understand the lesson. SB
   a. can't  b. should  c. shouldn't  d. has to
5. You _____ buy your friend a present on his/her birthday. SB
   a. should  b. shouldn't  c. should to  d. aren't
6. My father _____ get up at six o'clock every day to go to work. SB
   a. have to  b. has to  c. don't have to  d. doesn't have
7. When you get on the bus, you _____ buy a ticket. SB
   a. don't have to  b. has to  c. have to  d. doesn't have to
8. It's going to be hot, so you _____ wear sunglasses and a hat. WB
   a. have to  b. don't have to  c. shouldn't  d. can't
9. _____ you have to go to school?
   a. Must  b. Are  c. Does  d. Do



CamScanner

### Bit by Bit Exercises

10. You ..... watch too much TV.
a. shouldn't b. have to c. should d. has to

11. You ..... always tell the truth.
a. don't have to b. shouldn't c. has to d. should

12. We ..... play with matches.
a. should b. have to c. shouldn't d. has to

13. You ..... eat fruit and vegetables. They're healthy.
a. shouldn't b. should c. shouldn't to d. should to

14. You ..... do sports to keep fit.
a. should b. doesn't have to c. shouldn't d. don't have to

15. You ..... shout in the classroom.
a. should b. shouldn't c. has to d. doesn't have to

16. You ..... be careful when you cross a road.
a. shouldn't b. has to c. don't have to d. have to

17. **A:** ..... I read this story? **B:** Yes, it's very interesting.
a. Should b. Have c. Shouldn't d. Does

18. You ..... stay up late the night before the exam.
a. should b. have to c. shouldn't d. doesn't have to

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. At school, I ..... (don't have) to arrive on time. WB
2. We ..... (has to) clean our room every day.
3. You ..... (not have to) go to school on Friday. It's a holiday.
4. My mother ..... (don't) have to go to work today.
5. You ..... (shouldn't) study hard.
6. Does Nader ..... (has) to get up early?

### Bit by Bit Exercises

7. You ..... (should) eat many sweets. They are not healthy.
8. Should I ..... (to read) this book?
9. You ..... (not should) drink water from the tap.
10. We ..... (shouldn't) drink enough water every day.
11. Should I ..... (to visit) my relatives from time to time?





## Speaking

### 1) A discussion about jobs in the house

مناقشة عن القيام بمهام فى المنزل

نسأل ونجيب عن القيام بمهام فى المنزل كالآتى:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Do you help in your house? هل تساعد فى منزلك؟ | - Yes, I do.<br>- No, I don't |
| - What sort of jobs do you have to do at home? ما نوع المهام التى يجب أن تقوم بها فى المنزل؟ | - I have to tidy up my room, wash up... etc. يجب أن أقوم بترتيب حجرتي، وغسل الأطباق..الخ. |

### 2) Discussing random acts of kindness

- مناقشة أعمال الخير غير المخطط لها

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness? Why? هل تعتقد أن الناس لابد دائماً أن يقوموا بأعمال خير غير مخطط لها؟ لماذا؟ | - Yes, I think so because people should always help each other. نعم، أعتقد ذلك. لأن الناس لابد دائماً أن يساعدوا بعضهم البعض |
| - What would you like to do on Random Acts of Kindness Day? ماذا تود أن تقوم به فى يوم أعمال الخير غير المخطط لها؟ | - I would like to take part in a charity to do many acts of kindness. أود أن أشارك فى جمعية خيرية للقيام بالعديد من أعمال الخير. |

## General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Zeinab and Hanaa are talking about random acts of kindness.**

Zeinab : What are you doing, Hanaa?
Hanaa : (1) .....
Zeinab : (2) ..... ?
Hanaa : This book is about random acts of kindness.
Zeinab : Should we always do random acts of kindness?
Hanaa : (3) .....
Zeinab : How?
Hanaa : (4) .....
Zeinab : (5) ..... ?
Hanaa : Yes, I'll take part in a charity. You can join me.



CamScanner

## ② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. My mother is ..... dinner in the kitchen.
   a. tidying b. cleaning c. moving d. cooking
2. I love my friend. He always meets me with a pretty .....
   a. mile b. smile c. schoolbag d. bin
3. Sameera always tidies ..... the kitchen after cooking. تجريبية / مصر 2022
   a. off b. down c. up d. away
4. My friend Karem lives in a nice .....
   a. apartment b. school c. seat d. lift
5. He didn't come to school yesterday ..... no reason.
   a. of b. for c. from d. to
6. I usually ..... the rubbish when the bins are full. تجريبية / مصر 2023
   a. take out b. wash up c. tidy up d. put away
7. Hala is very ..... and leaves her toys all over the floor. WB محذوف 2022
   a. tidy b. dirty c. missed d. messy
8. They gave the footballer a ..... test to check his health. WB تجريبية / مصر 2022
   a. delicious b. random c. useless d. far

### Language

9. You ..... pass your exams to go to university. حديث مدارس / رأس سدر 2022
   a. should b. has to c. have to d. don't have to
10. At the weekends, I ..... get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock. SB
    a. doesn't have to b. has to c. have to d. don't have to
11. We ..... eat healthy food.
    a. shouldn't b. should c. has to d. are
12. ..... Samir have to do this homework?
    a. Does b. Is c. Has d. Do
13. Children ..... spend much time on mobile phones. It's not good.
    a. should b. have to c. shouldn't d. doesn't have to
14. What rules do we have ..... in that museum?
    a. followed b. to follow c. follow d. to following
15. You ..... be angry. This is my advice.
    a. have to b. doesn't have to c. has to d. shouldn't





## ③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We ..... (shouldn't) drink enough water every day.
2. Should I ..... (to visit) my relatives from time to time?
3. I ..... (have) to pay for the toy. It's free.
4. I feel ill. I ..... (shouldn't) see a doctor.
5. The bus is full. I ..... (don't have to) take a taxi.

## ④ Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: SB

to your penfriend telling him/ her about your school rules.

- Your name is Fadi(a) and your email address is fadi(a)666@gmail.com
- Your penfriend's name is George(ina) and his / her email address is george(ina)55@yahoo.com

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى:

- What do you have to do at school?
- What mustn't you do?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- At school, I have to .....
- At school, I mustn't .....
- In the library, I have to .....
- In the library, I mustn't .....



CamScanner

# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48-50 WB pages 104-105

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| boarding school | مدرسة داخلية | volunteer | متطوع |
| disabled | معاق | owner | المالك |
| the disabled | متحدي الإعاقة/ذوي الهمم | beggar | متسول |
| cruel | قاسي | feed (fed) (fed) | يطعم |
| servant | خادمة/خادم | donate (d) | يتبرع |
| community | مجتمع محلي (صغير) | behave (d) | يتصرف |
| princess | أميرة | pick up (ed) | يلتقط |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| trainers | حذاء رياضي | generous | كريم |
| volleyball | الكرة الطائرة | strange | غريب |
| certain | معين/مؤكد | sports person | شخص رياضي |
| local beach | شاطىء محلي | directions | اتجاهات |
| schoolbooks | كتب مدرسية | die (d) | يموت |
| secondary school | مدرسة ثانوية | reach (ed) | يصل إلى |
| headteacher | مديرة المدرسة | recommend (ed) | يوصي / يزكي |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| pass the exam | يجتاز الامتحان | recommend.... to | يوصي بـ..... لـ..... |
| work as | يعمل كـ | terrible to | فظيع مع |
| get lost | يضل الطريق | move to | ينتقل الى (يعزل) |
| behave well | يتصرف بشكل لائق | volunteer for | متطوع لـ..... |
| behave like | تتصرف مثل | ask for | يطلب |
| leave .. behind | يترك.... خلفه | surprised about | مندهش من |
| polite to | مهذب مع | take.... off | يخلع (ملابس/ ساعة اليد/ حذاء) |
| cruel to | قاسي مع | | |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| leave.. behind | يترك..... خلفه | left.... behind | left... behind |
| give | يعطي | gave | given |





| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| cruel | قاسي | unkind / terrible | kind | طيب |
| polite | مؤدب | well - behaved | rude / impolite | وقح / غير مؤدب |
| famous | مشهور | well -known | unknown | غير معروف |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| cruel | قاسي | not kind |
| boarding school | مدرسة داخلية | a school where the students live all the time (during the school year) |
| behave | يتصرف | act or do something in a certain way(1) |
| beggar | متسول | a poor person who asks others for money or food |
| servant | خادم | a person who works in a house, cooking(2), cleaning, etc. |
| community | مجتمع محلي | a small area and the people who live in it |
| pick up | يلتقط | - collect something from a place<br>- lift someone or something |
| disabled | معاق/عاجز | when someone cannot use part of the body in the way most people can |
| donate | يتبرع | give something useful to a person or charity that needs help |
| feed | يُطعم | give food to a person or animal |
| princess | اميرة | the daughter of a king or queen |

١- طريقة معينة
٢- الطبخ

## Language Notes

### (1) buy

- buy + someone + something
  يشتري لشخص شيء ما
  Ex. I bought my mother a present.

- buy + something + for + someone
  يشتري شيئاً لشخص
  Ex. I bought a present for my mother.



CamScanner

## ② like - would ('d) like

- like + n / v.ing يحب

Ex. I like football matches.

Ex. I like watching football matches.

- would ('d) like + (to + inf) / n = want + (to + inf) / n يريد

Ex. I'd like (want) to drink tea, please.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I bought a present _____ my friend on his birthday.

a. for b. to c. about d. from

2. I like _____ coffee in the morning.

a. drink b. drinking c. drinks d. to drinking

## Audioscript

SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص

**Amal :** Our neighbour[1], Mr Othman, is the person who helped me pass[2] my maths exams. He is 70 and doesn't work now, but he was a maths teacher before. The books which he used to help me were his old schoolbooks[3] from when he was teaching at secondary school[4].



My aunt Dalia is a person who is always very kind to me. She bought me the trainers[5] that I wore when I played in the school volleyball team for the first time. We won the match!



My little cousin Rana helped me last week when I lost my watch. I was sad because it was the watch that my father gave me for my birthday. The place where I lost it was the garden. I took it off[6] when I was playing and it fell. Rana found it under a plant. Because her hand is so small, she could put it under the plant and reach the watch.

١- جار
٢- يجتاز
٣- كتب مدرسية
٤- مدرسة ثانوية
٥- حذاء رياضي
٦- يخلع الساعة





## Reading

SB Page (49)



I work as a volunteer[1] for a charity which helps to clean our local[2] beach. At the weekend, we go to the beach and pick up[3] the rubbish that people left behind. We always pick up lots of plastic bottles!

**Samir**



It is good to help people in the community[4]. I visit a home for old people who are disabled[5] so it's difficult for their families to look after them. I go there after school on Thursdays. The volunteers have a special[6] person who we visit and talk to. The woman who I visit is called Mrs Nahla. She worked as a nurse when she was young and she is a fantastic person. I love talking to her.

**Fatma**



I work for a charity which looks after animals that are old or sick[7] and cannot work any more. People donate[8] money to the charity to buy food for the animals such as horses and camels. We help to feed[9] the animals and look after them. This camel is very old and she is my favourite[10] animal.

**Ahmed**

١- متطوع
٢- محلي
٣- نلتقط
٤- مجتمع محلي
(صغير)
٥- معاقين
٦- من نوع خاص
٧- مريض
٨- يتبرع
٩- يُطعم
١٠- مفضل

SB Page (50)

### A Little Princess

**by Frances Hodgson Burnett**



Everyone at Sara Crewe's boarding school[1] calls her "a little princess[2]" because her father is very rich. After Sara's father dies, the headteacher[3], Miss Minchin, starts being cruel[4] to Sara because she has no money. She makes Sara work as a servant[5]. Sara has to work very hard and does not get much food. However, Sara decides to behave[6] like a real[7] princess, so she is always kind and polite[8] to everyone.

One day, Sara finds a coin[9] in the street. She can't find the owner[10]. She goes to the baker's[11] to buy some cakes. When she comes out, she sees a beggar[12] and gives the girl most of her cakes. Sara can see that this girl is cold[13] and hungry. Sara thinks that a real princess should always be kind and generous[14] like this. When the baker sees this, she is surprised. "This girl is very strange[15]. She is very poor but she is kind to beggars," she thinks.

١- مدرسة داخلية
٢- أميرة
٣- مديرة المدرسة
٤- قاسي
٥- خادمة
٦- تتصرف
٧- حقيقي
٨- مهذب
٩- عملة معدنية
١٠- المالك
١١- المخبز
١٢- متسولة
١٣- تشعر بالبرد
١٤- كريم
١٥- غريبة



CamScanner

WB Page (105)

I think that the girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant, because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough to buy a few cakes. I often see a beggar in the street where I work. She usually asks for money, but when the young girl left my shop, she gave her most of her cakes! I was very surprised. I feel that this servant girl behaved like a princess!



## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. If someone is ..... to you, they are terrible to you. WB
   a. kind b. nice c. good d. cruel
2. To ..... is to give something useful to a person or charity. WB
   a. spend b. donate c. pick up d. call
3. A ..... is a small area and the people who live in it. WB
   a. community b. country c. team d. communication
4. A ..... always asks people for food and money.
   a. princess b. servant c. beggar d. volunteer
5. This book is very interesting, I ..... it to you.
   a. advise b. tell c. try d. recommend
6. This boy always behaves ..... an adult. All people like him.
   a. well b. like c. so d. for
7. A ..... is a person who works in a house cooking, cleaning, etc.
   a. servant b. beggar c. doctor d. surgeon





### Bit by Bit Exercises

8. When I was young, I went to a ..... school.
   a. pride b. cboard c. boarding d. broad
9. The charity saves money by using ..... .
   a. volunteers b. officers c. beggars d. strangers
10. All people should help the ....., like those who are blind.
    a. cruel b. rich c. disabled d. healthy
11. We cleaned the playground and ..... up the rubbish.
    a. forgot b. picked c. pushed d. trained
12. I have a pet cat and I ..... it three times a day.
    a. eat b. kill c. hit d. feed
13. My uncle works ..... a doctor in a big hospital.
    a. as b. so c. too d. but
14. Osman studied hard so he ..... the exams.
    a. failed b. lost c. passed d. paid
15. She is polite so she ..... well at school.
    a. shouts b. behaves c. lies d. fights
16. A ..... lives in a big palace.
    a. beggar b. farmer c. poor man d. princess
17. My friend Tarek is the ..... of this house.
    a. owner b. teacher c. driver d. farmer
18. He took his watch ..... and put it on the table.
    a. of b. on c. off d. at
19. A group of tourists ..... lost in the desert.
    a. got b. made c. took d. sent
20. I'd like ..... a piece of cake, please.
    a. have b. having c. to have d. to having



CamScanner

# Language

## Relative clauses / pronouns عبارات / ضمائر الوصل

• تستخدم (عبارات / ضمائر الوصل) لتخبرنا عن الاسم الذى نتكلم عنه، وقد يكون هذا الاسم (شخص / شىء / حيوان / مكان / زمان).

### 1 who (that) — for people

تحل محل اسم عاقل بمعنى (الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى)

Miss Amal is a teacher. She teaches us English.

Miss Amal is the teacher who / that teaches us English.

### 2 which (that) — for things / animals

تحل محل اسم غير عاقل (شئ - حيوان) بمعنى (الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى)

That's a horse. It won the race.

That's the horse which / that won the race.

### 3 where — for places

تستخدم للإشارة إلى المكان بمعنى (حيث)

This is a house. My grandfather lived there.

This is the house where my grandfather lived.

### 4 when — for time

تستخدم للإشارة إلى الزمان بمعنى (عندما)

This month is October. I was born in October.

October is the month when I was born.





## Notes

١- عند استخدام ضمير الوصل لربط جملتين نحذف دائماً الاسم الذى يدل عليه ضمير الوصل:

Ex. This is the table which I bought it.

Ex. That is my school where I learn there.

٢- لاحظ استخدام which مكان where :

Ex. This is the house which my father bought.

• استخدمنا which لأنها تعنى (الذى) التى تستخدم للإشارة إلى الأشياء وهنا نتكلم عن (house) كشئ وليس مكان ولذلك لم نستخدم (where).

• لاحظ أنه إذا جاء حرف جر مثل in مع المكان نستخدم (which وليس where)

Where = حرف جـــر + which

Where = which .... + حرف جر

Ex. Tanta is the city in which I was born.

Ex. Tanta is the city which I was born in.

٣- لاحظ استخدام which مكان (when)

Ex. Friday is the day which I like.

• استخدمنا which لأنها تعنى (الذى) وتشير إلى الأشياء وهنا نتكلم عن (Friday) ليس كوقت ولكن كشىء ولذلك لم نستخدم when.

• لاحظ أنه إذا جاء حرف جر مثل (in) مع الزمان نستخدم (which وليس when)

When = حرف جـــر + which

When = which .... + حرف جر

Ex. June is the month in which I was born.

Ex. June is the month which I was born in.

# Exercises on Language

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

SB, WB & Exams

1. My aunt Dalia is a person ..... is always very kind to me. SB

a. who b. which c. when d. where

2. She bought me the trainers ..... I wore when I played in the school volleyball team. SB

a. who b. where c. that d. when

3. I gave the shoes ..... are too small for me to my cousin. SB

a. who b. when c. where d. which



CamScanner

4. Ahmed is the boy ..... I met in primary school. WB
a. which b. who c. where d. when

5. That is the house ..... my grandmother was born. WB
a. which b. when c. where d. who

6. The boy ..... was my best friend at school moved to a different city. SB
a. when b. who c. which d. where

7. Let's go back to the beach ..... we went swimming last week. SB
a. when b. that c. who d. where

8. Tennis is a sport ..... my sister plays every week. WB
a. where b. when c. which d. who

9. It was the watch ..... my father gave me for my birthday. SB
a. that b. when c. who d. where

10. This is the book ..... I bought last week. 2023
a. who b. which c. where d. when

11. What is the name of the person ..... is setting next to you? 2022
a. who b. where c. which d. what

12. I see my friends in the park ..... we often play football. 2022
a. which b. that c. when d. where

13. This is the man ..... won the prize. 2022
a. which b. when c. who d. where

14. Thank you very much for you email ..... was very good. 2022
a. which b. who c. when d. where

15. The people ..... live next door are friendly. 2023
a. why b. who c. where d. which

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

16. October is the month ..... I was born.
a. who b. where c. which d. when

17. What is the title of the book ..... you are reading?
a. when b. who c. which d. where

18. A volunteer is a person ..... does a job without being paid for it.
a. which b. that c. when d. where

19. I saw Ahmed in the market ..... we often buy our food.
a. who b. that c. where d. when





20. Mr Hassan is the man ..... lives next door.
a. that b. where c. which d. when

21. Ten o'clock is the time ..... I go to bed every day.
a. when b. where c. which d. who

**(2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. The market is a place ..... (when) I often get lost! WB
2. The tourists ..... (what) visit Egypt always love the ancient temples. WB
3. That's the teacher ..... (which) teaches us maths. WB
4. A good friend is someone ..... (which) helps others. 2023
5. This is the house ..... (who) I live in. 2022
6. That's the bird ..... (where) sings in the morning. 2023

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

7. Aswan is the city ..... (when) there is the High Dam.
8. That's the man ..... (which) bought our old car.
9. This is the village ..... (when) my grandma was born.
10. The man ..... (where) wears a brown jacket is my uncle.

## Speaking

**Talking about charities** - التحدث عن الجمعيات الخيرية

- نسأل ونجيب عن الجمعيات الخيرية كالآتي:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - What charities do you know? ما الجمعيات الخيرية التى تعرفها؟ | - I know a charity which helps..... أعرف جمعية خيرية تساعد..... |
| - How do people help in them? كيف تساهم الناس فى مساعدتها؟ | - They donate money to them. إنهم يتبرعون لها بالمال. |
| - Why should charities get money? لماذا يجب أن تحصل الجمعيات الخيرية على المال؟ | - Charities give this money to people who need it. تعطي الجمعيات الخيرية هذا المال لمن يحتاجه. |
| - What are other ways to help charities? ما الطرق الأخرى التي بها نساعد الجمعيات الخيرية؟ | - We can volunteer for them. يمكننا العمل التطوعي لتلك الجمعيات. |



CamScanner

# General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Hind and Mariam are talking about charities.**

Hind : What do you think of charity work?

**Mariam:** 1 .....

Hind : Do you help in a charity.

**Mariam:** 2 .....

Hind : 3 .....?

**Mariam:** It's called the Red Crescent.

Hind : 4 .....?

**Mariam:** Yes, you can join it.

Hind : When can I start?

**Mariam:** 5 .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

1. He is ..... . He cannot use his leg in the way we can.
   a. healthy b. well c. disabled d. cruel
2. My grandparents used to have a/an ..... who helped them with the housework.
   a. actor b. servant c. doctor d. engineer
3. A ..... is the daughter of a king or queen. 2023 نص شهرين / تا
   a. princess b. servant c. beggar d. baker
4. To ..... means to give food to a person, group or an animal. 2023 شرق كفر الشيخ
   a. feed b. food c. feel d. read
5. A ..... is someone who works for no money to help people. 2022 الأقصر/أرمنت
   a. nurse b. volunteer c. teacher d. police office
6. Nowadays there are many ..... in most streets who ask people for money. 2023 العربية / طنطا
   a. beggars b. servants c. actors d. sellers
7. He is very ..... . He treats the cat badly. 2023 العربية/ السنطة
   a. kind b. nice c. good d. cruel
8. I ..... money and clothes to a charity that helps poor people.
   a. travel b. buy c. donate d. wore

### language

9. This is the club ..... I play football. 2022 الأزهر الشريف/ الأقصر
   a. which b. who c. where d. when





10. The books ..... he used to help me were his old schoolbooks. SB
    a. which b. when c. where d. who
11. Mr Osman has a son ..... is a teacher.
    a. where b. when c. which d. who
12. Mrs Sabri's the teacher ..... taught my sister. SB
    a. which b. who c. where d. when
13. This is the hospital ..... is near to my house. 2022
    a. where b. who c. which d. when
14. This is Mr Ali ..... teaches us social studies. 2022
    a. who b. when c. where d. which
15. The beach ..... the boys saw turtles was full of rubbish. 2022
    a. which b. when c. who d. where

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This is the old man ..... (which) I helped yesterday.
2. This is the museum ..... (when) we saw amazing statues. 2023 العربية / السنطة WB
3. The new car ..... (who) I bought is so expensive. 2022
4. This is the boy ..... (which) took my pen yesterday. 2023
5. The market is the place ..... (whose) I often get lost. 2023

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A story about a girl helping the poor"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

**يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:**

- What is the story about?
- What did the girl use to do?
- Why did the girl like to help the poor?
- What will happen if we help poor people?

**يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:**

- I read a story ..... who lived in a ..... .
- She used to ..... near her house.
- She sometimes ..... them some food and medicine.



CamScanner

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51-52 WB pages 106-107

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| donation | تبرع | share (d) | يتقاسم/يشارك |
| blog | مدونة على الانترنت | help (ed) | يساعد |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| canteen | مقصف (كانتين) المدرسة | the widest | الأعرض |
| street corner | ركن/ناصية الشارع | geography | مادة الجغرافيا |
| businesswomen | سيدة أعمال | nearly | تقريبًا |
| passport | جواز سفر | laboratory | معمل |
| social media | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى | pleased | مسرور |
| helpful | مفيد/نافع/متعاون | sunny | مشمس |
| The Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge | كوبرى محور روض الفرج | snow (ed) | تمطر ثلج |

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| as possible | قدر المستطاع | try to | يحاول ان |
| give me a smile | يعطينى ابتسامة | work for | يعمل لصالح |
| make suggestions | يقدم اقتراحات | In my opinion | فى رأيى |
| make a decision | يتخذ قرار | on social media | على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى |
| make someone happy | يجعل شخص سعيد | go back to | يعود إلى |
| put ... in order | يرتب ... | on the way home | فى الطريق للمنزل |
| give away | يمنح/يهب | at first | فى البداية |
| put a smile on someone's face | يرسم بسمة على وجه شخص ما | help with | يساعد فى |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| let | يدع - يسمح | let | let |
| swim | يسبح | swam | swum |





| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| usual | معتاد | common | unusual | غير معتاد |
| possible | ممكن | likely | impossible | مستحيل |
| pleased | مسرور | happy | unhappy / sad | حزين |

## Language Notes

### 1) Large numbers

- hundred مائة - thousand ألف - million مليون

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| - 1,500 | = one thousand, five hundred | ألف وخمسمائة |
| - 10,300 | = ten thousand, three hundred | عشرة ألاف وثلاثمائة |
| - 100,000 | = one hundred thousand | مائة ألف |
| - 1,000,000 | = one million | مليون |
| - 1,600,000 | = one million, six hundred thousand | مليون وستمائة ألف |

### 2) decide

- decide to + inf. يقرر ان...

Ex. I decided to travel to London next week.

- decide + that + فاعل + verb فعل يقرر ان...

Ex. I decided that I should study hard.

### 3) in the end - at the end of

- in the end = finally فى النهاية

Ex. I worked hard, and in the end, I succeeded.

Ex. We decided to travel to London in the end.

- at the end of .... فى نهاية ...

Ex. The library is at the end of the corridor.

### 4) sequencers كلمات التسلسل

• هي كلمات نستخدمها لترتيب حديثنا وهي كالآتي:

first أولاً → secondly ثانيًا → next التالي →
after that بعد ذلك → then ثم/بعد ذلك → finally أخيراً



CamScanner

هناك صيغ عديدة للتعبير عن الاقتراح

## ⑤ suggestion الاقتراح

I suggest..
- اسم noun trainers for the trip.
- v-ing staying at home this night
- جملة sentence we go on a boat trip.
- (that) + فاعل + inf + مصدر الفعل that you come with us.

- That's why I suggest that they share the money. (SB page 51)

- وردت الجملة التالية في امتحان محافظة القليوبية/بنها ٢٠٢٣ -

- I suggest that she ..... to the beach.
a. goes b. has gone c. is going d. go

Answer d. go

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Ramy ..... buy a new car next year.
a. decided to b. decided c. decided that d. decision
2. The thieves were able to escape. ..... the end, they were arrested.
a. At b. On c. In d. Of
3. Magid suggested ..... on a boat trip.
a. to go b. going c. to going d. go

## Reading

SB Page (51)

استمع إلى النصوص

**Large charity donation**[1]

Fareeda Rashwan, age 32, has donated two million pounds to charities in the city. The businesswoman[2] says that she wants the charities to use the money to help people who need it. The charities can decide to share[3] the money between them or give all the money to one charity. The important[4] thing is to help as many people as possible[5].



١- تبرع
٢- سيدة أعمال
٣- تتقاسم
٤- هام
٥- قدر المستطاع





SB Page (52)

### HASSAN'S BLOG

***Random Acts of Kindness Project***



Our class decided to try to do one act of kindness every day for three days. This is what I did.

First, on Monday, I bought my grandmother some of her favourite cakes at the baker's on the way home from school. She was surprised[1], but very happy! After that, on Tuesday, I let some younger students go into the canteen[2] in front of me. Finally, on Wednesday, I took a sandwich and a cold drink to the old man who often sits on our street corner[3]. He gave me a big smile. In my opinion[4], doing random acts of kindness is fantastic. I don't want to stop!

١- مندهشة
٢- مقصف (كانتين)
٣- ركن/زاوية
٤- في رأيي

SB Page (53)

I share a bedroom with my sister and we are sometimes quite messy, so we usually tidy up every evening before we go to bed. We put away all our clothes and books. Twice a week, my brother and I take out the rubbish. We do it together because the bins are quite heavy. My parents donate money to a charity which helps a local school for disabled people. We think it is important to help people in the community.

SB Page (53)

**Nasser** : Do you have to study this evening, Omar?
**Omar** : Yes, I do. I have a geography test tomorrow.
**Nasser** : What about your brother? Does he have to study, too?
**Omar** : No, he doesn't, but he has to tidy up his bedroom: it's really messy!
**Nasser** : It's nearly the end of break. Where do we have to go for the next lesson?
**Omar** : The laboratory! We've got science.



CamScanner

# Audioscript

SB Page (51)

**Amal** : I think that the charities should share the money between them and help lots of different people.

**Leila** : I'm not sure, Amal .... I think it would be better[1] if one charity gets all the money and can do something big and important.

**Amal** : OK, but which charity then?

**Leila** : What about[2] a charity that helps children... or old people?

**Amal** : I agree that it's very important to help children, but I also think it's important to look after old people. That's why I suggest that they share the money.

**Leila** : I see what you mean[3]. OK, they should share the money between two or three important charities.

١- من الأفضل
٢- ماذا عن
٣- فهمت ما تقصد

WB Page (106)

**Malak** : I feel that famous people should work for a charity at the weekend[1].

**Rawia** : I'm not sure. Some of them work very hard. I think it would be better if they gave some money to a charity. They don't need to work for a charity.

**Malak** : I agree that it's important for them to donate money, but I also think it's important to work for the charily, too.

**Rawia** : OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.

**Malak** : I see what you mean. Perhaps[2] they can help her for a day or two in their holidays.

**Rawia** : Good idea.

١- في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
٢- ربما





WB Page (107)

## My helpful day



On Saturday, I decided that I wanted to help everyone in my family.

First[1], I made my mother breakfast. She was surprised because she usually makes it! Secondly[2], I helped my sister with her homework. She always does it after breakfast!

After that[3], I took my grandfather a cup of tea in bed. He likes to get up late on a Saturday.

Then[4] I played football in the park with my little brother. He loves football. Finally[5], I helped my dad with the jobs that he likes to do in the house. I feel that I made all my family happy!

١- أولاً
٢- ثانياً
٣- بعد ذلك
٤- ثم
٥- أخيراً

# Videoscript

SB Page (51)

There are many charities in Egypt that can help people.

The Alhassan Foundation[1] helps disabled people.They give wheelchairs to people who cannot walk. The charity helps disabled people to find jobs. It also teaches people about how disabled people have to live.

Another charity is the Egyptian Food Bank[2] which gives food to poor people and to people who have lost their jobs.

Every year, people donate more than 100 million Egyptian pounds to this charity. They don't have to do this, but they do it because they want to help.

People can also donate food, such as pasta, rice, meat and fruit, or they can take boxes of food to people in their community.

The Red Crescent[3] is one of the most important charities in the world.

A lot of doctors and nurses volunteer[4] for this charity. They treat[5] ill and injured[6] people when there is a natural disaster[7].

The Red Crescent also helps when the weather is very bad. In 2020, there was a lot of rain in some parts of the country. Too much water caused a lot of damage[8] and many people needed help.

The Red Crescent took medicine and food to these people.

Everybody should donate to a charity if they can. Or perhaps you could volunteer to help?

١- مؤسسة
٢- بنك الطعام المصرى
٣- الهلال الأحمر
٤- يتطوع لـ
٥- يعالج
٦- مصاب
٧- كارثة طبيعية
٨- تلف



CamScanner

# Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

## SB, WB & Exams

1. The Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge is the ..... bridge in the world. WB
   a. tallest b. fattest c. widest d. youngest
2. I see Ahmed's father ..... my way to school every day. العربية / طنطا 2023
   a. for b. at c. in d. on
3. I always help my dad ..... the jobs that he likes to do in the house. العربية / زهتى 2022
   a. with b. at c. to d. for

## Bit by Bit Exercises

4. Farid is kind, he sometimes ..... his sandwiches with his friends.
   a. loses b. sells c. shares d. decides
5. I tried many times and ..... I solved the maths problem.
   a. loudly b. silly c. sadly d. finally
6. The rich man decided to give ..... some money to a charity.
   a. up b. way c. off d. away
7. The rich man gave the charity a large ..... to build a hospital.
   a. donation b. conversation c. nation d. station
8. Sally always shows interesting things on her .....
   a. canteen b. laboratory c. passport d. blog
9. I like the T-shirt, but I can't ..... a decision about the colour.
   a. put b. make c. do d. play
10. First, I did my homework, then I watched TV. ..... that I went to bed.
    a. After b. Next c. And d. Step
11. Our school ..... has a lot of tasty food.
    a. corner b. market c. canteen d. subject
12. I think that famous people should work ..... a charity.
    a. as b. for c. by d. back
13. To make a cup of tea, ..... boil some water.
    a. finally b. first c. last d. after that
14. I'm happy to ..... a smile on my brother's face.
    a. take b. make c. put d. buy
15. Ihab suggests that they ..... fishing tomorrow.
    a. go b. goes c. to go d. going





# Speaking

## 1) Making suggestions

عمل اقتراحات

- لعمل اقتراحات يمكن أن تقول:

| Suggestion | Response |
|---|---|
| - I think that ..... should<br>اعتقد أن ..... يجب | - I think it would be better if .....<br>اعتقد أنه سيكون من الأفضل لو ..... |
| Ex. I think that the money should go to charities. | Ex. I think it would be better if you give the money to charities. |

## 2) Giving opinion

إبداء الرأى

- لإبداء الرأى نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

| Opinion | Response |
|---|---|
| - In my opinion, .....<br>فى رأيى، ..... | - I'm not sure.....<br>لست متأكدًا ..... |
| - I see what you mean.<br>أفهم ما تقصد. | - but I also think it's important to ....<br>لكن أعتقد أنه من المهم أيضًا أن ..... |
| - I agree that it's very important to ..<br>أتفق أنه مهم جدًا أن ..... | - Good idea.<br>فكرة رائعة. |

# General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

**1) Complete the following dialogue:**

**Sandy and Reham are giving opinions about charities.**

**Sandy** : Hi! Reham. What do you think of charity work?

**Reham** : ① .....

**Sandy** : Do you think rich people should help charities?

**Reham** : ② .....

**Sandy** : ③ ..... ?

**Reham** : Yes, I think it would be better if everyone helps.

**Sandy** : ④ ..... ?

**Reham** : Some people can give money; others can volunteer to work there.

**Sandy** : Do you think we can do that?

**Reham** : ⑤ .....



CamScanner

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**Vocabulary**

1. I write my diary online on my ..... .
   a. lamp b. log c. chair d. blog
2. I buy chips from the ..... at my school every day.
   a. canteen b. kitchen c. market d. bank
3. My friend forgot his book so I ..... my book with him.
   a. lost b. sold c. shared d. decided
4. ..... my opinion, English is the most important language.
   a. On b. In c. For d. By
5. ..... the way home, I saw a terrible accident.
   a. At b. For c. On d. In
6. The teacher asked me to do my homework as quickly ..... possible.
   a. so b. as c. such d. that
7. The opposite of "usual" is ..... .
   a. usually b. common c. usable d. unusual
8. The manager of the company decided ..... us presents.
   a. giving b. give c. to give d. to giving
9. They got married ..... the end of the film.
   a. at b. on c. in d. of
10. I usually communicate with my friends ..... social media.
    a. over b. on c. in d. at



# Unit 5 Review

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| random | عشوائى (غير مقصود) | blog | مدونة على الانترنت | smile (n) | ابتسامة |
| stranger | شخص غريب | cruel | قاسى | feed (fed) (fed) | يُطعم |
| fantastic | رائع | servant | خادمة/ خادم | behave (d) | يتصرف |
| kindness | طيبة/عطف | princess | أميرة | share (d) | يتقاسم/يشارك |
| bin | سلة مهملات | beggar | متسول | donate (d) | يتبرع |
| lift | مصعد (أسانسير) | volunteer | متطوع | pick up (ed) | يلتقط |
| messy | فوضوى (غير منظم) | owner | المالك | help (ed) | يساعد |
| donation | تبرع | community | مجتمع محلى (صغير) | | |
| disabled | معاق | boarding school | مدرسة داخلية | | |
| the disabled | متحدي الإعاقة | | | | |

### Jobs in the house

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cooking | الطهى | tidying up | التنسيق/الترتيب |
| looking after | الاعتناء بـ | washing up | غسل الأوانى |
| putting away the clothes | وضع الملابس فى مكانها المعتاد | taking out the rubbish | إخراج القمامة |

## Language

### 1 have to / don't have to, has to / doesn't have to

• للتعبير عن (الالزام/الضرورة) فى المضارع (أى قواعد معينة من الضرورى أن نتبعها ولا خيار أمامنا) نستخدم:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + have to
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + has to
→ + inf. مصدر الفعل .. يجب أن

Ex. I have to be quiet at the library.

• للتعبير عن (عدم الالزام) فى المضارع (أشياء ليس من الضرورى أن نفعلها) نستخدم:

I/We/You/They/ اسم جمع + don't have to
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد + doesn't have to
→ + inf. مصدر الفعل .. ليس من الضرورى أن

Ex. Tamer doesn't have to walk to school. He has got a bike.



CamScanner

## ② should / shouldn't

للنصيحة بفعل شيء نستخدم (should)

Ex. We should always do acts of kindness.

للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء نستخدم should not (shouldn't)

Ex. We shouldn't watch TV all day.

## ③ Relative clauses / pronouns

تستخدم (عبارات / ضمائر الوصل) لتخبرنا عن الاسم الذى نتكلم عنه، وقد يكون هذا الاسم (شخص/ شيء/حيوان/مكان/زمان).

**who (that) → for people**

Ex. Omar is an architect. He designs buildings.
= Omar is the architect who/ that designs buildings.

**which (that) → for things/ animals**

Ex. That's a schoolbag. It has many books.
= That's the schoolbag which/ that has many books.

**where → for places**

Ex. This is a cinema. I always see movies there.
= This is the cinema where I always see movie.

**when → for time**

Ex. This month is July. I was born in July.
= July is the month when I was born.

## Speaking

### ① A discussion about jobs in the house

- مناقشة عن القيام بمهام فى المنزل

نسأل ونجيب عن القيام بمهام فى المنزل كالآتى:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Do you help in your house? | - Yes, I do.<br>- No, I don't |
| - What sort of jobs do you have to do at home? | - I have to tidy up my room, wash up... etc. |





### ② Discussing random acts of kindness

- مناقشة أعمال الخير غير المخطط لها

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness? Why? | - Yes, I think so because people should always help each other. |

### ③ Talking about charities

- التحدث عن الجمعيات الخيرية

- نسأل ونجيب عن الجمعيات الخيرية كالآتى:

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| - What charities do you know? | - I know a charity which helps..... |
| - How do people help in them? | - They donate money to them. |

### ④ Making suggestions

- عمل اقتراحات

| Suggestion | Response |
|---|---|
| - I think that ..... should | - I think it would be better if ..... |

### ⑤ Giving opinion

- ابداء الرأي

| Opinion | Response |
|---|---|
| - In my opinion, ..... | - I'm not sure..... |
| - I see what you mean. | - but I also think it's important to .... |
| - I agree that it's very important to .. | - Good idea. |



CamScanner

# General Exercises on Unit 5

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

SB

**Amal and Malak are talking about what they have to do at home.**

Amal : Hi! Malak. What housework do you do at home?
Malak : a .....
Amal : Do you help your mother with the washing up?
Malak : b .....?
Amal : c .....
Malak : My sister helps to clean the table after meals.
Amal : d .....?
Malak : I also help my mother clean the kitchen.
Amal : I think you are very helpful.
Malak : e .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

### Vocabulary

SB

1. Hala has to put ..... her toys
   a. up b. out c. away d. on

SB

2. Samir helps to clean beaches and ..... rubbish.
   a. tidies up b. picks up c. washes up d. buys

SB

3. Nader and his brother have to ..... ready for school.
   a. make b. get c. let d. eat

SB

4. What ..... acts of kindness should you do next week?
   a. cruel b. ugly c. bad d. random

5. Those children are .....; they always hurt their pets.
   a. cruel b. pretty c. disabled d. delicious

6. Soha joined a ..... school. She comes home every weekend.
   a. spending b. boarding c. standing d. building

SB

7. People donate money to the charity and they help to ..... the animals.
   a. eat b. kill c. feed d. hit

8. You should ..... your bag ready for school at night.
   a. add b. make c. bring d. get

القاهرة / المعادي 2023

### Language

9. That's the horse ..... won the race.
   a. which b. who c. where d. when





10. The person ..... I love most is my mother.
    a. which b. when c. who d. where

SB

11. The café ..... I meet my friends sells delicious ice cream.
    a. when b. where c. which d. who

12. These are the photos ..... I took at the zoo last week.
    a. when b. who c. which d. where

SB

13. You left the bag ..... you bought at the weekend at my house!
    a. where b. which c. who d. when

14. All workers ..... wear uniforms inside the factory.
    a. has to b. hasn't c. have to d. doesn't have to

15. Children ..... eat a lot of sweets.
    a. shouldn't b. have to c. should d. has to

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Students shouldn't ..... (forgot) how it feels when they start school. SB
2. You ..... (shouldn't) study hard to pass the exam.
3. We bought a flat ..... (who) is near our school.
4. That's the restaurant ..... (when) we had lunch yesterday.

## 4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Random acts of kindness"

(اجتاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness? Why?
- What would you like to do on Random Acts of Kindness Day?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'd like to do random acts of kindness.
- I will buy ..... for my mother.
- I will donate money .....
- I will help an old woman.....



CamScanner

# Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات انشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

### 1- School rules (Lessons 1 & 2)

**To** : george(ina)55@yahoo.com
**From** : fadi(a)666@gmail.com
**Subject** : My school rules

Dear George(ina),

How are you? There are some school rules that I have to follow. At school, I have to arrive on time. I have to listen to my teacher. I don't have to answer all the questions. I have to wear the school uniform. I don't have to play at break. I have to behave well. In the library, I have to keep quiet. I have to give the books back on time. I have to put away the books after I read them. I mustn't eat at the library.

Yours,

Fadi(a)

### 2- A short story about a girl helping the poor (Lessons 3 & 4)

I read a story about a girl. She lived in a small village. She used to help some old people. She sometimes bought them food, medicine and clothes. Although the girl wasn't rich, she thought of other people. Helping poor people can make the community more useful. So, if we all think like that girl, we will have a happy life.

### 3- Random acts of kindness (General Exercises)

I decided to do one act of kindness every day. I bought my mother flowers. I gave my seat to an old man on the bus. I donated money and clothes to a charity. My friend Hossam did some acts of kindness, too. He gave money to a beggar. He gave directions to a stranger. He helped an old woman cross a street.

### 4- Jobs in the house (Al Azhar)

I help my mother with the kitchen work. Sometimes, I put away things. I often help my dad with the garden plants. I help my brother with his maths homework. I usually help my sister with her science lessons.

### 5- How I can help people in my community (Test)

I can do many acts of kindness in my community. I can work as a volunteer in a charity. I can pick up rubbish. I can help my neighbours do the shopping. I can donate things and money to a charity. I can help my old neighbours. I can keep the street clean. This helps the street cleaners so much. I can help beggars who are hungry. I have to be helpful in my community.





# Al Azhar Test

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker works for a _____ .
   a. school b. factory c. charity d. hospital
2. This work makes the speaker _____ .
   a. tired b. sad c. angry d. happy

## B Language Functions

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1. Amina : I think we should do acts of kindness.
   Nagwa : ----------.
2. Ammar : ----------?
   Maher : Yes, I tidy up my bedroom.

## D Usage

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Ola's mother was angry when she found her room _____
   a. messy b. tidy c. clean d. good
2. You _____ listen to what your parents say.
   a. don't have to b. have to c. has to d. doesn't have to
3. We all should help _____ .
   a. disabled b. the disabled c. unable d. able
4. Naguib Mahfouz was the writer _____ won the Nable Prize.
   a. who b. when c. which d. whose
5. All charities depend on _____ .of money.
   a. opinions b. donations c. decorations d. decisions
6. **A :** _____ I learn English to get a job. **B:** Yes, you should.
   a. Have b. Am c. Should d. Does



CamScanner

## C Reading Comprehension

**4 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Charity is one of the best things that a person can do in their life. For some people, the true meaning of life is the joy of giving. They enjoy doing charity work. They love to help the poor. Today, the world is in greater need of charity than ever. People should help everyone in their area, such as people with illnesses, or who don't work. If all rich people give donation of money, food and clothes to help the poor, then the world will be better.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is charity?

.....

2. What do some people love to do?

.....

3. What can rich people donate to charities?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "They" refers to .....
   a. charities b. people c. the rich d. the poor
5. If all rich people donate to charities, the world will become .....
   a. better b. fatter c. faster d. bigger

## E Writing

**5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"Jobs in the house" [مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار]

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Are you helpful in the house?
- How do you help in your house?
- What jobs can you do in your house?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- In my house, I help my mother ..... - I put away .....
- I help my dad with ..... - I help my brother/ sister with .....



# Unit 5 TEST

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. One day, Eman had some .....
   a. money b. pens c. books d. rulers
2. She went to the baker's to buy some .....
   a. buns b. cakes c. bread d. fruit
3. When Eman came out, she saw a .....
   a. doctor b. farmer c. vet d. beggar
4. She gave the person ..... of her cakes.
   a. many b. few c. most d. little

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Ahmed is asking Ashraf about the school project.**

Ahmad : What is this week's school project about?

Ashraf : ❶ .....

Ahmad How can we encourage our friends to clean the school?

Ashraf : ❷ .....

Ahmad : ❸ .....?

Ashraf : We can start a competition for the cleanest class.

Ahmad : ❹ .....?

Ashraf : The headteacher and some other teachers will help us.

Ahmad : It's a great project. I hope to do it well.

Ashraf : ❺ .....



CamScanner

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

The air around the earth contains different gases. One of these is carbon dioxide. Although it is a natural gas, it can also be caused by pollution. Pollution from cars and factories produces carbon dioxide. This is a problem. If there is too much carbon dioxide in the air, the temperature on the earth will increase. If the earth gets hotter, the ice in the Arctic and Antarctica will melt quickly. The sea will get higher and this will cause floods.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What does the air around the earth contain?

.....

2. What is carbon dioxide?

.....

3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. If the earth gets hotter, the ice in the Arctic will .....
   a. freeze b. melt c. cool d. rain
5. If the seas get higher, they may cause.....
   a. droughts b. earthquakes c. volcanoes d. floods
6. ..... can be caused by pollution.
   a. Oxygen b. Carbon dioxide c. Nitrogen d. Hydrogen

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My family has moved to a new house and luckily our new ..... are nice.
   a. neighbours b. relatives c. friends d. teachers
2. There is an important test tomorrow, so you ..... play video games. SB
   a should b. have to c. has to d. shouldn't
3. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous, so you ..... do what your teachers tell you. WB
   a. don't have to b. have to c. shouldn't d. can't
4. A ..... is the daughter of a king or queen. WB
   a prince b. beggar c. princess d. farmer
5. The place ..... I lost my watch was the garden. SB
   a when b. who c. that d. where





6. Sorry the place is so ....., I haven't had time to tidy it up.
   a. clean b. tidy c. messy d. nice
7. Don't be ..... to animals.
   a. careful b. cruel c. real d. messy
8. What is the name of a charity which you would like to ..... money to? WB
   a. donate b. steal c. burn d. sell
9. A ..... takes you to the top of a building without using the stairs. WB
   a. left b. lift c. gift d. ladder
10. This kind woman always has a ..... on her face.
    a. file b. mile c. smile d. tail

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. I love the trainers..... (who) are blue and red. WB
2. She ..... (should) carry heavy things. She is tired.
3. This is the company ..... (when) I worked for last year.
4. You ..... (should) run if your legs hurt. WB

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"How you can help people in your community"

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What can you do to people in your community?
- How can you help for a charity?
- What can you do to help your community?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

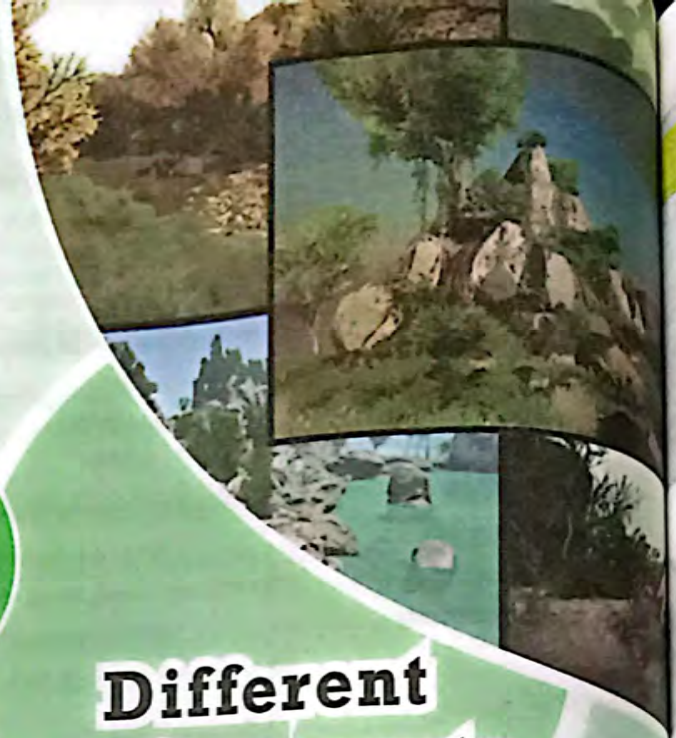
- I can work as a volunteer in .....
- I can help the neighbours .....
- I can donate things .....



CamScanner

Prep 2

New Hello!



# UNIT 6

# Different environments

## Objectives

**Reading:**
A presentation about climate change graphs; city profiles; a newspaper report

**Writing:**
A profile about where you live; a paragraph on how to use less water; a short report for a school newspaper; a presentation about the climate

**Listening:**
Radio news reports; a podcast about tourism

**Speaking:**
Solving environmental problems; Suggesting solutions to a problem

**Language:**
(not) as + adjective + as; Present simple passive

**Life Skills:**
Negotiating; Problem-solving

**Values:**
Coexistence values

**Issues:**
Environmental and developmental issues

SB / WB Answers جميع أسئلة كتاب الطالب والتدريبات مجاب عنها في آخر الكتاب



## Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 54-57 WB pages 109-110

### Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| air pollution | تلوث الهواء | x-axis | محور السينات |
| water pollution | تلوث المياه | y-axis | محور الصادات |
| drought | جفاف | comfortable | مريح |
| flood | فيضان | green | صديق البيئة |
| rubbish | قمامة | environment | البيئة |
| polluted | مُلوث | climate change | تغير المناخ |
| line graph | رسم بياني خطي | melt (ed) | يذوب - ذوّب - ينصهر |
| bar chart | رسم بياني بالأعمدة | | |

### Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fires | حرائق | planet | كوكب |
| electric train / bus | قطار / أتوبيس كهربائي | temperature | درجة الحرارة |
| presentation | عرض تقديمي | serious | خطير/ جاد |
| user | مستخدم | recycling | إعادة التدوير |
| recently | حديثًا / مؤخرًا | cause (n) (d) | سبب/ يسبب |
| relaxing | مريح للأعصاب | continue (d) | يواصل/يستمر |
| fuel | وقود | warn (ed) | يحذر |
| volunteer | متطوع | | |

### Continents, Countries, Cities & Mountains

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Australia | قارة استراليا | Saudi Arabia | المملكة العربية السعودية |
| Europe | قارة أوروبا | Mount Kenya | جبل كينيا |
| Africa | قارة أفريقيا | Jabal Mousa | جبل موسى |
| Iraq | دولة العراق | Mount Kilimanjaro | جبل كلمنجارو |
| Jordan | دولة الأردن | Mount Catherine | جبل سانت كاترين |



CamScanner

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| write in English | يكتب باللغة الإنجليزية | get smaller | يصبح أصغر |
| as much as | كثير مثل | report for | يكتب تقرير لـ |
| changing world | العالم المتغير | careful about | حريص بشأن |
| green forms of transport | وسائل المواصلات صديقة البيئة | know about | يعرف عن |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| show | يظهر / يبين | showed | shown |
| become | يصبح | became | become |
| speak | يتحدث | spoke | spoken |

| Word | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|
| usual | معتاد | normal | unusual غير معتاد |
| dry | جاف | - | wet ممطر / مبتل |
| cheap | رخيص | inexpensive | expensive غالي الثمن |
| clean | نظيف | pure | dirty متسخ |

## Definitions

**air pollution** تلوث الهواء — dirt and dangerous chemicals(1) in the air, often from traffic(2)

**axis (x and y)** محور (السينات والصادات) — the lines(3) that have numbers / information(4) on it on a graph (x at the bottom and y at the side)

**bar chart** رسم بياني بالأعمدة — a diagram(5) or picture that uses bars (rectangles) of different colours and sizes to show different amounts

**climate change** تغير المناخ — changes in the Earth's weather caused by things that humans(6) are doing

**drought** جفاف — when there is no rain for a long time and everything is very dry

**flood** فيضان — a large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before

١- مواد كيميائية
٢- حركة المرور
٣- خطوط
٤- معلومات
٥- رسم بياني
٦- البشر





**green** صديق للبيئة — good for the environment

**line graph** رسم بياني خطي — a diagram or picture that uses lines to show how different pieces of information are related to(7) each other

**melt** يذوب / يُذيب / ينصهر — change from ice to water

**polluted** مُلوث — made dirty(8) or dangerous by chemicals or other dirty things

**serious** خطير — bad or dangerous enough to make you worried

٧- متعلق بـ
٨- متسخ

## Language Notes

### 1) electricity - electric - electronic

- **electricity** كهرباء
  Ex. My car doesn't use fuel. It runs on electricity.
- **electric** كهربي (يعمل بالكهرباء)
  Ex. We will drive electric cars in the future..
- **electronic** إلكتروني
  Ex. Most kids love electronic games.

### 2) climate - weather

- **climate** المناخ (حالة الجو الدائمة في مكان ما)
  Ex. Most tourists like to visit Egypt where the climate is warm.
- **weather** الطقس (حالة الجو المؤقتة في مكان ما)
  Ex. What is the weather like today in Egypt?
  - It's cold and rainy.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. _____ cars are good for the environment.
   a. Electricity b. Electric c. Electronic d. Electrician
2. Our city has a warm _____.
   a. drought b. flood c. graph d. climate



CamScanner

# Audioscript SB Page (55)

استمع إلى النصوص



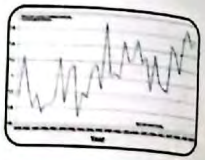
**Girl** : Hello, this is Jomana reporting[1] for *Student Radio in Cairo*. Recently[2], volunteers who were working to clean the River Nile say they are finding more a canal rubbish in the water. They say the canal is dirtier[3] and more polluted[4] than ever before. They are warning[5] people who live in the city to be more careful about where they put their rubbish to try to help the canal become cleaner[6].

**Boy** : This is Karim reporting from Alexandria for *Student FM*. Today, our city started using new electric[7] buses. The buses will help Alexandria be cleaner and greener. The buses will mean there is less air pollution[8] in the city, so they are greener[9] and they are also cheaper to run. I spoke to some bus users who said the new buses were quieter than the old buses and also the seats were more comfortable[10].

١- يقدم تقرير
٢- مؤخرًا
٣- أكثر إتساخًا
٤- أكثر تلوثًا
٥- يحذر
٦- أكثر نظافة
٧- كهربائى
٨- تلوث الهواء
٩- صديق للبيئة
١٠- مريح

# Reading SB Page (56)

## A changing world



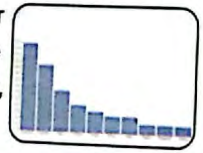
• Today's presentation is about climate change. This means our planet[1] is changing. Here are two places that are different now.

### Australia

In this line graph[2], the x-axis[3] shows the year and the y-axis[4] shows the change in temperature[5]. You can see that the climate in Australia is becoming hotter and drier. More droughts[6]* mean worse fires[7] than ever before. Climate change[8] means Australia is a more dangerous place to live.

### Mount Kilimanjaro

This bar chart[9] shows that warmer and drier weather is melting[10] the ice on top of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. You can see that the area of ice is much smaller than 140 years ago. The good news is that the ice is not melting as fast as before. However, the ice is continuing[11] to get smaller.



١- كوكب
٢- رسم بيانى خطى
٣- محور السينات
٤- محور الصادات
٥- درجة الحرارة
٦- جفاف
٧- حرائق
٨- تغير المناخ
٩- رسم بيانى بالأعمدة
١٠- يُذيب
١١- يواصل/يستمر

**Say it correctly**

* drought لا تنطق الحروف (gh) فى هذه الكلمة





# Exercises on Vocabulary

## 1 Complete the following dialogue:

الحلبا / مطاى 2023

**Ayman is asking Mr Hossam about climate change.**

**Ayman** : Excuse me, Mr Hossam. Can I ask you some questions?

**Mr Hossam** : ① .....

**Ayman** : ② .....?

**Mr Hossam** : Oh, good! First of all we shouldn't throw rubbish everywhere.

**Ayman** : ③ ..... Is that right?

**Mr Hossam** : Yes. Rubbish may make the rivers and canals polluted, too.

**Ayman** : ④ .....?

**Mr Hossam** : We can use green forms of transport to stop pollution.

**Ayman** : Thank you very much.

**Mr Hossam** : ⑤ .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. Please take your ..... home; do not leave it in the park. WB
   a. fuel b. drought c. rubbish d. flood
2. Not many fish live in the river because it is very ..... . WB
   a. tasty b. disabled c. fantastic d. polluted
3. Bikes are a ..... form of transport because they use no fuel. WB
   a. white b. green c. blue d. red
4. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a/an ..... .

   مطروح / الحمام 2023 WB
   a. flood b. volcano c. earthquake d. drought
5. Ali is a ..... in a hospital. He works for no money to help people.

   قنا / نقادة 2023
   a. volunteer b. patient c. coach d. pilot



CamScanner

توجد بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هى:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| many | كثير (اسم يعد) | more than | the most |
| few | قليل (اسم يعد) | fewer than | the fewest |
| much | كثير (اسم يعد) | more than | the most |
| little | قليل (اسم يعد) | less than | the least |
| good | جيد | better than | the best |
| bad | سيء | worse than | the worst |
| far | بعيد | farther / further than | the farthest / furthest |

Ex. Ahmed has books as many as Osman has.
Ex. Mona makes money as much as Amal does.
Ex. The weather today is worse than it was yesterday.

- للتعبير عن تساوى شخصين / شيئين فى نفس الصفة نستخدم:

اسم + be + as + صفة + as + اسم

Ex. Droughts are as serious as floods.

- للتعبير عن عدم تساوى شخصين / شيئين فى نفس الصفة نستخدم

اسم + be + not as + صفة + as + اسم

Ex. Australia is not as hot as Africa.

- عند التعبير عن (عدم) التساوى بين فعلين نستخدم:

فعل + فاعل + as + حال + (not) as + فعل

Ex. Ahmed plays the piano as beautifully as he plays the flute.
Ex. She doesn't speak English as carefully as she writes it.

### تكوين المقارنة / التفضيل

large → larger close → closer

- يضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ e

- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ حرف ساكن + y تحول y إلى i نضيف er أو est:

noisy → noisier than → the noisiest / busy → busier than → the busiest

- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن بسبقه حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الأخير

big → bigger than → the biggest / thin → thinner than → the thinnest





**Notes**

- من الممكن أن نستغنى عن than عند المقارنة وتفهم من المعنى:

Ex. Mona is clever but Habiba is cleverer (than her).

## Exercises on Language

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

SB, WB & Exams

1. I think that air pollution is as serious _____ water pollution. SB
   a. just b. as c. too d. also
2. Bikes are _____ than cars. SB
   a. green b. greenest c. greener d. more green
3. The volunteers want to make the canal _____. SB
   a. cleaner b. more clean c. cleanest d. most clean
4. Mount Kenya is not _____ as Mount Kilimanjaro. SB
   a. higher b. highest c. more high d. as high
5. The electric buses in Alexandria cause _____ air pollution. SB
   a. less b. tallest c. least d. many
6. Recycling is _____ as using less electricity for the environment. SB
   a. more important b. less important c. not important d. as important
7. Europe is not as _____ as Australia. SB
   a. dry b. drier c. driest d. less dry
8. The pollution in the countryside is not as _____ as the pollution in cities. SB
   a. worse b. bad c. worst d. most bad
9. Seats on the new buses are more comfortable _____ the old buses. SB
   a. then b. that c. there d. than
10. A train is not as fast _____ a plane. WB
    a. so b. too c. as d. just



CamScanner

11. Saudi Arabia is not ..... as Jordan. WB
a. wetter b. as wet c. wettest d. more wet

12. Nessma writes in English as ..... as she speaks it. WB
a. carefully b. more careful c. most careful d. careful

13. The drought this year is not as ..... as it was last year. WB
a. more dangerous b. less dangerous c. dangerous d. dangerously

14. This book is bad, but the other book is ..... . الجيزة/شرق طنطا 2023
a. worse b. more worse c. badly d. worst

15. France is not as ..... as South Africa. الجيزة/ مبتدأة الفاطر 2023
a. hotter b. hottest c. the hottest d. hot

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

16. The box is not as..... as the chair.
a. heavy b. heavier c. heaviest d. more heavy

17. The canal is ..... polluted than it was before.
a. most b. more c. little d. few

18. There weren't people as ..... as I expected.
a. much b. fewest c. many d. little

19. Our team didn't play as ..... as they usually did.
a. good b. better c. best d. well

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

**SB, WB & Exams**

1. Mount Catherine is a ..... (high) mountain than Jabal Mousa. WB
2. Tamer likes reading as ..... (many) as he likes playing computer games. WB
3. The football players are not playing as ..... (good) as they did last week. WB
4. I think that the river is more polluted ..... (then) it was last year. WB
5. Which is ..... (more far) to walk to, the park or the museum? WB
6. Trains are ..... (comfortable) than cars. الجيزة/ مبتدأة الفاطر 2023 / الثانوية - دفعة شكر 2022





7. Australia is not ..... (hot as) Africa.
8. Zeinab is ..... (good) than Sandy at maths. اسيوط / منفلوط 2023 اسيوط / منفلوط 2023

**Bit by Bit Exercises**

9. The city isn't ..... (quiet) as the countryside.
10. The exam was ..... (easy) than I expected.
11. Planes are ..... (fast) than trains.
12. This car is ..... (attractive) than that car.
13. Heba is ..... (short) than Sama.
14. The place which I live in is very ..... (quietly).
15. English is ..... (most) interesting than math.
16. Alexandria is ..... (big) than Helwan.

## General Exercises on Lessons 1 & 2

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Mustafa is talking to Mona about the city and the countryside.**

Mustafa : Do you like the city or the countryside?
Mona : ① .....
Mustafa : ② .....?
Mona : Because the countryside is quieter than the city.
Mustafa : ③ .....?
Mona : Yes, the city is more interesting than the countryside.
Mustafa : What can you do in the countryside?
Mona : ④ .....
Mustafa : Which is more attractive: the countryside or the city?
Mona : ⑤ .....!

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**Vocabulary**

1. He worked as a/an ..... for a charity that helps disabled people.
a. farmer b. actor c. volunteer d. tourist



CamScanner

2. Climate ..... means it's getting warmer around the world.
a. change b. charge c. challenge d. stage

3. You should not throw ..... in the street.
a. flood b. rubbish c. drought d. earthquake

4. The smoke from factories and cars cause air .....
a. lungs b. balloon c. population d. pollution

5. Many rivers and lakes are seriously .....
a. called b. donated c. polluted d. visited

6. The electric bus is ..... as it doesn't cause pollution.
a. green b. blue c. black d. pink

7. ..... can happen during heavy rain.
a. Floods b. Droughts c. Fires d. Volcanoes

**Language**

8. She walks as ..... as she rides the bike.
a. slow b. slower c. slowest d. slowly

9. Sara isn't as ..... as Hoda.
a. most beautiful b. more beautiful c. beautiful d. the most beautiful

10. Coronavirus is ..... dangerous than the flu.
a. most b. more c. best d. better

11. This car is faster ..... the other cars in the market.
a. than b. then c. the d. that

12. Hazem is ..... as Maher. الدقهلية – شربين 2022
a. old b. older c. oldest d. as old

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Is your cousin ..... (more old) than your brother? WB
2. This train goes ..... (fast) than the last one. الشرقية – عرب الرماريق 2022
3. This new phone is ..... (more bad) than my old one! الدقهلية/ ميت غمر 2023
4. Which are ..... (good) rivers or canals. الغربية/طنطا2023
5. Osman talks as ..... (quiet) as he sings.
6. Mazen is ..... (fit) than before.



# Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58-60 WB pages 111-112

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| canal | قناة مائية | tourism | السياحة |
| cotton | القطن | pet | حيوان مدلل |
| mosque | مسجد | (be) located | يقع (موجود) في مكان |
| ship | سفينة | locate (d) | يحدد موقع/يقع في |
| sweets | حلوى | damage (d) | يتلف/ يدمر |
| wildlife | الحياة البرية | | |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| north-east | شمال شرق | metal can | علبة معدن |
| wheat | قمح | particular | خاص/ معين |
| black honey | عسل اسود | monuments | آثار |
| turtle | سلحفاة بحرية | green energy | طاقة صديقة البيئة |
| coral reefs | شعاب مرجانية | exactly | بالضبط |
| the Ministry of Tourism | وزارة السياحة | position | وضع/ مكانة |
| nature reserves | محميات طبيعية | presenter | مقدم برامج |
| environment matters | امور/قضايا بيئية | produce (d) | ينتج |
| podcast | نشرة صوتية | recycle (d) | يعيد تدوير |
| travel companies | شركات السفر | introduce (d) | يقدم |
| recycling bins | سلات إعادة التدوير | respect (ed) | يحترم |
| diver | غطاس | | |

## Cities

| | |
|---|---|
| Port Said | مدينة بورسعيد |
| Suez | مدينة السويس |
| Minia | مدينة المنيا |
| Tanta | مدينة طنطا |

## Places

| | |
|---|---|
| the Suez Canal | قناة السويس |
| The Nile | نهر النيل |
| Al-Ahmadi Mosque | المسجد الأحمدى |
| the Red Sea Coast | ساحل البحر الأحمر |



CamScanner

## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| my home city | مسقط رأسى | famous for | مشهور بـ |
| green hotels | فنادق صديقة للبيئة | known for | معروف بـ |
| green tourism | سياحة صديقة للبيئة | (be) closed to | مغلق على |
| go on a boat trip | يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب | connected to | مرتبط بـ |
| go scuba diving | يغطس باستخدام جهاز تنفس | spotlight on | تسليط الضوء على |
| as usual | كالمعتاد | on farms | فى مزارع |
| as a result | كنتيجة | along the river | بمحاذاة النهر |
| do water sports | يمارس الرياضات المائية | from around the world | من جميع أنحاء العالم |
| | | make .. greener | يجعلها أكثر ملائمة للبيئة |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| grow | يزرع | grew | grown |
| catch | يصطاد | caught | caught |
| know | يعرف | knew | known |

| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| known | معروف | famous | unknown | غير معروف |
| connect | يربط/يتصل | link | disconnect | يفصل/يقطع الاتصال |

## Definitions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| canal | قناة مائية | a long area of water made for ships and boats |
| cotton | قطن | a plant used for making clothes |
| mosque | مسجد/جامع | a building where you can pray(2) |
| locate | يحدد موقع | find or discover the exact(3) position of something |
| wildlife | الحياة البرية | animals and plants that live in natural conditions(4) |
| tourism | السياحة | the business of providing places to stay and things to do for people who are on holiday |

١- موقع
٢- يصلى
٣- دقيق
٤- ظروف طبيعية





## Language Notes

### (1) coast - beach

- coast ساحل
  (المنطقة التى يتقابل بها البحر مع اليابسة على الخريطة)
  Ex. He drove along the Red Sea Coast.
- beach شاطئ
  (المنطقة التى بها رمال أو حصى على البحر)
  Ex. The kids went to the beach and built sandcastles.

### (2) As a result = so نتيجة لذلك

Ex. I studied hard. As a result / so, I succeeded

## Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Look at this map. This is the Red Sea _____.
   a. beach b. river c. ocean d. coast
2. Mustafa trained well. _____, he won the match.
   a. Because b. As c. As a result d. But

## Reading

SB Page (58)

استمع إلى النصوص

### Spotlight(1) on ... Port Said



- Port Said is located in(2) the north-east(3) of Egypt.
- The city is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world.
- Port Said is connected to(4) Suez by the Suez Canal.
- Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

### Spotlight on ... Tanta

- Tanta is located in the north of Egypt.
- Lots of cotton(5) is grown in the area.
- The city is known for its delicious sweets(6).
- Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque(7) is visited by thousands of people every year.



١- تسليط الضوء
٢- تقع فى
٣- شمال شرق
٤- متصلة بـ
٥- القطن
٦- حلوى لذيذة
٧- مسجد الأحمدى



CamScanner

SB Page (59)

My home city is Minya. It is located near the Nile. Lots of food is grown in the local area, like potatoes, wheat[1] and sugar. The city[2] is known for its delicious "black honey"[3]. The honey is made from sugar. Many ancient monuments[4] and buildings are found in the city. My city is very beautiful and interesting!



١- قمح
٢- مدينة
٣- عسل أسود
٤- آثار قديمة

WB Page (112)

**The North Hotel**

The North Hotel is located on a lovely beach and every year, the hotel is visited by more and more tourists. However, the hotel owner[1] said that last year, there were not as many turtles on the beach as usual. As a result, the hotel is helping the turtles. Parts of the beach are closed to tourists so that turtles are safe. And at night, when the turtles leave their eggs in the sand[2], the hotel workers stop any tourists from visiting the beach.



١- مالك
٢- رمال
٣- رحلات بالقوارب
٤- طاقة صديقة للبيئة
٥- رياح

**The South Hotel**

The South Hotel is near the coast, and every year, it takes tourists scuba diving. However, workers on the boats believe that coral reefs are often damaged by scuba divers. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral reefs. Now some of the money that tourists pay for the boat trips[3] is used to help protect the coral reefs.

**The East Hotel**

The East Hotel is very new. Only green energy[4] from the sun and wind[5] is used at the hotel. The hotel also produces very little rubbish: most of it is recycled. All the fruit and vegetables at the hotel restaurant are grown on local farms, and the people working at the hotel are all from the local villages.





# Audioscript

SB Page (60)

**Podcast Presenter:**

Today on Environment Matters[1] we're looking at tourism on the Red Sea Coast[2]. Salma Fawzy from the Ministry of Tourism[3] is here to talk about how we can have tourism in Egypt that doesn't damage[4] the environment.

١- قضايا
٢- ساحل البحر الأحمر
٣- وزارة السياحة
٤- يتلف



SB Page (60)

**Podcast Presenter:** Hello, Salma. You're interested in helping both tourism[1] and the environment, is that right?

**Salma** : Exactly[2]. Tourism is very important to Egypt. Our beautiful coast is visited by people from around the world - which is great! But the coast also has coral reefs[3] and lots of important wildlife[4]. The coral reefs are important for our sharks[5], dolphins and turtles[6].



**Podcast Presenter:** So, what are you doing to protect the environment?

**Salma** : Well, the islands[7] on the Red Sea Coast are all nature reserves[8]. We are also working with hotels and travel companies[9]. We have rules for new buildings to make them greener. We also give prizes to companies that are the best at looking after the environment.

**Podcast Presenter:** Good idea!

**Salma** : We also think that it's important to teach tourists[10] about how to look after our special[11] environment when they are on the beaches or doing water sports like scuba diving[12].

١- السياحة
٢- بالضبط
٣- شعب مرجانية
٤- حياة برية
٥- أسماك القرش
٦- سلاحف
٧- جُزُر
٨- محميات طبيعية
٩- شركات السفر
١٠- سائحون
١١- خاص
١٢- الغطس باستخدام جهاز تنفس



CamScanner

# Videoscript

SB Page (59)

١- مناخ جاف
٢- درجة مئوية
٣- جلباب
٤- الفنك (ثعلب الصحراء)
٥- قط الكاراكال

Egypt has a dry climate[1]. This means there isn't much rain. Every year, about 17 centimetres of rain falls in the north of the country.

It is drier in the south and in the deserts. There is only about 0.25 centimetres of rain in Aswan every year.

Egypt is also hot. It's sometimes 40 centigrade[2] or hotter in Cairo. In other places, the temperature is higher than that. In Luxor it can be 44 centigrade...and the desert is even hotter.

The people and animals that live in the desert need to protect themselves from the sun.

This man is wearing a jellabiya[3]. He is kept cool during the day by his traditional item of clothing.

And this is a fennec fox[4]. Its large ears help to keep it cool.

It can be colder in the desert when the sun starts to go down. That's why you only see some animals, like this caracal[5], in the evening when it isn't as hot as in the afternoon.

But, like in many other countries around the world, Egypt's climate is changing. It's hotter today than it was sixty years ago. And the rain is heavier than it used to be. Houses and buildings are damaged by these heavy rains.

We need to work together to protect the environment, our climate and our world.

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. Tourists visit the Red Sea from around the _____. SB
   a. world b. cloud c. sky d. mountain
2. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral _____. WB
   a. roofs b. beef c. leaf d. reefs
3. The East Hotel is very new. Only _____ energy is used at the hotel. WB
   a. black b. green c. blue d. yellow





4. We always pray at a _____.
   a. clinic b. workshop c. mosque d. hospital

### Bit by Bit Exercises

5. Alexandria is _____ in the north of Egypt.
   a. located b. donated c. dusted d. stayed
6. The _____ sailed down the Nile River to Aswan.
   a. plane b. bike c. ship d. bus
7. We should wear clothes that are made of _____ in summer.
   a. cotton b. wood c. plastic d. wool
8. Some factories pollute the water of the Suez _____.
   a. Stream b. Canal c. River d. Ocean
9. You shouldn't eat many _____. They aren't healthy.
   a. fruit b. vegetables c. fish d. sweets
10. _____ rubbish is important for the environment.
    a. Cycling b. Burning c. Recycling d. Growing
11. Many people have dogs in their houses as _____.
    a. kids b. servants c. pets d. nurses
12. Earthquakes can _____ many buildings in minutes.
    a. damage b. locate c. manage d. recycle
13. I like to study animals and everything related to _____.
    a. classroom b. bedroom c. school d. wildlife
14. Tourists go scuba _____ in Hurghada and Sharm el- Sheikh.
    a. diving b. driving c. riding d. hiding
15. Egypt has a lot of ancient monuments so _____ is important for us.
    a. technology b. tourism c. computers d. science
16. I visited Aswan with my family and saw a lot of ancient _____ there.
    a. monuments b. computers c. planes d. tablets
17. Paris is famous _____ the Eiffel Tower.
    a. from b. for c. by d. in
18. We took a boat on a trip _____ the river.
    a. along b. long c. a long d. longer
19. I rode donkeys many times _____ my uncle's farm.
    a. at b. with c. on d. about



CamScanner

# Language

## Present simple passive المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط

• تتكون الجملة الحربه فى اللغة الانجليزية كما يلى

مفعول ← فعل ← فاعل

ويسمى التركيب السابق مبنى للمعلوم (active) حيث أننا بدأنا الجملة بالفاعل:

Ex. People grow lots of cotton in the area.

- هناك صيغة أخرى للجملة تسمى مبنى للمجهول (passive) ونستخدمها عندما:

١- لا يكون الفاعل مهم ويكون الفعل أهم.

٢- لا يكون الفاعل معلوم ويكون المفعول هو الأهم.

- وفيما يلى طريقة تحويل الجملة من المبنى للمعلوم إلى المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

نائب فاعل + (am / is / are) + P.P. فعل الجملة فى التصريف الثالث + (by + فاعل)

١- يأتى المفعول أول الجملة (أى يصبح نائب فاعل للجملة)

٢- نضع (am / is / are) قبل فعل الجملة الأساسى

٣- يحول فعل الجملة الأساسى إلى التصريف الثالث

٤- يمكن وضع الفاعل أخر الجملة مكان المفعول مسبوق بكلمة (by) ويمكن عدم ذكرهما

Farmers grow rice. (active)

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

Rice is grown by farmers. (passive)

**Notes**

١. لاحظ صيغة الاستفهام (هل):

Ex. Is this house painted by your father?

• لاحظ صيغة الاستفهام بكلمة اسفتهام:

كلمة استفهام + am - is - are + نائب الفعل + pp...?

Ex. Where is Egypt located on the map?

Ex. The pyramids are visited by many tourists.

٢. لاحظ أن كلمة (fish) إذا كان المقصود بها الحم السمك فتعامل معاملة المفرد - أما إذا كان المقصود بها السمك نفسه فتعامل معاملة الجمع وخاصة إذا سبقها كلمة (many)





# Exercises on Language

## ① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams

1. Port Said is _____ to Suez by the Suez Canal. SB
   a. connect b. connecting c. connects d. connected
2. Taha _____ for his funny stories. WB
   a. are known b. knows c. is known d. knew
3. Tourists _____ hundreds of photos of the Pyramids every day. WB
   a. is taken b. take c. taken d. are taken
4. The city _____ for its ships, which come and go from around the world. SB
   a. is knowing b. is known c. known d. knows
5. Many ancient monuments and buildings are _____ in the city. SB
   a. found b. find c. finding d. finds
6. Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited _____ thousands of people every year. SB
   a. to b. for c. by d. with
7. The city _____ known for its delicious 'black honey'. SB
   a. am b. are c. were d. is
8. Lots of food is _____ in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar. SB
   a. grow b. grew c. grows d. grown
9. The North Hotel is _____ on a lovely beach. WB
   a. locate b. located c. locates d. locating
10. Coral reefs are often _____ by scuba divers. WB
    a. damaging b. damages c. damaged d. damage
11. Honey is _____ from sugar. WB
    a. made b. make c. makes d. making
12. Lots of cotton _____ in the area. SB (دور السبع/شرق 2023)
    a. are grown b. is grown c. grows d. is grow
13. Many fish are _____ in the sea near Port Said. SB (المنوفية بد 2023)
    a. caught b. catching c. catches d. catch
14. Parts of the beach are _____ to tourists so that turtles are safe. WB (الدقهلية/مدينة عمر 2023)
    a. to closing b. closing c. closes d. closed
15. The book _____ by Hany. (القليوبية / صدوم 2023)
    a. is reading b. is read c. reads d. has read
16. _____ this book written by Naguib Mahfouz?
    a. Is b. Are c. Can d. Has



CamScanner

### Bit by Bit Exercises

17. Football is ..... all around the world.
a. playing b. play c. played d. plays

18. A lot of vegetables ..... in Egypt.
a. grown b. are grown c. is grown d. to growing

19. This student ..... every day at school.
a. is punished b. are punished c. punish d. punishing

**(2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. Port Said is ..... (locate) in the north-east of Egypt. SB
2. Giza is ..... (knowing) for its ancient pyramids. WB
3. A lot of oranges ..... (is) grown along the river. 2023 WB
4. The museum ..... (visit) by lots of people every year. 2022
5. Cheese ..... (made) from milk. 2023

### Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Hundreds of photos of the Pyramids ..... (take) every day.
7. In summer, more ice-cream ..... (eat) than in winter.
8. Many sweets are ..... (eating) every day.
9. Tourists ..... (is visited) the Red Sea from around the world.
10. Many trees ..... (cut) to build new cities.
11. English ..... (speak) all over the world.

## General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

**(1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Vocabulary

1. Pollution can ..... the environment.
a. locate b. damage c. recycle d. respect

2. I want to go to the desert to see the animals and their .....
a. bedroom b. garage c. school d. wildlife

3. There's a ..... near my house. I always go to pray in it.
a. mosque b. club c. library d. cinema

4. We went to Alexandria last summer ..... usual.
a. than b. as c. for d. so





5. Where ..... ?
a. is your car parked b. your car is parked
c. is parked your car d. your car parked

### Language

6. The environment is ..... by many scientists.
a. studies b. studied c. study d. studying

7. Glass is ..... from sand.
a. make b. makes c. making d. made

8. ..... coffee served here?
a. Are b. Do c. Is d. Have

**(2) Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. The city is ..... (know) by tourists for its beautiful buildings.
2. Rice ..... (grow) in Egypt by the farmers.
3. Cotton ..... (plant) in Egypt.
4. Football matches ..... (watch) all over the world.
5. When ..... (lunch is eaten) in your house?

**(3) Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:**

to your cousin Sherif(a) telling him / her about the place where you live.

- **Your name is Nadi(a) and your email address is nadi(a)33@yahoo.com.**
- **Your cousin's email address is sherif(a)77@gmail.com**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- **Where do you live?**
- **Where is your village / city located?**
- **What is grown or made there?**
- **What is visited by tourists in your village / city?**
- **What is the place also known for?**

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **I live in .....**
- **It's located in.....**
- **The farmers around here grow .....**
- **..... is visited by lots of people every year.**
- **The village / city is known for.....**



CamScanner

# Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 61-63 WB pages 113-115

استمع إلى المفردات

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| recycling | اعادة التدوير | recycle (d) | يعيد تدوير |
| billion (1000 million) | بليون / مليار | remind (ed) | يُذكر |
| souvenir | هدية تذكارية | aim (ed) to | يهدف إلى |
| riverbank | ضفة النهر | water (ed) | يروى بالماء |

## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Global Recycling Day | يوم إعادة التدوير العالمى | gas | غاز |
| city centre | وسط المدينة | tonne | طن (...١ كيلو جرام) |
| plastic bags | حقائب بلاستيك | solution | حل |
| plastic pollution | تلوث البلاستيك | location | موقع |
| smoke | دخان | sailing | الإبحار |
| importance | اهمية | improve (d) | يحسّن |
| figs | تين | hope (d) | يأمل / يتمنى |
| washing | غسيل | clean (ed) up | ينظف |
| water bottles | زجاجات مياه | collect (ed) | يجمع |
| event | حدث (هام) | swap (ped) | يبادل «شئ بشئ» |
| including | مشتملاً على | | |

## Countries

| | |
|---|---|
| Tunisia | دولة تونس |
| Germany | دولة ألمانيا |
| South Korea | دولة كوريا الجنوبية |
| Netherlands | دولة هولندا |

## Cities

| | |
|---|---|
| Sidi Bou Said | مدينة سيدى بوسعيد فى تونس |
| Mersa Alam | مدينة مرسى علم فى مصر |
| Sidi Barrani | مدينة سيدى برانى فى مصر |
| Amsterdam | مدينة أمستردام فى هولندا |





## Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| lie on the beach | يستلقى على الشاطئ | talk about | يتحدث عن |
| solve a problem | يحل مشكلة | part of | جزء من |
| that's an interesting idea! | إنها فكرة شيقة! | remind.... of | يذكر.... بـ.... |
| possible solutions | حلول ممكنة | lead to | يؤدى إلى |
| Well done! | احسنت! | get warmer | يصبح أكثر دفئاً |

## Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | | Past simple | Past Participle |
|---|---|---|---|
| sell | يبيع | sold | sold |
| burn | يحترق / يحرق | burnt / burned | burnt / burned |
| lead | يؤدى | led | led |
| lie | يرقد / يستلقي | lay | lain |

| Word | | Meaning | Opposite | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| the least | الأقل | - | the most | الأكثر |
| real | حقيقى | true | unreal | غير حقيقى |

## Language Notes

### 1) remember - remind

- remember يتذكر (من تلقاء نفسه)

Ex. I couldn't remember where I lost my keys.

- remind يُذكر (شخص بشئ - أن يفعل شئ)

Ex. Remind me to buy some eggs tonight.

- remind (someone) of يُذكر (شخص) بشيء

Ex. This report reminds us of the importance of recycling things.

### 2) souvenir - present

- souvenir هدية تذكارية

Ex. Tourists bought souvenirs to remember their visit to Aswan.

- present هدية

Ex. I got many presents on my birthday.



CamScanner

### ③ (re-)

- نستخدم البادئة Prefix (re-) قبل الفعل بمعنى (again)

use ⟶ reuse = use again.
write ⟶ rewrite = write again.
recycle = to cycle again.

### Check on Language Notes ✓

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I can't remember your name. Could you _____ me, please?
   a. remember b. recall c. review d. remind
2. The _____ I bought from Khan El-Khalili were fantastic.
   a. souvenirs b. prizes c. presents d. presidents
3. Don't throw this box in the bin. You can _____ it.
   a. using b. used c. usable d. reuse

## Audioscript SB Page (61)

استمع إلى النصوص



**Aya** : The problem is that we all use too much water.
**Reem** : That's true. So, how can we use less water?
**Aya** : Well, why don't we try recycling water[1] ?
**Reem** : How could we do that?
**Aya** : For example, we could use the water from washing to water[2] the plants.
**Reem** : That's an interesting idea[3] ! The plants would like that!

١- إعادة تدوير المياه
٢- نروي
٣- فكرة شيقة

### WB Page (113)

**Girl** : Our school project[1] this week is to think about rubbish at school. In our school, we have a rubbish bin[2] in every room. The students are very good and they always put their rubbish in the bins. At the moment, the rubbish is collected every week and goes to a special place[3] in the city. But when we look inside the bins, we can see that most of the rubbish is made of paper or plastic. We can recycle[4] a lot of this rubbish. So now, before students put things in the rubbish bin, we ask them to think: Can I recycle that? If the answer is yes, they can now put it in a special bin so it can be used again.



١- مشروع مدرسي
٢- سلة قمامة
٣- مكان خاص
٤- يعيد تدوير





### WB Page (113)

**Dina** : Look at all the plastic water bottles[1] in the rubbish bin. The problem is that we use too many of them.
**Leila** : How can we stop people using them?
**Dina** : Why don't we ask people to use them again?
**Leila** : How could we do that?
**Dina** : People could take the bottles home, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.
**Leila** : That's an interesting idea. We can see what the teacher thinks.



١- زجاجات مياه بلاستيكية

## Reading SB Page (62)

### Students help to clean river

**By Khadeeja El-Maghrabi**



Last weekend, ten students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank[1] near the city centre. The students collected[2] 15 bags of rubbish. Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

"There were lots of plastic bags and bottles," he said. "We even found an old shoe[3] !"

One of the students said, "It was great to clean the riverbank, but we need to teach people to be more careful with their rubbish. Rubbish in the river damages[4] the wildlife[5]."

Well done[6] to the volunteers!

١- ضفة النهر
٢- جمعوا
٣- فردة حذاء
٤- يتلف/يدمر
٥- الحياة البرية
٦- أحسنتم

### WB Page (114)

**- What is Global Recycling Day?**

Global Recycling Day[1] is an event[2] in March. It aims to[3] remind people of the importance[4] of recycling[5] things including[6] paper, plastic, metal[7], water and even gas and oil. It was started in 2018 and there are now recycling events in many different countries[8].




١- يوم إعادة التدوير العالمي
٢- حدث
٣- يهدف إلى
٤- أهمية
٥- إعادة تدوير
٦- تشمل على
٧- معدن
٨- حول



CamScanner

**- So why is recycling so important?**

In 2018, people produced[9] about 11 billion tonnes[10] of rubbish around the world. At the moment, a lot of our rubbish is burned[11] and this can lead to climate change[12].

٩- ينتج
١٠- ١١ بليون طن
١١- يحرق
١٢- تغير مناخي
١٣- كوريا الجنوبية

**- What are countries doing about the problem?**

No country recycles as much rubbish as Germany: it recycles more than 56% of its rubbish. In 1991, it recycled just 3%. South Korea[13] recycles more than 53% than 56% of it. In 1991, it recycled just 3%. Coloured plastic bottles and some plastic cups are not used any more, because you cannot recycle them. Most countries hope to recycle more in the future.

## Exercises on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### SB, WB & Exams

1. We could use the water from washing to _____ plants. SB
   a. water b. cut c. drink d. end
2. _____ on a beach is more relaxing than working in the city. SB
   a. Burning b. Damaging c. Lying d. Aiming
3. A lot of our rubbish is _____ and this can lead to climate change. WB
   a. reminded b. burned c. recycled d. reused
4. Global Recycling Day is an important _____ in March. WB
   a. event b. match c. movie d. song
5. No country _____ rubbish as much as Germany. مطروح/ الحمام 2023
   a. cycles b. rearranges c. rewrites d. recycles

### Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Tourists bought small statues of the pyramid as _____
   a. meals b. sports c. souvenirs d. time
7. The number of people living on Earth is about 8 _____ people.
   a. hundred b. thousand c. million d. billion
8. Write down a few notes to _____ yourself of what you want to say.
   a. remind b. remember c. forget d. miss
9. The river is polluted because people throw rubbish near the _____.
   a. pool b. riverbank c. beach d. sink
10. Plastic bags can be recycled or _____.
    a. reread b. deleted c. hurt d. reused





11. The course _____ to teach children how to speak English well.
    a. cycles b. cleans c. aims d. earns
12. The government is trying to _____ the problem of water pollution.
    a. damage b. solve c. remind d. reuse
13. The truck is very big. It weighs 4 _____.
    a. grams b. kilograms c. tonnes d. years
14. He has many hobbies _____ reading, swimming and playing chess.
    a. including b. consisting c. remaining d. containing
15. There was a fire in our house and I couldn't breathe because of the _____.
    a. water b. plant c. wood d. smoke
16. This homework is full of mistakes. You should _____ it.
    a. do b. redo c. to do d. undo

## Speaking

### 1) Suggesting solutions to a problem

- اقتراح حلول لمشكلة

- لتقديم اقتراح بحلول لمشكلة نقول:

- Why don't we.....? لما لا نقوم بـ.....؟
- How can/could we.....? كيف نستطيع أن .....؟
- People could..... تستطيع الناس أن .....

### 2) Discussing how to use less water

- مناقشة كيفية استخدام الماء بشكل أقل

**Question: How can we use less water?**

**Answer:**

- We should use the water from washing to water the plants.
- We should take showers, not baths.
- We should turn off taps carefully.
- We should water plants in the morning or late at night.
- We should recycle water if it is not very dirty.



CamScanner

## General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

SB

### 1 Complete the following dialogue:

**Aya and Reem are talking about recycling water.**

Aya : I'm very sad.

Reem : ① .....?

Aya : The problem is that we all use much water.

Reem : ② ..... So, how can we use less water?

Aya : Well, why don't we try recycling water?

Reem : ③ .....?

Aya : We could use the water from washing to water the plants.

Reem : ④ .....

Aya : We can also take short showers.

Reem : ⑤ .....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists like to buy wonderful ..... from that market.
   a. souvenirs b. cousins c. clouds d. mountains
2. We can ..... paper bags to use them again.
   a. forget b. cycle c. burn d. recycle
3. **A :** I solved the problem easily.
   **B:** ..... done!
   a. Good b. Well c. Great d. Will
4. Could you ..... me to set the alarm clock?
   a. remind b. recycle c. remember d. water
5. Mustafa studies hard and ..... to be an engineer.
   a. collects b. recycles c. aims d. solves
6. The cat is ..... lazily on the comfortable chair.
   a. leading b. cycling c. flying d. lying





### 3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

WB

"How you can recycle rubbish at school"

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Where do you usually put rubbish at school?
- Can rubbish be recycled? How?
- What can't be recycled or reused?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- We put rubbish in ..... at school.
- We can recycle.....
- ..... can be used again.



CamScanner

# Unit 6 Review

## Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| air pollution | تلوث الهواء | climate change | تغير المناخ | billion | بليون / مليار |
| water pollution | تلوث المياه | comfortable | مريح | souvenirs | هدايا تذكارية |
| polluted | ملوث | canal | قناة مائية | riverbank | ضفة النهر |
| drought | جفاف | cotton | القطن | locate (d) | يحدد موقع |
| flood | فيضان | mosque | مسجد | damage (d) | يتلف / يدمر |
| rubbish | قمامة | ship | سفينة | recycle(d) | يعيد تدوير |
| line graph | رسم بياني خطي | sweets | حلوى | melt (ed) | يذوب / يذيب / ينصهر |
| bar chart | رسم بياني بالأعمدة | (be) located | واقع في مكان ما | remind (ed) | يُذكِّر |
| x-axis | محور السينات | tourism | السياحة | water (ed) | يروي بالماء |
| y-axis | محور الصادات | pet | حيوان مدلل | aim (ed) to | يهدف إلى |
| green | صديق البيئة | wildlife | الحياة البرية | | |
| environment | البيئة | recycling | إعادة التدوير | | |

## Language

### 1) Comparative and Superlative Adjectives

• تختلف صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل حسب الصفة ما إذا كانت قصيرة أو طويلة كما يلي:

| Adjective | Comparative | Superlative |
|---|---|---|
| short adjective "high" | صفة + er + than | the + صفة + est |
| | Ex. Mount Kilimanjaro is higher than that mountain. | Ex. Mount Everest is the highest mountain. |
| long adjective "modern" | more / less + صفة + than (أكثر / أقل) | the most / the least + صفة (الأكثر / الأقل) |
| | Ex. London is more modern than Cairo. | Ex. New York is the most modern city. |

• عند تساوي/ عدم تساوي الصفة نستخدم:

اسم + be (not) + as + صفة + as + اسم

Ex. Hana is as clever as Fatma.

Ex. Tarek is not as tall as his brother.





### 2) Present simple passive

- يتكون المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط كالآتي:

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

نائب فاعل + (am / is / are) + P.P. التصريف الثالث + (by + فاعل) فعل الجملة في

Students do experiments. (active)

فاعل + فعل + مفعول

Experiments are done by students. (passive)

• لنفي الجملة في المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط:

نائب فاعل + am - is - are + not + التصريف الثالث

Ex. Experiments aren't done by farmers.

• للسؤال بمعنى (هل؟)

Am - Is - Are + نائب فاعل + التصريف الثالث ...?

Ex. Is Aswan visited by tourists?

- Yes, it is. إثبات / - No, it isn't. نفي

• للسؤال بكلمة استفهام:

كلمة استفهام + am - is - are + نائب فاعل + التصريف الثالث ...?

Ex. How is water polluted?

## Speaking

### 1) Suggesting solutions to a problem

- اقتراح حلول لمشكلة

- لتقديم اقتراح بحلول لمشكلة نقول:

Why don't we.....?

How can/could we.....? People could.....

### 2) Discussing how to use less water

- مناقشة كيفية استخدام الماء بشكل أقل

Question: How can we use less water?

We should use the water from washing to water the plants.

We should take showers, not baths.

We should turn off taps carefully.



CamScanner

# General Exercises on Unit 6

WB

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Dina and Leila are talking about recycling.**

Dina : Look at all the plastic water bottles in the rubbish bin.

Leila : ① ..... ?

Dina : The problem is that we use too many of them.

Leila : ② ..... ?

Dina : Why don't we use them again?

Leila : ③ .....

Dina : We can take them home, wash them, and bring them to school the next day.

Leila : ④ ..... . We can see what the teacher thinks.

Dina : He will tell us some ideas to reuse them.

Leila : ⑤ .....

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

**Vocabulary**

1. ..... is very important to Egypt. SB
   a. Tourist b. Tourism c. Tour d. Pollution
2. ..... reefs are sometimes damaged by boats. SB
   a. Car b. Oral c. Coral d. Plural
3. We need more rain or there might be a..... SB
   a. drought b. storm c. flood d. climate change
4. The Egyptians opened the Suez ..... in 1869. SB
   a. River b. Canal c. Lake d. Sea
5. We should clean the river because it is very ..... SB
   a. pollution b. pure c. polluted d. fresh
6. Which of these towns is ..... on the north-west coast of Egypt? SB
   a. located b. donated c. hated d. closed
7. Tourists bought wonderful ..... from the market. SB
   a. planes b. ships c. souvenirs d. buses

**Language**

8. Recycling is not as important ..... using less water. SB
   a. also b. too c. so d. as





9. A bike is not as ..... as a plane. SB
   a. fast b. fastest c. faster d. faster than
10. Cairo is ..... than Tanta.
    a. noisy b. noisiest c. noisier d. more noisy
11. Alexandria is not as ..... as Giza. SB
    a. biggest b. bigger c. so bigger d. big
12. Fish is caught ..... fishermen.
    a. to b. of c. by d. after
13. Chairs and tables are ..... by carpenters.
    a. made b. making c. make d. makes
14. Ali says that football is not ..... as handball. SB
    a. more difficult b. as difficult c. difficult d. difficult than
15. Our teacher speaks English as ..... as he speaks Arabic.
    a. better b. best c. good d. well

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Who is as ..... (taller) as you in the class? WB
2. Plastic pollution is ..... (worst) now than it was before. SB
3. The fish that we eat are ..... (catch) in boats most mornings. WB
4. The Pyramids ..... (is) visited by thousands of people every day. WB
5. Which school subject do you find as interesting ..... (so) English? WB

**4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:** SB

"How to use less water"

(أجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you use water for every day?
- How can we use less water?
- Why is it important to use less water?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Water is very important.....
- We can't live without water.
- We mustn't throw .....



CamScanner

# Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات انشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

### 1- The place where I live

(Lessons 3 & 4)

To : sherif(a)77@gmail.com

From : nadi(a)33@yahoo.com

Subject : The place where I live

Dear Sherif(a),

I live in Aswan. It is located in the south of Egypt. Its weather is warm all year round. It is known for its ancient monuments. Tourists come from all over the world to visit it. Many crops are grown in Aswan. In Aswan you can eat many kinds of fish. People in Aswan are very friendly. You can go there from Cairo by train or by plane. When you go by train, you can see beautiful views.

Yours,

Nadi(a)

### 2- How we can recycle rubbish at school

(Lessons 5 & 6)

In our school, we have a rubbish bins everywhere. The students always put their rubbish in the bins. The rubbish is sent to a special factory in the city. They recycle paper and plastic there. Recycling helps the environment. It makes our environment clean. It also brings a lot of money to countries.

### 3- How to use less water

(General Exercises)

Water is very important. We cannot live without it. Water is necessary for drinking, bathing, cooking, cleaning, washing and so on. We must save and recycle it. People shouldn't waste water. Some people waste a lot of water washing their cars. We should take short showers to save water. We should keep the rivers clean. People mustn't throw rubbish in rivers. They should help clean them all the time.

### 4- Air pollution

(Al Azhar)

Factories and cars cause air pollution. Air in many cities is polluted by traffic and factory wastes. So, we must plant lots of trees in all our cities. This will help clean the air around us. We should use green means of transport such as bikes.

### 5- Helping the environment

(Test)

Environment is the place where we live. It's very important to look after it. There are many ways to do that. We can plant trees. We can recycle rubbish. We mustn't throw waste in rivers. We should use green means of transport. We shouldn't throw plastic bottles or rubbish in rivers. We should use electric cars. We should keep the environment clean to live a happy life.



Unit 6

# Al Azhar Test

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Port Said is connected to _____ by the Suez Canal.
   a. Sohag b. Minia c. Suez d. Tanta
2. Many fish are caught in the sea _____ Port Said.
   a. near b. next to c. above d. on

## B Language Functions

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

1. Marwa : Why don't we try to save water?
   Sara : ----------.
2. Asmaa : ----------?
   Yasmin : Port Said is located in the north-east of Egypt.

## C Usage

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. " _____ " means change from ice to water.
   a. Freeze b. Boil c. Melt d. Rain
2. Eiffel Tower is _____ than Cairo Tower.
   a. taller b. tall c. as tall d. tallest
3. You can see different _____ in the zoo.
   a. reefs b. wildlife c. monuments d. podcasts
4. Do you know how is coffee _____ ?
   a. made b. making c. to make d. make
5. These photos _____ me of the nice days I spent in Luxor.
   a. remember b. reply c. remind d. mind
6. The government try to find possible _____ to the pollution problem.
   a. souvenirs b. centres c. locations d. solutions



CamScanner

## D Reading Comprehension

**4 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Global warming is the increase in temperature of the earth because of some harmful chemicals. We all know that humans take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide. Similarly, plants take in carbon dioxide and give out oxygen. Cutting down a lot of trees reduces the trees and plants in the environment. So, there are very few plants to take in the carbon dioxide in the air. Carbon dioxide is released into the air through factories, too. This carbon dioxide stays in the air if it is not taken in by the trees. This causes air pollution. Carbon dioxide can lead to breathing problems and other medical problems in the future.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. How can factories cause air pollution?

.....

2. What is global warming?

.....

3. What happens if we cut down trees?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. ..... take in carbon dioxide and give out oxygen.
   a. Humans b. Problems c. Factories d. Plants
5. ..... causes air pollution.
   a. Oxygen b. Carbon dioxide c. Temperature d. Environment

## E Writing

**5 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:**

"Air pollution" إجاب عنه قبل الاختبار

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Why is air pollution serious?
- How is air in cities polluted?
- How can we keep our planet clean?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Factories and cars cause .....
- We must plant lots of....
- We should use green means of transport.



# Unit 6 TEST

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. Tanta is located in the ..... of Egypt.
   a. north b. south c. east d. west
2. Lots of ..... is grown in the area.
   a. fruit b. vegetables c. cotton d. trees
3. Tanta is known for its delicious.....
   a. cakes b. buns c. bread d. sweets
4. Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi ..... is visited by thousands of people every year.
   a. Mosque b. University c. School d. Park

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Nader is asking Soad about her favourite city.**

Nader : Which city do you like?

Soad : ❶ .....

Nader : ❷ .....?

Soad : Port Said is in the north-east of Egypt.

Nader : ❸ .....?

Soad : It is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world.

Nader : What about visiting it one day?

Soad : ❹ .....

Nader : Thank you.

Soad : ❺ .....



CamScanner

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Dirty water is dangerous to drink. It causes diseases and makes people ill. **It** can damage the environment, animals and fish. People often throw rubbish into rivers. This makes the rivers look **horrible** and affects the lives of birds and fish. We must keep the water in our rivers, canals and lakes clean. Smoke and gases from factories and cars mix with water vapour in the air and cause pollution. When the water vapour falls to the ground as rain, the chemicals in the smoke and fumes mix with the rain. This can kill trees, plants, fish and animals.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. In your opinion, how can we solve the problem of pollution?

.....

3. What happens when the water vapour falls to the ground as rain?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. ..... cause pollution.
   a. Water and juice  b. Metal and wood
   c. Smoke and gases  d. Flowers and trees
5. The underlined word **"horrible"** means "very .....".
   a. good  b. friendly  c. pleasant  d. bad
6. The underlined word **"It"** refers to .....
   a. rubbish  b. dirty water  c. environment  d. water vapour

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. ..... clothes are good to wear in summer.
   a. Cotton  b. Plastic  c. Wool  d. Leather
2. When there is not enough rain, there is often a/an ..... SB
   a. flood  b. storm  c. drought  d. earthquake
3. This month was ..... than last month because we had some big storms. SB
   a. wettest  b. wetter  c. wet  d. as wet
4. When the planet gets warmer, it is called ..... change. SB
   a. climate  b. pilot  c. plate  d. date





5. When ice is heated, it ..... SB
   a. freezes  b. cools  c. melts  d. burns
6. Egypt is ..... than Jordan.
   a. big  b. biggest  c. bigger  d. as big
7. When there is too much rain, there is often a ..... SB
   a. war  b. flood  c. drought  d. match
8. The museum is ..... by lots of tourists every day.
   a. visiting  b. visit  c. visited  d. visits
9. When there is too much smoke from factories, it causes air ..... SB
   a. pollution  b. solution  c. holiday  d. conclusion
10. I bought a model Eiffel Tower as a ..... when I visited Paris.
    a. Prize  b. souvenir  c. present  d. tool

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Mohammed Salah ..... (known) by people everywhere. WB
2. Who in your family is not as ..... (better) at English as you? WB
3. Sport is ..... (watch) by people around the world. WB
4. Is the weather this week as ..... (hottest) as it was last week? WB

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"Helping the environment"

(محاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

يمكنك من خلال الاجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What is the environment?
- How can electric cars be helpful?
- How can we look after our environment?

يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- The environment is .....
- We can plant....
- We mustn't throw .....
- Electric cars are useful.



CamScanner

# Review B

SB pages 64-65 WB pages 116-117

## Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| opening times | أوقات الفتح | sunny day | يوم مشمس |
| Corniche El Nil | كورنيش النيل | suddenly | فجأة |
| further from | أبعد من | exactly | بالضبط |
| the fourteenth century | القرن الرابع عشر | pink | لون وردي / زهري |
| take the sand off | يزيل الرمال | realise (d) | يدرك |

## Audioscript

SB Page (64)

استمع إلى النصوص

**Mrs Saki** : Good afternoon, Luxor Museum, how can I help you?

**Mr El-Baz** : Hello, I'm a teacher and I want to bring[1] my class to visit the museum next week. Can you tell me what time you are open, please?

**Mrs Saki** : Of course. We are open every day from 9 a.m. to 2 p.m. and then 5 p.m. to 9 p.m.

**Mr El-Baz** : Can I buy tickets at the museum?

**Mrs Saki** : Yes, certainly[2]. Or you can buy them online[3] before your visit.

**Mr El-Baz** : How much are the tickets?

**Mrs Saki** : They're 120 pounds for adults[4] and 60 pounds for children and students.

**Mr El-Baz** : OK, thank you. Can you tell me where the museum is exactly[5]?

**Mrs Saki** : It's located in the north of Luxor on Corniche Al Nil[6].

**Mr El-Baz** : Thank you so much for your help!

**Mrs Saki** : You're welcome. Bye!

١- أحضر
٢- بالتأكيد
٣- على شبكة الانترنت
٤- البالغين
٥- بالضبط
٦- كورنيش النيل





WB Page (116)

-1-

**Woman** : Good morning, how can I help you?
**Man** : Hello, I'd like to know some of the things I can see and do if I visit today.
**Woman** : Yes, you can usually see lots of wildlife, or you could go scuba diving.

-2-

**Man 1** : Hello, how can I help you today?
**Man 2** : Good morning. Can you tell me how much a ticket costs?
**Man1** : Of course. Adults are 160 pounds and children are 80 pounds.
**Man 2** : Can I buy the tickets online?
**Man 1** : Yes, and the tickets are cheaper on the museum website, too.

-3-

**Woman 1** : Good afternoon, how can I help?
**Woman 2** : I'd like to know what time you close today.
**Woman 1** : Certainly. We close at 3 pm, so if you want to visit the castle today, you'll have to get here soon.
**Woman 2** : Thank you for your help.

## Reading

SB Page (64)



### A trip to Luxor Museum By Hamid

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from[1] my home than our school. We were travelling a long time! We arrived at 10.30 am. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. My favourite was the statue of Ramses II. There were also rings and necklaces that once belonged to[2] rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too.

١- أبعد من
٢- ينتمي لـ
٣- القرن الرابع عشر

The museum has some very old objects. My favourite objects were the metal bowls from the fourteenth century[3]. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone.

While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10.000 years old.



CamScanner

SB Page (65)

**Beach rules**

- Don't swim when the weather is bad.
- Swim near the beach, where we can see you.
- Wear a hat between 11 am and 3 pm.
- No loud music!
- Put your rubbish in the bins.
- Only play ball games in the park area.

WB Page (116)



The city of Edfu, which is located[1] to the west of the River Nile, is known for the famous Temple of Horus. For hundreds of years, people forgot about the temple until1860, when a French man, Auguste Mariette, found part of an arch in the sand. He realised[2] that there were 12 metres of sand on top of the ancient building. People carefully took the sand off[3] the temple, and today it is one of the biggest temples in Egypt. Tourists have to buy a ticket to look around the temple, which is more than 2,000 years old. Tourists who go to the temple always remember this awesome building.

١- تقع
٢- أدرك
٣- أزالو الرمال



# Test on Units 4, 5 & 6

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. The speaker went to Luxor Museum with his / her.....
   a. family  b. class  c. cousins  d. friends
2. They arrived at the museum at ..... a.m.
   a. 10.30  b. 9.30  c. 7.30  d. 8.30
3. They saw some big.....
   a. tourists  b. animals  c. objects  d. statues
4. The oldest objects in the museum were the.....
   a. statues  b. walls  c. tools  d. objects

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Mrs Wafaa is calling the Egyptian Museum.**

**Woman** : Good morning, how can I help you?

**Mrs Wafaa** : Hello! ❶.....

**Woman** : Sure. We open at 9:00 am and close at 5:00 pm every day.

**Mrs Wafaa** : ❷.....?

**Woman** : 30 pounds.

**Mrs Wafaa** : ❸.....?

**Woman** : Yes, tickets are cheaper on the museum website.

**Mrs Wafaa** : Can I use my camera?

**Woman** : ❹..... But you have to buy a ticket of 50 pounds for that.

**Mrs Wafaa** ❺.....



CamScanner

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

On Saturday, Judy will be 13 years old. Her **parents** are very happy and they are going to have a birthday party. The party is going to begin at noon on Saturday. They invited their friends, neighbours and all their family members, so many people will be at the party. Judy will have so much fun!

Judy's dad is going to buy balloons. Judy's grandmother is going to bring ice-cream. **Her** aunt is going to bake a chocolate cake. Judy will love her cake! Her sister Salwa will take photos with her mobile at the party.

Judy's friends, cousins and neighbours will bring presents. She is going to open her presents after lunch. Then, everyone will eat cake and ice-cream. Judy is going to have a good birthday!

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. What is Judy's dad going to buy?

.....

3. When is Judy going to open the presents?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined pronoun "**Her**" refers to .....
   a. Judy b. the aunt c. the mother d. Salwa
5. The underlined word "**parents**" means .....
   a. friends b. cousins c. neighbours d. father and mother
6. Judy's aunt is going to .....
   a. buy balloons b. have fun c. play a game d. bake a cake

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. A/An ..... school is a place where students live as well as study. WB
   a. interesting b. boarding c. boring d. losing
2. He put the cards in a ..... order and asked me to reorder them.
   a. random b. dangerous c. disabled d. tidy





3. A/An ..... is something which you use to buy things with. WB
   a. object b. arch c. museum d. coin
4. ..... means to change from ice to water.
   a. Melt b. Freeze c. Pollute d. Warn
5. A ..... person is someone who cannot learn easily. WB
   a. clever b. intelligent c. healthy d. disabled
6. A ..... is a long area of water made for ships and boats.
   a. pool b. basin c. canal d. drop
7. I ..... my phone while I was texting my friend. WB
   a. found b. won c. washed d. dropped
8. The train leaves at 9 tomorrow, so you ..... be late. WB
   a. have to b. mustn't c. should d. can
9. The bowls in the museum were ..... than the tools. SB
   a. the new b. newest c. newer d. more new
10. While Mona was watching television, she ..... an idea. WB
    a. had b. has c. was having d. to have

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. The turtle ..... (who) the boys helped walked to the sea. SB
2. Playing sport is ..... (good) for you than playing computer games. WB
3. You ..... (should) eat too many sweets. They are bad for you. WB
4. Huda's grandparents arrived while she ..... (put) her clothes away. WB

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:** WB

"How a school helps the community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



CamScanner

Part 3

# General Exercises from Student's Book & Workbook

**Complete the following dialogue:**

**1. Dalida's mother is ill and she didn't go to work.**

Dalida : My mother didn't go to work today because she is ill.
Heba : ❶ .....
Dalida : She had an interview at the bank for a new job. ❷ .....
Heba : ❸ .....?
Dalida : She did the interview online from her bed!
Heba : ❹ .....?
Dalida : Yes, but she got the job!
Heba : ❺ .....! I'm so happy for her.
Dalida : She is still not feeling very well.
Heba : Don't worry, I'm sure she'll be better soon.

**2. Esraa and Amal are talking about ancient Egyptian doctors.**

Esraa : Did you read about ancient Egyptian doctors?
Amal : ❶ .....
Esraa : Do you think that they helped their patients?
Amal : ❷ .....
Esraa : ❸ .....?
Amal : They used plants to help people with burns and to stop infections.
Esraa : Did they know anything about the heart?
Amal : ❹ .....
Esraa : ❺ .....?
Amal : You can visit museums and temples to know more about them.





**3. Ayman is doing a school project.**

Samy : What are you doing?
Ayman : ❶ .....
Samy : Do you mean a project about your family history?
Ayman : ❷ .....
Samy : ❸ .....
Ayman : My great grandfather lived in the countryside.
Samy : ❹ .....?
Ayman : He was a doctor at the Red Crescent.
Samy : I think he was a helpful man.
Ayman : ❺ .....

**4. Amira and Hana are talking about tourism.**

Amira : I think tourism is good for our country.
Hana : ❶ ..... . Tourists bring money to us.
Amira : ❷ .....?
Hana : Yes, it's good for local people.
Amira : ❸ .....?
Hana : I think it's sometimes bad for the environment?
Amira : How does this happen?
Hana : ❹ .....
Amira : ❺ ..... Most tourists behave well.
Hana : You are right.

**5. Amal and Malak are talking about what they have to do at home.**

Amal : Hi! Malak. What housework do you do at home?
Malak : ❶ .....
Amal : Do you help your mother with the washing up?
Malak : ❷ .....
Amal : ❸ .....?
Malak : My sister helps to clean the table after meals.
Amal : ❹ .....?
Malak : I also help my mother clean the kitchen.
Amal : I think you are very helpful.
Malak : ❺ .....



CamScanner

**6. Aya and Reem are talking about recycling water.**

Aya : I'm very sad.
Reem : ❶ .....?
Aya : The problem is that we all use much water.
Reem : ❷ ..... So, how can we use less water?
Aya : Well, why don't we try recycling water?
Reem : ❸ .....?
Aya : We could use the water from washing to water the plants.
Reem : ❹ .....
Aya : We can also take short showers.
Reem : ❺ .....

## SB & WB Exercises Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

### Unit 1

1. I go to the baker's with my mother ..... to buy bread in the morning.
   a. daily b. dearly c. dairy d. deeply
2. I saw Ahmed's father on his ..... to work this morning.
   a. stay b. weight c. holiday d. way
3. Come and sit on this ....., four people can sit on it.
   a. routine b. sofa c. chair d. seat
4. My uncle uses a ..... in his garden to water his plants.
   a. cap b. map c. tape d. tap
5. Roberta's family home has a ..... garden.
   a. careful b. helpful c. large d. cheap
6. The opposite of "attractive" is .....
   a. small b. ugly c. beautiful d. good
7. On a ..... day, Reem gets up, goes to school and then helps her mother in her shop.
   a. typical b. famous c. helpful d. careful
8. I live in a city, but my grandparents live in a .....among fields.
   a. town b. capital c. village d. country
9. A ..... is a place where people go when they do something wrong.
   a. hospital b. prison c. theatre d. beach
10. People without enough money are .....
    a. poor b. healthy c. strong d. careless
11. A ..... gives you light.
    a. leaf b. lamb c. lake d. lamp





12. A ..... is a big cupboard where you can put your clothes.
    a. wardrobe b. chair c. blackboard d. sofa
13. You can see yourself in a/an .....
    a. armchair b. wardrobe c. mirror d. basin
14. My bed is under the window. There are a lot of ..... on it!
    a. information b. cushions c. news d. tables
15. The opposite of "terrible" is .....
    a. good b. far c. small d. ugly
16. ..... time does Donia's school finish?
    a. When b. How c. Where d. What
17. Roberta's new house is in the country near a railway .....
    a. club b. line c. tree d. classroom
18. Hassan forgot to bring any food for the picnic, but we can ..... our food.
    a. check b. damage c. share d. change
19. Roberta's family home in the city is big and ..... I like going there.
    a. little b. ugly c. terrible d. attractive
20. This family do not have much money and now they are .....
    a. happy b. poor c. rich d. excited

### Unit 2

21. You call a ..... if there is a problem with your computer system.
    a. police officer b. shop worker c. nurse d. computer engineer
22. I'm ..... my food stall here because it is the best place in the city.
    a. flying b. parking c. barking d. doing
23. A ..... helps to keep people safe in the streets.
    a. street-food seller b. nurse c. police officer d. computer engineer
24. A/An ..... speaks to people on the phone. He/She helps them with their problems.
    a. doctor b. call-centre worker
    c. computer engineer d. nurse
25. I'm feeling cold and I'm looking ..... drinking some hot coffee.
    a. forward to b. after c. up d. for
26. A ..... helps in a place which sells things.
    a. teacher b. farmer c. shop worker d. police officer
27. A/An ..... prepares food for people to eat in the streets.
    a. street-food seller b. shop worker c. doctor d. engineer
28. How often do you ..... dinner?
    a. do b. make c. harm d. repair
29. Shady is deaf, but he understands us because we use ..... language.
    a. sight b. signal c. seen d. sign



CamScanner

30. We need a computer engineer to _____ our computer because it doesn't work.
a. damage b. hurt c. repair d. break

31. When you invite a person to your house, he/ she is your _____.
a. guess b. guest c. customer d. partner

32. When you go on holiday, you can put your clothes in a _____.
a. suit b. pan c. pencil case d. suitcase

33. The skin of a zebra is _____.
a. striped b. lines c. silver d. golden

34. When two people get married, they have a _____.
a. weeding b. prize c. medal d. wedding

35. A _____ is a boy or girl aged 13-19.
a. teenager b. child c. baby d. manager

36. You can catch a plane from a/an _____.
a. port b. station c. airport d. stop

37. If you are tired, why don't you _____ a rest?
a. have b. be c. make d. do

38. I'm sorry to hear that. I hope he _____ better soon.
a. gets b. gives c. takes d. makes

39. We are _____ to a new house.
a. sharing b. moving c. passing d. missing

40. Congratulations _____ passing your maths test.
a. at b. in c. up d. on

41. _____ done, Yasser! That's great news!
a. Well b. Wall c. Wheel d. Will

42. That must be difficult. But don't _____. I'm sure things will get better.
a. hurry b. marry c. worry d. carry

43. Congratulations! I'm so _____ for you.
a. unhappy b. happy c. sorry d. sad

44. My sister speaks very _____.
a. beautiful b. careful c. quiet d. quietly

45. This is a photo of my parents' _____.
a. married b. marry c. wedding d. weeding

46. The nurse works on the _____ for children.
a. stadium b. ward c. word d. playground

47. Please _____ sure that you write your emails carefully.
a. build b. take c. do d. make

48. It is usually easy to _____ with people in other countries if you speak English.
a. communicate b. listen c. shout d. cry





## Unit 3

49. Players score by throwing the ball into a goal in _____.
a. handball b. chess c. swimming d. karate

50. The _____ Egyptian handball team did not win the final in 2018.
a. ancient b. final c. nuclear d. senior

51. Teams from Africa never won the handball World Cup _____.
a. Ball b. Total c. Final d. Goal

52. To _____ means to be the first in a game or competition.
a. miss b. win c. lose d. earn

53. A _____ is an event when people try to get a prize by being the best at something.
a. charity b. coach c. competition d. team

54. A/An _____ does experiments to study and find out about how things work.
a. event b. hero c. worker d. scientist

55. A _____ knows how to look inside the body to help people who are ill.
a. scientist b. nurse c. surgeon d. chemist

56. The _____ Egyptian handball team won the under-19 World Cup Final in 2019.
a. junior b. poor c. general d. moral

57. A _____ gives money to people or place.
a. scientist b. patron c. surgeon d. coach

58. A _____ is a girl or woman.
a. man b. female c. male d. child

59. _____ is a sport with seven players in a team.
a. Tennis b. Boxing c. Handball d. Snorkelling

60. The Egyptian handball team won an important _____ in 2020.
a. competition b. station c. experiment d. expression

61. A natural _____ is a terrible event, such as an earthquake.
a. water b. science c. gas d. disaster

62. A _____ helps people who are poor, sick or don't have a home.
a. school b. charity c. museum d. theater

63. _____ the meat into small pieces before you cook it.
a. Boil b. Mend c. Pump d. Cut

64. The _____ is the area outside a city, where there are farms and lots of nature.
a. countryside b. earthquake c. mountain d. crescent

65. My grandmother was born in 1955 and my _____ grandmother was born in 1930!
a. big b. senior c. high d. great

66. If you are _____ of someone, you feel pleased with them.
a. interested b. bored c. proud d. keen

67. Dirty water from a river can _____ you if you drink it.
a. infect b. enjoy c. clean d. mend

68. The _____ tells the parts of our body what to do.
a. heart b. brain c. eye d. stomach



CamScanner

69. You can only open this door in a/an _____ such as a fire.
a. emergency b. charity c. pleasure d. organisation

70. The _____ pumps blood around the body.
a. stomache b. brain c. heart d. lung

71. Street _____ help to keep our cities clean.
a. builders b. makers c. walkers d. cleaners

72. I think rubbish _____ can be heroes.
a. reviewers b. managers c. collectors d. bakers

73. We went to my cousin's house this morning, but nobody was _____.
a. there b. their c. they are d. they're

74. I don't think I _____ the answer to this question.
a. go b. know c. no d. show

75. Warda is good at maths, and she's good at English, _____.
a. too b. two c. to d. twice

76. Athens is a great city and the Parthenon is _____ most famous building.
a. it is b. it's c. its' d. its

77. Are you taller _____ your brother?
a. that b. than c. this d. then

78. I bought _____ books yesterday.
a. two b. to c. too d. toe

79. You can give money to a _____ to help poor people.
a. charity b. farm c. beach d. cinema

80. Adam fell off his bike and had a big _____ on his arm.
a. pump b. way c. infection d. cut

81. A _____ teaches people how to play or improve a sport.
a. sports coach b. scientist c. teacher d. professor

82. A/An _____ is something serious or dangerous that you need to do something about.
a. charity b. emergency c. nature d. organisation

83. I always _____ money to a charity that helps poor children.
a. win b. make c. do d. give

84. When you are older, do you want to live in the city or the _____?
a. side b. earth c. countryside d. continent

85. A _____ worker helps people or animals that need help.
a. charity b. sports c. nuclear d. fruit

86. She helped to look _____ poor children in Egypt from 1920 to 1969.
a. for b. in c. after d. from

## Unit 4

87. Last year, I visited Karnak with my family. We saw the _____ temples.
a. ancient b. new c. difficult d. careless

88. A/An _____ is an entrance to another place.
a. pyramid b. arch c. view d. stone





89. You can watch a sports match at a/an _____.
a. entrance b. statue c. museum d. stadium

90. We pray at a/an _____.
a. mosque b. theatre c. pyramid d. arch

91. A/An _____ has very strong walls.
a. object b. desert c. castle d. ticket

92. A _____ is not a complete building.
a. stone b. ruin c. house d. hill

93. You might see a _____ in a museum.
a. castle b. race c. temple d. statue

94. Ancient Egyptians made _____ with clay from the Nile River.
a. pots b. insects c. papyrus d. magazines

95. Can you tell me the _____ of the ticket, please?
a. prize b. coin c. price d. object

96. Ancient Egyptians used _____ to help them paint around their eyes.
a. chairs b. mirrors c. wood d. floors

97. A _____ has four corners.
a. square b. bowl c. circle d. tool

98. There are more than 2,000 _____ in the museum.
a. prices b. subjects c. objects d. phones

99. The black and white _____ around this window are beautiful.
a. pages b. webs c. prices d. designs

100. _____ are pieces of money made of metal.
a. Bowls b. Pots c. Coins d. Figures

101. This chemical helps to keep _____ mosquitoes.
a. in b. away c. about d. over

102. A _____ is a model of a person, an animal or a sculpture.
a. figure b. design c. bowl d. vase

103. Tourists often travel by car. This makes more _____.
a. pollution b. tourism c. holiday d. history

104. It is important to protect all parts of the _____.
a. guide b. environment c. century d. pollution

105. _____ it will rain tomorrow, but I'm not sure.
a. May be b. May c. Might d. Might be

106. Don't play football here or you might _____ that car.
a. hurt b. injure c. damage d. repair

107. I love going to _____ places such as museums and ancient ruins.
a. historic b. scary c. cultured d. historian

108. Ali's uncle works for a big oil _____ in the United Arab Emirates.
a. work b. environment c. job d. company

109. _____ is very important for Egypt.
a. Pollution b. Tourism c. Holiday d. Flood



CamScanner

110. We have a _____ in the bathroom.
a. bed b. ruin c. temple d. mirror

111. A _____ is a pot used for holding flowers.
a. mask b. vase c. necklace d. figure

112. _____ means very old.
a. Modern b. Awesome c. Public d. Ancient

113. A _____ is what you can see from the top of something.
a. pyramid b. view c. review d. ruler

114. A _____ is a person who can show you round a place.
a. tourist b. professor c. manager d. guide

115. These bowls are made of _____.
a. clay b. flour c. air d. oil

116. Bees and ants are important _____.
a. birds b. planes c. insects d. guides

117. A _____ is something people wear to cover or protect their face.
a. glove b. mask c. helmet d. sock

## Unit 5

118. The bin is full. Please can you take _____ the rubbish?
a. up b. down c. out d. off

119. Karim is a happy person and always has a _____ on his face.
a. smile b. pencil case c. knife d. tablet

120. I help to look _____ my little sister when my parents are busy.
a. up b. after c. for d. to

121. Adam was surprised when a _____ walked into his shop.
a. relative b. friend c. teacher d. stranger

122. Amal finds it very easy to _____ friends because she is so friendly.
a. do b. give c. make d. hate

123. We all remember my grandfather's _____: he always helped us when we were children.
a. kindness b. weakness c. careless d. sadness

124. This book is _____. You should read it!
a. boring b. useless c. fantastic d. bad

125. Hala is a _____ person and there are often things on her bed.
a. tidy b. friendly c. kind d. messy

126. My clothes were clean and dry, so I put them all _____.
a. away b. up c. off d. in

127. Hala is very _____ and leaves her toys all over the floor.
a. tidy b. dirty c. missed d. messy

128. They gave the footballer a _____ test to check his health.
a. delicious b. random c. useless d. far





129. If someone is _____ to you, they are terrible to you.
a. kind b. nice c. good d. cruel

130. To _____ is to give something useful to a person or charity.
a. spend b. donate c. pick up d. call

131. A _____ is a small area and the people who live in it.
a. community b. country c. team d. communication

132. The Rod al-Farag Axis Bridge is the _____ bridge in the world.
a. tallest b. fattest c. widest d. youngest

133. Hala has to put _____ her toys.
a. up b. out c. away d. on

134. Samir helps to clean beaches and _____ rubbish.
a. tidies up b. picks up c. washes up d. buys

135. Nader and his brother have to _____ ready for school.
a. make b. get c. let d. eat

136. What _____ acts of kindness should you do next week?
a. cruel b. ugly c. bad d. random

137. People donate money to the charity and they help to _____ the animals.
a. eat b. kill c. feed d. hit

138. A _____ is the daughter of a king or queen.
a. prince b. beggar c. princess d. farmer

139. What is the name of a charity which you would like to _____ money to?
a. donate b. steal c. burn d. sell

140. A _____ takes you to the top of a building without using the stairs.
a. left b. lift c. gift d. ladder

## Unit 6

141. Please take your _____ home; do not leave it in the park.
a. fuel b. drought c. rubbish d. flood

142. Not many fish live in the river because it is very _____.
a. tasty b. disabled c. fantastic d. polluted

143. Bikes are a _____ form of transport because they use no fuel.
a. white b. green c. blue d. red

144. There was no rain for four months this winter, so now there is a/an _____.
a. flood b. volcano c. earthquake d. drought

145. Tourists visit the Red Sea from around the _____.
a. world b. cloud c. sky d. mountain

146. The hotel is now working with a charity that helps the coral _____.
a. roofs b. beef c. leaf d. reefs

147. The East Hotel is very new. Only _____ energy is used at the hotel.
a. black b. green c. blue d. yellow

148. We could use the water from washing to _____ plants.
a. water b. cut c. drink d. end



CamScanner

149. _____ on a beach is more relaxing than working in the city.
a. Burning b. Damaging c. Lying d. Aiming

150. A lot of our rubbish is _____ and this can lead to climate change.
a. reminded b. burned c. recycled d. reused

151. Global Recycling Day is an important _____ in March.
a. event b. match c. movie d. song

152. _____ is very important to Egypt.
a. Tourist b. Tourism c. Tour d. Pollution

153. _____ reefs are sometimes damaged by boats.
a. Car b. Oral c. Coral d. Plural

154. We need more rain or there might be a _____.
a. drought b. storm c. flood d. climate change

155. The Egyptians opened the Suez _____ in 1869.
a. River b. Canal c. Lake d. Sea

156. We should clean the river because it is very _____.
a. pollution b. pure c. polluted d. fresh

157. Which of these towns is _____ on the north-west coast of Egypt?
a. located b. donated c. hated d. closed

158. Tourists bought wonderful _____ from the market.
a. planes b. ships c. souvenirs d. buses

159. When there is not enough rain, there is often a/an _____.
a. flood b. storm c. drought d. earthquake

160. This month was _____ than last month because we had some big storms.
a. wettest b. wetter c. wet d. as wet

161. When the planet gets warmer, it is called _____ change.
a. climate b. pilot c. plate d. date

162. When ice is heated, it _____.
a. freezes b. cools c. melts d. burns

163. When there is too much rain, there is often a _____.
a. war b. flood c. drought d. match

164. When there is too much smoke from factories, it causes air _____.
a. pollution b. solution c. holiday d. conclusion

165. A/An _____ school is a place where students live as well as study.
a. interesting b. boarding c. boring d. losing

166. A/An _____ is something which you use to buy things with.
a. object b. arch c. museum d. coin

167. A _____ person is someone who cannot learn easily.
a. clever b. intelligent c. healthy d. disabled

168. I _____ my phone while I was texting my friend.
a. found b. won c. washed d. dropped





# SB & WB Exercises Language

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

## Unit 1

1. Hamdi doesn't _____ coffee for breakfast.
a. drinking b. drink c. is drinking d. drinks

2. What time _____ your first lesson start?
a. do b. doing c. does d. is

3. I _____ my homework before I have my dinner.
a. usually do b. do usually c. does usually d. usually does

4. Grandma, _____ you got a watermelon?
a. shall b. can c. has d. have

5. Hi! _____ we play a game next weekend?
a. Have b. Do c. Shall d. Has

6. _____ your father got a computer?
a. Has b. Shall c. Can d. Do

7. _____ I help you carry your books?
a. Am b. Does c. Shall d. Have

8. _____ your father got a blue car?
a. Have b. Has c. Can d. Shall

9. _____ I open the door for you?
a. Shall b. Have c. Am d. Was

## Unit 2

10. I usually _____ to school by bus, but today I am walking.
a. go b. goes c. went d. going

11. Why is Amal _____ tired?
a. feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling

12. Fady _____ a jacket today because it is very hot.
a. is wearing b. isn't wearing c. wears d. wear

13. Basel usually repairs computers, but today he _____ his grandparents.
a. visiting b. visits c. visit d. is visiting

14. Why _____ Hoda waving to those girls?
a. am b. are c. is d. can

15. The police officer _____ to another officer. They move quickly to catch the thief.
a. talks b. is talking c. are talking d. talk

16. The street-food seller usually makes falafel, but he _____ cheese sandwiches this morning.
a. is selling b. sells c. sell d. are selling



CamScanner

17. That's my sister. She is smiling _____ at the camera.
a. careless b. careful c. happy d. happily

18. It's at the end of the day and the guests are _____ leaving.
a. slow b. slowly c. happy d. careful

19. The teacher treats all her students _____.
a. kind b. bad c. kindly d. good

20. I'm waiting _____ to get on a plane for the first time.
a. excitedly b. excited c. careful d. hungrily

21. I'm sitting under a tree and _____ eating my lunch.
a. hungry b. beautiful c. hungrily d. beautifully

22. The children are singing _____ in the playground.
a. loudly b. loud c. happy d. careful

23. We're sitting _____ on the rocks because they are very sharp!
a. happy b. happily c. carefully d. careful

24. My cousins are not standing under the tree, they are _____ by the fountain.
a. sit b. sits c. sat d. sitting

25. I can't come to the park because I _____ the house today.
a. clean b. cleaning c. am cleaning d. cleans

26. Ola _____ sports today because she hurt her leg.
a. are not doing b. is not doing c. doesn't do d. don't do

27. On Saturday, I usually _____ time with my cousins.
a. spend b. spends c. spending d. am spending

28. Nabila feels ill, so she _____ in bed this morning.
a. staying b. is staying c. stay d. is stayed

29. Our football team will win because they are playing very _____.
a. good b. well c. badly d. bad

## Unit 3

30. My grandfather _____ work in 2015.
a. stopping b. stop c. will stop d. stopped

31. When Omar was 22, a shark attacked him and he _____ a leg.
a. is lost b. lost c. loses d. to lose

32. Magdy Yacoub _____ born in 1935.
a. was b. is c. be d. has

33. He started playing chess when he was very little and he _____ always very good at it.
a. does b. were c. has d. was

34. Egypt's football team _____ the Africa Cup of Nations in 2010.
a. win b. won c. to win d. winning

35. I used to _____ basketball, but I don't now.
a. played b. play c. playing d. plays





36. Before he got married, Yasser's dad _____ live in Cairo.
a. was using b. don't use to c. uses to d. didn't use to

37. When you were ten, _____ you use to live in a different house?
a. do b. does c. did d. to do

38. Yasser's uncle _____ live in Tunisia.
a. used to b. used c. using d. is used to

39. When she was a child, Yasser's Mum _____ play the piano every day.
a. was used to b. used to c. was using to d. use to

40. There _____ a hotel in our city ten years ago, but now there are three.
a. weren't b. didn't c. isn't d. didn't use to be

41. My grandfather _____ football when he was young, but he can't walk now.
a. play b. used to play c. use to play d. plays

42. Dina _____ give money to charity, but now she does.
a. used b. didn't use c. used to d. didn't use to

43. Yasser's grandmother _____ work in a hospital.
a. used to b. is used c. uses to d. is using to

44. Did Hossam Hassan _____ captain of the Egyptian Football Team?
a. uses to be b. was c. be d. use to be

45. My uncle Rashid _____ born in 1961.
a. were b. was c. is d. does

46. I started preparatory school a year _____.
a. at b. for c. in d. ago

47. He _____ a junior chess competition when he was only 12!
a. won b. win c. wins d. to win

48. My uncle _____ a firefighter, but now he is a police officer.
a. used to be b. is c. uses to be d. were

49. Where _____ live before you moved to Alexandria?
a. are you b. do you c. you used to d. did you use to

50. The girl _____ happily on the bed and talking on the phone.
a. has sat b. sit c. is sitting d. is sat

51. This train is going _____ so that it does not arrive late.
a. hard b. fast c. slowly d. quietly

52. _____ did you live when you were a child?
a. What b. Where c. Why d. Who

## Unit 4

53. You _____ put your rubbish in the bin.
a. must b. has c. mustn't d. isn't

54. You _____ listen to the teacher.
a. can't b. must c. mustn't d. doesn't



CamScanner

55. You ..... be quiet in the library.
a. am b. don't c. mustn't d. must

56. In a museum, you ..... touch the objects.
a. must b. can c. mustn't d. will

57. Cars ..... drive on this road so we can walk on it safely.
a. must b. mustn't c. doesn't d. isn't

58. You ..... touch any of the building because it is very old.
a. must b. can c. haven't d. mustn't

59. As Karim ..... photos of the animals, he lost his phone.
a. took b. is taking c. takes d. was taking

60. As my parents ..... the tickets, we decided what we wanted to see first.
a. are buying b. were buying c. buy d. bought

61. As we ..... home, Amir phoned me.
a. were travelling b. travelled c. travelling d. are travelling

62. As the teacher was talking, I ..... a question.
a. ask b. asked c. am asking d. were asking

63. We ..... on the train for hours before it finally arrived at the station.
a. are travelling b. travelling c. travel d. were travelling

64. I ..... my bag on the floor while I was taking a photo.
a. was putting b. will put c. put d. am putting

65. While we ..... around the museum, we found some amazing designs.
a. looking b. are looking c. will look d. were looking

66. When we ..... down for a picnic, lots of runners were running through the park.
a. was sitting b. sat c. sit d. to sit

67. While Mona was playing tennis, she ..... her arm.
a. is hurting b. was hurting c. hurts d. hurt

68. While we ..... to go into the museum, I saw my friend Amir.
a. waited b. are waiting c. were waiting d. wait

69. While I was reading my book, the phone ..... .
a. rang b. is ringing c. rings d. will ring

70. I ..... my homework when my sister called me.
a. was doing b. will do c. did d. am doing

71. You ..... leave large bags at the ticket office before you enter the castle.
a. are b. must c. have d. shall

72. The people were running quickly from the park because it ..... to rain.
a. starts b. is starting c. start d. started

73. You ..... eat inside the castle.
a. were b. must c. have d. mustn't

74. Most of the people ..... when the earthquake started.
a. sleep b. were sleeping c. slept d. will sleep





75. I ..... walk to school. I take the bus.
a. have to b. doesn't have to c. has to d. don't have to

76. You ..... drink lots of water after a run, but not before!
a. should b. can't c. doesn't have to d. shouldn't

77. It's a holiday today. We ..... to go to school.
a. have b. has c. don't have d. doesn't have

78. You ..... tell your teacher if you don't understand the lesson.
a. can't b. should c. shouldn't d. has to

79. You ..... buy your friend a present on his/her birthday.
a. should b. shouldn't c. should to d. aren't

80. My father ..... get up at six o'clock every day to go to work.
a. have to b. has to c. don't have to d. doesn't have

81. When you get on the bus, you ..... buy a ticket.
a. don't have to b. has to c. have to d. doesn't have to

82. It's going to be hot, so you ..... wear sunglasses and a hat.
a. have to b. don't have to c. shouldn't d. can't

83. At the weekends, I ..... get up early; I can stay in bed until 9 o'clock.
a. doesn't have to b. has to c. have to d. don't have to

84. My aunt Dalia is a person ..... is always very kind to me.
a. who b. which c. when d. where

85. She bought me the trainers ..... I wore when I played in the school volleyball team.
a. who b. where c. that d. when

86. I gave the shoes ..... are too small for me to my cousin.
a. who b. when c. where d. which

87. Ahmed is the boy ..... I met in primary school.
a. which b. who c. where d. when

88. That is the house ..... my grandmother was born.
a. which b. when c. where d. who

89. The boy ..... was my best friend at school moved to a different city.
a. when b. who c. which d. where

90. Let's go back to the beach ..... we went swimming last week.
a. when b. that c. who d. where

91. Tennis is a sport ..... my sister plays every week.
a. where b. when c. which d. who

92. It was the watch ..... my father gave me for my birthday.
a. that b. when c. who d. where

93. The books ..... he used to help me were his old schoolbooks.
a. which b. when c. where d. who



CamScanner

94. Mrs Sabri's the teacher _____ taught my sister.
a. which b. who c. where d. when

95. The café _____ I meet my friends sells delicious ice cream.
a. when b. where c. which d. who

96. You left the bag _____ you bought at the weekend at my house!
a. where b. which c. who d. when

97. There is an important test tomorrow, so you _____ play video games.
a. should b. have to c. has to d. shouldn't

98. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous, so you _____ do what your teachers tell you.
a. don't have to b. have to c. shouldn't d. can't

99. The place _____ I lost my watch was the garden.
a. when b. who c. that d. where

## Unit 6

100. I think that air pollution is as serious _____ water pollution.
a. just b. as c. too d. also

101. Bikes are _____ than cars.
a. green b. greenest c. greener d. more green

102. The volunteers want to make the canal _____.
a. cleaner b. more clean c. cleanest d. most clean

103. Mount Kenya is not _____ as Mount Kilimanjaro.
a. higher b. highest c. more high d. as high

104. The electric buses in Alexandria cause _____ air pollution.
a. less b. tallest c. least d. many

105. Recycling is _____ as using less electricity for the environment.
a. more important b. less important c. not important d. as important

106. Europe is not as _____ as Australia.
a. dry b. drier c. driest d. less dry

107. The pollution in the countryside is not as _____ as the pollution in cities.
a. worse b. bad c. worst d. most bad

108. Seats on the new buses are more comfortable _____ the old buses.
a. then b. that c. there d. than

109. A train is not as fast _____ a plane.
a. so b. too c. as d. just

110. Saudi Arabia is not _____ as Jordan.
a. wetter b. as wet c. wettest d. more wet

111. Nessma writes in English as _____ as she speaks it.
a. carefully b. more careful c. most careful d. careful

112. The drought this year is not as _____ as it was last year.
a. more dangerous b. less dangerous c. dangerous d. dangerously





113. Port Said is _____ to Suez by the Suez Canal.
a. connect b. connecting c. connects d. connected

114. Taha _____ for his funny stories.
a. are known b. knows c. is known d. knew

115. Tourists _____ hundreds of photos of the Pyramids every day.
a. is taken b. take c. taken d. are taken

116. The city _____ for its ships, which come and go from around the world.
a. is knowing b. is known c. known d. knows

117. Many ancient monuments and buildings are _____ in the city.
a. found b. find c. finding d. finds

118. Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited _____ thousands of people every year.
a. to b. for c. by d. with

119. The city _____ known for its delicious 'black honey'.
a. am b. are c. were d. is

120. Lots of food is _____ in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar.
a. grow b. grew c. grows d. grown

121. The North Hotel is _____ on a lovely beach.
a. locate b. located c. locates d. locating

122. Coral reefs are often _____ by scuba divers.
a. damaging b. damages c. damaged d. damage

123. Honey is _____ from sugar.
a. made b. make c. makes d. making

124. Lots of cotton _____ in the area.
a. are grown b. is grown c. grows d. is grow

125. Many fish are _____ in the sea near Port Said.
a. caught b. catching c. catches d. catch

126. Parts of the beach are _____ to tourists so that turtles are safe.
a. to closing b. closing c. closes d. closed

127. Recycling is not as important _____ using less water.
a. also b. too c. so d. as

128. A bike is not as _____ as a plane.
a. fast b. fastest c. faster d. faster than

129. Alexandria is not as _____ as Giza.
a. biggest b. bigger c. so bigger d. big

130. Ali says that football is not _____ as handball.
a. more difficult b. as difficult c. difficult d. difficult than

131. The train leaves at 9 tomorrow, so you _____ be late.
a. have to b. mustn't c. should d. can

132. The bowls in the museum were _____ than the tools.
a. the new b. newest c. newer d. more new

133. While Mona was watching television, she _____ an idea.
a. had b. has c. was having d. to have



CamScanner

**2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

## Unit 1

1. **B:** Yes, she ..... (do).
2. This is a nice restaurant. ..... (Do) we eat here, Hassan?

## Unit 2

3. Manal and Mona ..... (studies) calligraphy every day.
4. How often do you ..... (made) dinner?
5. What game is Osama ..... (play) on the computer?
6. My friend sews ..... (bad).
7. Mr Ahmed speaks English ..... (good).
8. Mr Osman ..... (live) in a lovely flat.
9. We ..... (learn) English now.
10. Maya and Rami ..... (text) their cousins in Canada now.
11. What time do you ..... (doing) your homework after school?
12. It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it is raining.

## Unit 3

13. Waleed ..... (be) a farmer for more than thirty years.
14. Aunt Leila ..... (lives) in England from 1995 to 2010.
15. Magdy Yacoub stopped most of his work as a surgeon a long time ..... (age).
16. Magdy Yacoub ..... (was helped) people with heart problems for many years.
17. Heba ..... (travel) to Canada a week ago.
18. Yasser's grandfather ..... (doesn't) use to know how to drive a car.
19. ..... (Do) you use to have a lot of homework?
20. How did you ..... (used) to go to school?
21. What games did you ..... (used) to play with your friends?
22. When older parents died, they used to ..... (left) thier houses to the sons.
23. I ..... (go) to primary school for six years.
24. In 1990, he ..... (becomes) the number one chess player in our city.
25. ..... (When) time did you usually get up?
26. Huda and Fareeda ..... (studies) hard because they have an English test next week.
27. Nabila is talking ..... (quiet) to her friend because they are working in a library.

## Unit 4

28. You ..... (must) run inside the building of the school.
29. You ..... (mustn't) buy your ticket before you enter.
30. You ..... (should) drink this water; it's dirty.
31. As I was walking to school, it ..... (start) to rain.
32. As Mr Badr was walking to work, he ..... (was seeing) an old friend.





33. While I was doing my homework, I ..... (drop) my pencil.
34. You ..... (must) touch the stones of the Pyramids.
35. While I ..... (am playing) on the computer, I found out an interesting fact.
36. We were all laughing when he ..... (finishes) that funny story.

## Unit 5

37. At school, I ..... (don't have) to arrive on time.
38. The market is a place ..... (when) I often get lost!
39. The tourists ..... (what) visit Egypt always love the ancient temples.
40. That's the teacher ..... (which) teaches us maths.
41. This is the museum ..... (when) we saw amazing statues.
42. Students shouldn't ..... (forgot) how it feels when they start school.
43. I love the trainers ..... (who) are blue and red.
44. You ..... (should) run if your legs hurt.

## Unit 6

45. Mount Catherine is a ..... (high) mountain than Jabal Mousa.
46. Tamer likes reading as ..... (many) as he likes playing computer games.
47. The football players are not playing as ..... (good) as they did last week.
48. I think that the river is more polluted ..... (then) it was last year.
49. Which is ..... (more far) to walk to, the park or the museum?
50. Is your cousin ..... (more old) than your brother?
51. Port Said is ..... (locate) in the north-east of Egypt.
52. Giza is ..... (knowing) for its ancient pyramids.
53. A lot of oranges ..... (is) grown along the river.
54. Who is as ..... (taller) as you in the class?
55. Plastic pollution is ..... (worst) now than it was before.
56. The fish that we eat are ..... (catch) in boats most mornings.
57. The Pyramids ..... (is) visited by thousands of people every day.
58. Which school subject do you find as interesting ..... (so) English?
59. Mohammed Salah ..... (known) by people everywhere.
60. Who in your family is not as ..... (better) at English as you?
61. Sport is ..... (watch) by people around the world.
62. Is the weather this week as ..... (hottest) as it was last week?
63. The turtle ..... (who) the boys helped walked to the sea.
64. Playing sport is ..... (good) for you than playing computer games.
65. You ..... (should) eat too many sweets. They are bad for you.
66. Huda's grandparents arrived while she ..... (put) her clothes away.



CamScanner

Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

1. "Your daily routine"

2. "What you and your family usually do in the holidays"

3. "A description of your bedroom"

4. "Different people in your family"

5. "A description of your friends' photo"

6. "What makes a hero"

7. "How your life used to be"

8. "How life used to be different in Ancient Egypt"

9. "Your city / village in the past and today"





10. "A description of a historic place you visited"

11. "What you think of tourism. Is it good or bad for historic places? Why?"

12. "The rules for a place you will visit"

13. "What do you think we can do to protect the environment"

14. "A story about a girl helping the poor"

15. "How you can recycle rubbish at school"

16. "How to use less water"

17. "Helping the environment"



CamScanner

**Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:**

18. to your penfriend John about your new house.
- Your name is Omar and your email address is omar22@yahoo.com
- Your penfriend's email address is john55@gmail.com

19. to your new penfriend Jessica about yourself.
- Your name is Nourhan and your email address is nour85@yohoo.com.
- Your penfriend's email address is Jessica14@gmail.com

20. To your friend Sara telling her about a trip to Al Azhar Park.
- Your name is Salma and your email address is salmazaki@gmail.com
- Your friend's email address is sarahamdi@yahoo.com

21. to your friend Nadi(a) telling him/ her about a person you are proud of:
- Your name is Radi(a) and your email address is radi(a)ali@yahoo.com
- Your friend's email address is nadi(a)omar@gmail.com

22. to your friend Fawzi(a) describing an object in your home.
- Your name is Shadi(a) and your email address is shadi(a)post@gmail.com
- Your friend's email address is fawzi(a)mail@yahoo.com

23. to your penfriend telling him/ her about your school rules.
- Your name is Fadi(a) and your email address is fadi(a)666@gmail.com
- Your penfriend's name is George(ina) and his / her email address is george(ina)55@yahoo.com



# End of Term Practice

مجاب عنه فى آخر الكتاب

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:**

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. What is Aya's father's job?
   a. a shop worker  b. a teacher
   c. a street-food seller  d. it doesn't say
2. Why must Aya stay at home every day?
   a. to work  b. to study
   c. to look after her brothers and sisters  d. to plant trees
3. Where does Aya have to go in the evenings?
   a. to school  b. to the shops
   c. to a park  d. to her teacher's house
4. How does Aya feel when she gets home?
   a. tired but grateful  b. angry  c. hungry  d. sad

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Manal : I can't come to your family party next weekend because my grandfather is in hospital.

Leila : ① ..... to hear that, Manal. I'll get something.

Manal : ② ....., Leila?

Leila : I mean I'll buy him something that you can take to the hospital.

Manal : ③ ..... don't we buy him something together?

Leila : That's an interesting ④ ..... What can we get him?

Manal : We ⑤ ..... buy him a magazine to read.

Leila : Good idea!



CamScanner

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions.**

In 1925, a British adventurer called Leonard Woolley was exploring a palace in ancient Babylon (which is located in Iraq today), when he discovered a strange collection of objects. The objects all had labels on them and Woolley realised that this was probably the world's first ever museum! Woolley knew that rich people in the past used to collect special objects in their houses. In Babylon, the palace was the home of Princess Ennigaldi in the year 530 BCE. Some of the objects, however, were about 1,500 years older. Woolley did not know much about Princess Ennigaldi, but he learned that people were interested in history in the past as much as they are interested in it today. Isn't that fantastic?

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What was Leonard Woolley exploring in 1925?

.....

2. Why did he think the objects were from a museum?

.....

3. What does the underlined word **"them"** refer to?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Some of the objects in the museum were .....
   a. about 2,000 years old  b. the same age as the palace
   c. newer than the palace  d. a lot older than the palace
5. What do you think the word ***collection*** means?
   a. a palace  b. an innovation
   c. things without names  d. things you keep together
6. What did Leonard Woolley learn about people in the past?
   a. They all had museums  b. They were interested in history
   c. They were all very rich  d. They were all fantastic

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. .....work in the street. They sell food.
   a. Call-centre workers  b. Nurses
   c. Engineers  d. Street-food sellers
2. Many people in the city live in a ..... of flats.
   a. black  b. block  c. chest  d. house
3. The mountain was very high and we all felt ..... at the top because we thought we might fall!
   a. scary  b. scared  c. happy  d. tall





4. Kareem's cousin is ..... and never puts his books away.
   a. messy  b. cruel  c. serious  d. tidy
5. Eyad works as a ..... for a charity that helps to clean the local beach.
   a. patient  b. figure  c. model  d. volunteer
6. Where did your grandparents .....?
   a. lived  b. used to live  c. use to live  d. living
7. The nurse is a ..... She saved a lot of people.
   a. hero  b. beggar  c. manager  d. servant
8. While Hassan ..... to school, he saw a famous squash player.
   a. was walking  b. is walking  c. walked  d. walks
9. You must not ..... the objects in the museum.
   a. touch  b. belong to  c. relax  d. see
10. The new book ..... I bought is very interesting.
    a. who  b. where  c. which  d. when

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. The Egyptian handball team ..... (win) the competition last year.
2. Karim .....take) a photo of the museum at the moment.
3. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world.
4. Mona ..... (have) to wear the uniform at school.

**6 Choose one of the following:**

- **Write an email of 85-95 words to a penfriend telling him or her about your daily routine.**
- **Write a blog of 85-95 words about a historic place you visited.**

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



CamScanner

# Final Exams

## Exam 1 — Cairo - El Marg

### A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

نصوص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. What is Soha's job?
   a. Teacher  b. Nurse  c. Seller  d. Engineer
2. Where does she work?
   a. Shop  b. School  c. Farm  d. Hospital
3. How many children does she have?
   a. One  b. Two  c. Three  d. Four
4. How does she feel after work?
   a. Tired  b. Sad  c. Happy  d. Unhappy

### B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Tamer is asking Ahmed about his father's job.

Tamer : Hi, Ahmed. What's your father's job?

Ahmed : ① .....

Tamer : ② .....?

Ahmed : He works in Amr Ibn Al-Ass Prep School.

Tamer : ③ .....?

Ahmed : He teaches English.

Tamer : Do his students like him?

Ahmed : ④ .....

Tamer : Did you want to be a teacher like him?

Ahmed : ⑤ .....





### C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Every morning, I wake up at 6 a.m. I brush my teeth. Then I go to the kitchen and make breakfast. I usually have eggs and some toast. At the weekend, I have cheese and milk. I usually read the news while having breakfast. After I finish breakfast, I wash the dishes. I leave the house at 7:30 am. I usually take the train to work. It takes about 40 minutes to reach. I arrive at work at around 8:00. I have lunch there. I usually finish work at 6:00 pm. I arrive home at about 7:00. I cook dinner. I usually listen to music while eating dinner. After dinner, I read for about an hour on the sofa. I watch TV before I go to bed at 10:00.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the best title for this text? .....
2. How does the writer go to his work?
3. How long does it take to arrive at his /her work?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "**there**" refers to .....
   a. work  b. home  c. train  d. nothing
5. The writer reads on the ..... before watching TV.
   a. table  b. sofa  c. bed  d. armchair
6. The underlined word "**around**" means .....
   a. by  b. exactly  c. about  d. near

### D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Don't pay ..... the ticket; it is for free.
   a. for  b. with  c. on  d. off
2. Doctors and nurses are nowadays doing ..... work.
   a. stupid  b. heroic  c. simple  d. ugly
3. The new book ..... I bought is very interesting.
   a. that  b. who  c. where  d. when
4. I study ..... to make my handwriting better.
   a. geography  b. biography  c. maths  d. calligraphy
5. A/An ..... is a boy or a girl aged 13-19.
   a. child  b. teenager  c. baby  d. old man



CamScanner

6. While Ahmed ..... to school, he met a famous actor.
   a. walks b. walking c. was walking d. walked
7. Some countries have no rain, so there is a ..... there.
   a. flood b. drought c. pollution d. storm
8. When I open the ..... in my room, there is a lot of sunlight.
   a. carpet b. basin c. curtains d. bookshelf
9. The ..... tells the parts of our body what to do.
   a. leg b. heart c. lung d. brain
10. The book is ..... You should read it.
    a. fantastic b. bad c. ugly d. boring

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Sara's dress is ..... (expensive) than Ahmed's suit.
2. The cat is sitting under the tree ..... (lazy).
3. My brother ..... (do) his homework now.
4. He always ..... (getting) up early for his school.

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"What you usually do on holidays"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

## Exam 2 Giza - Mansheyet Al Kanater

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Sameera Mousa was born in .....
   a. 1971 b. 1719 c. 1917 d. 1970
2. Where did she study? - At ..... University.
   a. Zagazig b. Cairo c. Mansoura d. Alexandria
3. She wanted to use her science in .....
   a. medicine b. engineering c. space d. mathematics
4. When did Sameera Mousa die? - In .....
   a. 1592 b. 1950 c. 1925 d. 1952





## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Ali asks Maher about his daily routine.**

Ali : Can I ask you some questions?
Maher : ① .....
Ali : ② .....?
Maher : I get up at 6:30 am.
Ali : What do you usually do before going to school?
Maher : ③ .....
Ali : ④ .....?
Maher : Yes, I sometimes listen to music on my way to school.
Ali : What activity do you do every week?
Maher : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

We should all be proud of Dr Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935 in Billbeis, but his family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, he worked in a **special** hospital in London. At this hospital, Magdy helped to give people new hearts for the first time. Before 1980s, people with heart problems often used to die. In 2009, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.
   .....
2. Why did Magdy Yacoub's family use to travel to many places?
   .....
3. Why do you think Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children?
   .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The birthplace of Dr Magdy Yacoub is .....
   a. Aswan b. Cairo c. London d. Billbeis
5. The underlined word "special" means .....
   a. usual b. very big c. not usual d. very old
6. Before 1980s, people with ..... problems used to die.
   a. heart b. liver c. lungs d. ears



CamScanner

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. This ..... is comfortable three people can sit on it.
   a. chair b. table c. sofa d. armchair
2. Kind people always ..... to charities to help the poor.
   a. feed b. donate c. hurt d. forget
3. You ..... eat or drink in a museum.
   a. can b. must c. mustn't d. should
4. ..... are pieces of money made of metal.
   a. Coins b. Figures c. Cans d. Masks
5. I ..... the football match at 6 o'clock yesterday.
   a. watch b. watching c. watched d. was watching
6. ..... is a great problem for the environment. We should solve it.
   a. Pollution b. Cleaning c. Rain d. Tourism
7. Random means happening without a .....
   a. plane b. plan c. plant d. panel
8. The scientist ..... discovered the femto second was Dr Zewail.
   a. which b. where c. who d. when
9. This book is ..... You should read it.
   a. boring b. terrible c. bad d. fantastic
10. Tamer ..... me to his parents during his birthday party.
    a. introduced b. agreed c. kept d. managed

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Ahmed ..... (always is) helpful.
2. Waleed did very ..... (good) in his exams last week.
3. ..... (Have) your father got a car?
4. Listen, the birds ..... (sing) in the trees.

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"Working for a charity"





# Exam 3 Al Kalubia - Qaha

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Who is Magdy Yacoub?
   a. A teacher b. A heart surgeon
   c. A computer engineer d. A sports coach
2. Where was he born?
   a. in London b. in France c. in Billbeis d. in Alexandria
3. When was he born?
   a. in 1935 b. in 1930 c. in 1960 d. in 1635
4. Why should we be proud of Magdy Yacoub?
   a. Because he is an important heart surgeon.
   b. Because he helps people with heart problems.
   c. Because he started charities in 2009.
   d. All of these.

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Leila is talking to Manal about charities.

Leila : Where do you spend your weekend?

Manal : ① .....

Leila : What do you do at that charity?

Manal : ② .....

Leila : ③ ..... ?

Manal : We give them money and things they need.

Leila : ④ ..... ?

Manal : Yes, there are many disabled old people.

Leila : Can I join that charity?

Manal : ⑤ .....



CamScanner

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

The celebration of Earth Day began in the city of San Francisco on March21th which was the first day of Spring. Earth Day is important because it reminds us to stop and look at the problems of our environment. This causes health problems to people. Each of us must do his part to recycle and reuse products instead of throwing them away. Earth Day is now celebrated each year on April 22nd. Schools around the world take part in making our world a cleaner place. Students volunteer to pick up rubbish at their schools, homes and streets to do their part in helping our environment.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Where did Earth Day begin?

.....

2. When is the Earth Day celebrated now?

.....

3. What is the importance of Earth Day?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. What does the Earth Day help us to do?

a. Pick up rubbish

b. Clean up our water sources

c. Think of ways to recycle materials

d. All of them

5. The underlined word **"their"** refers to.....

a. streets b. products c. environments d. students

6. What can students do to celebrate the Earth Day?

a. Have a party for it b. Sing songs

c. Pick up rubbish in their community d. None of them

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I have an important ..... today. I hope to get the job.

a. view b. group c. interview d. review

2. You should learn how to ..... your free time.

a. do b. leave c. have d. spend





3. Can you tell me the ..... of the brain?

a. homework b. function c. charity d. career

4. My mother likes to make her own clothes by herself. She likes .....

a. sewing b. sawing c. swimming d. reading

5. My sister is a nurse. She helps her ..... to get better.

a. diseases b. illnesses c. patients d. medicines

6. A ..... person is a person who can't hear.

a. blind b. deaf c. week d. strong

7. An earthquake is a natural ..... that causes a lot of terrible things.

a. disaster b. event c. volunteer d. dream

8. She stopped ..... e-mails to me.

a. send b. sends c. sent d. sending

9. You shouldn't drink polluted water to be safe from.....

a. infection b. infect c. infects d. infected

10. The boys are waiting ..... for the football match to start.

a. excite b. excited c. exciting d. excitedly

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Mona ..... (learn) a new skill at the moment.
2. Tamer sometimes ..... (have) lunch at school.
3. My sister is smiling ..... (happy) at the camera.
4. Saudi Arabia is not as ..... (wet) Jordan.

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"My daily routine"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



CamScanner

# Exam 4 Al Sharkia - Diarb Negm

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Who is your hero?
   a. Sameera Mousa  b. Magdy Yacoub
   c. Omar Abdelkader  d. Fatma Ismail
2. When was he/she born?
   a. in 1994  b. in 1949  c. in 1940  d. in 1900
3. When he/she was 22 he lost a /an .....
   a. eye  b. arm  c. hand  d. leg
4. Now, he/she is an important .....
   a. doctor  b. pilot  c. sports coach  d. engineer

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Noor is asking Hala about her mother's job.

Noor : What is your mother's job?
Hala : ① .....
Noor : ② .....?
Hala : She works at a clinic.
Noor : ③ .....?
Hala : She helps the doctors.
Noor : How does she get to her work?
Hala : ④ .....
Noor : Would you like to be like her?
Hala : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Reading is a very good habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics and underline the important points with your pen to remember what you read. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends.

People read for many and different goals. Some read for enjoyment; just to feel happy and spend a nice time. Others read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails and letters that we receive.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   .....
2. Why do you think reading is useful for a student?
   .....
3. How can you remember what you read?
   .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Reading isn't a ..... habit.
   a. good  b. useful  c. careful  d. bad
5. The underlined word "It" refers to .....
   a. goals  b. people  c. glasses  d. reading
6. The underlined word "enjoyment" in the passage means .....
   a. discussion  b. sadness  c. pleasure  d. swimming

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. It is polite to say sorry when you ..... something wrong.
   a. play  b. help  c. make  d. do
2. Our phone is broken. Can you ..... it?
   a. make  b. do  c. mix  d. repair
3. The ..... Egyptian team won the under 19 World Cup Final in 2022.
   a. junior  b. oldest  c. children  d. senior
4. A lot of Muslims go to ..... to pray.
   a. churches  b. castles  c. mosques  d. markets
5. "I see what you mean" means I ..... you.
   a. believe  b. book  c. understand  d. destroy
6. A ..... is someone who works in someone's home.
   a. beggar  b. servant  c. volunteer  d. prince




CamScanner

7. _____ is the process of making air, water and soil dirty.
a. Earthquake b. Pollution c. Flood d. Drought

8. The furniture _____ by Amina.
a. buy b. bought c. is bought d. are bought

9. This is the flat _____ I bought.
a. who b. which c. when d. where

10. . While I _____ the match, I fell asleep.
a. was watching b. were watching c. watching d. watch

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Everyone in the picture _____ (be) happy.
2. I _____ (watch) the match at seven o'clock yesterday.
3. She _____ (use) to be active, but now she is.
4. She _____ (make) tea now.

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"Egypt"

## Exam 5 Al Gharbia - Basioun

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Who is Amal looking after at a hospital?
a. Children b. Visitors c. Nurses d. Doctors

2. Amal is a _____.
a. nurse b. doctor c. teacher d. patient

3. The hospital is very _____.
a. free b. busy c. empty d. small

4. Amal is looking forward to going home and have a _____.
a. meal b. cup c. shower d. rest





## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Hala and Nora are talking about holidays.

Hala : Where did you go last holiday?
Nora : ① _____.
Hala : ② _____?
Nora : I stayed in my uncle's flat.
Hala : How did you travel to Alexandria?
Nora : ③ _____.
Hala : ④ _____?
Nora : Yes, I swam in the sea. There were a lot of dolphins.
Hala : What did you eat there?
Nora : ⑤ _____.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

The person I **admire** is my grandfather. He was born in 1940. He worked as a doctor. He worked in a big hospital. All people there liked him because he was kind and helpful. I admire **him** because he did voluntary work and helped people for no money.

I like him because he gave me many presents and helped me a lot. He used to help the poor and give them money. He always advised me to help people all the times. When he died last year, people were all sad. He left all his money for poor people and asked us to build a hospital for them.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What's the main idea of the passage?
_____

2. What did your grandfather leave for the poor?
_____

3. What does the underlined word "**him**" refer to?
_____

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The word "**admire**" means _____.
a. dislike b. hate c. kill d. love

5. My grandfather advised me to _____.
a. be a doctor b. help people c. build a school d. be a volunteer

6. My grandfather asked us to build a _____ for poor people.
a. hospital b. charity c. bank d. library



CamScanner

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We all ..... sad after she lost her son.
   a. knew b. fed c. brought d. felt
2. They have a ..... of drawers for their clothes.
   a. block b. chest c. lamp d. sofa
3. The team hopes to win the ..... to get the cup.
   a. junior b. senior c. final d. sport
4. The students in our school ..... 15 bags of rubbish today .
   a. corrected b. collected c. infected d. spent
5. Students ..... turns to answer the questions.
   a. plan b. do c. make d. take
6. I see a ..... man who can't walk and uses a wheelchair.
   a. messy b. generous c. disabled d. clever
7. If you go to a/an ..... school, you stay all day and all night there.
   a. boarding b. primary c. village d. prep
8. A nurse ..... the little boy to bed and spoke to him softly.
   a. putting b. puts c. put d. was put
9. I saw the school ..... has three floors.
   a. who b. which c. where d. whose
10. A bike is not as fast ..... a car.
    a. so b. than c. that d. as

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Eslam usually ..... (play) football on Friday.
2. Look! The boys ..... (come) home.
3. The girls are playing ..... (happy) in the street.
4. When it is a holiday, I ..... (not has) to get up early.

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"What you should do on holiday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Exam 6

Al Dakahlia - Belkas



## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Ancient Egyptian ..... used to use plants to help people with burns.
   a. doctors b. engineers c. vets d. actors
2. We still use these ..... today.
   a. medicine b. drugs c. plants d. liquids
3. These plants help people with .....
   a. toothache b. cough c. headache d. burns
4. The ancient Egyptian doctors were .....
   a. bad b. clever c. silly d. sad

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Bill is doing a research about Giza Pyramids.

Messi : What are you doing?

Bill : ① .....

Messi : Where are the Pyramids?

Bill : ② .....

Messi : ③ .....?

Bill : The Ancient Egyptians built them.

Messi : ④ .....?

Bill : About 4000 years ago.

Messi : Can anyone visit them?

Bill : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Climate change has bad effects on our planet. The rise of temperature can cause serious problems. Climate change in Australia, for example, makes the weather hotter and drier. More droughts mean worse fires than ever before. Also, climate change can affect ice on top of mountains badly. When much ice melts, it causes floods. We



CamScanner

should help the environment and stop this rise of temperature. Some places on Earth are in a great danger because of the climate change. We can help by controlling the amount of pollution. This pollution forms because of carbon dioxide which results from exhaust gases, burning straw and factory smoke. So we should work hard to keep our environment clean and try to avoid climate change.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2. How can we protect our environment?

.....

3. What do you think of pollution?

.....

**B.** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....
   a. climate change  b. ice  c. Australia  d. environment
5. Climate change in Australia makes the weather .....
   a. drier  b. hotter  c. better  d. drier and hotter
6. ..... is a cause of climate change.
   a. Floods  b. Carbon dioxide  c. Ice  d. Droughts

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Shams is good at maths and she is good at English. .....
   a. too  b. also  c. so  d. either
2. While ..... to school, I fell down.
   a. ran  b. runs  c. was running  d. running
3. I go to school every day, every day is .....
   a. noun  b. adverb  c. verb  d. adjective
4. "Ancient" is to "modern" as "true" is to .....
   a. unknown  b. great  c. false  d. tiny
5. Skipping breakfast is a bad .....
   a. meal  b. custom  c. routine  d. usual
6. Ali forgot ..... the food for the picnic, he bought it yesterday.
   a. to bring  b. bought  c. bringing  d. brings
7. My six- -old cousin is here.
   a. weeks  b. year  c. years  d. days





8. Dan is my ..... We chat only online.
   a. friend  b. penfriend  c. keypal  d. brother
9. It was ..... an exciting party.
   a. such  b. so  c. as  d. very
10. The earthquake is a natural .....
    a. kindness  b. disorder  c. disaster  d. infection

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. Ali was reading while Mum ..... (cook)
2. We bought a villa ..... (when) is near our school.
3. Giza ..... (know) for its ancient Pyramids.
4. He ..... (not has) to speak loudly.

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"How to keep your village or city clean"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Exam 7 Al Behira - Kom Hamada

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The Ancient Egyptians used ..... for making food.
   a. plastic plates  b. bowls  c. pots  d. both a and b
2. Pots were made of .....
   a. mud  b. clay  c. wood  d. metal
3. Clay was taken from the .....
   a. Red Sea  b. beach  c. lake  d. River Nile
4. The Ancient Egyptians were very .....
   a. bad  b. evil  c. clever  d. stupid



CamScanner

# Exam 8 Al Menofia - Tala

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. What did Huda give to the poor woman?
   a. A sandwich and some money. b. A cold drink
   c. Some money and a cold drink d. Some money
2. When did Huda give these things to the woman?
   a. Last Friday b. Last Saturday c. Last Tuesday d. Last Thursday
3. Where does Huda work?
   a. In a hospital b. In a bank c. In a school d. In a hotel
4. What did the poor woman give Huda?
   a. Some money b. a cold drink c. A big smile d. A hot drink

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Nada is talking to Mariam about Mona.

Nada : Do you know that our friend Mona is in hospital?
Mariam : ❶ ..... ?
Nada : Because she had an accident.
Mariam : ❷ ..... ?
Nada : Yesterday.
Mariam : So. Should we visit her?
Nada : ❸ .....
Mariam : ❹ .....
Nada : Tomorrow is a good idea. What about buying her a present?
Mariam : ❺ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Does the sound of an insect in your room bother you? There are more than 900,000 kinds of insects, but scientists think that only about 80% percent of the world's species have been studied. In the future, we will probably find many more. So before you get rid of the annoying insects in your room, remember that they can play an important





part in our ecosystem. They help plants to grow, they remove natural rubbish and they are food for many birds and animals. Some scientists think that insects are healthy to eat. They think that more and more people will have started to eat insects by the time their grandchildren are adults. Some insects are annoying and some are dangerous, but other insects may be more useful than you realize!

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What percent of insects haven't scientists studied?
   .....
2. Find a word from the passage that has the same meaning as "annoy".
   .....
3. In what ways can insects help the ecosystem?
   .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. What do many people do with insects that are annoying? .....
   a. They get rid of them b. They eat them
   c. They give them to their grandchildren d. They put them in a room
5. When do some scientists think that more people will eat insects?
   a. After the time their grandchildren are adults.
   b. By the time their children are adults
   c. By the time their grandchildren are adults.
   d. After the time their children are adults.
6. The main idea of this passage is that ..... .
   a. insects can be useful b. plants can be useful
   c. animals can be useful d. rubbish can be useful

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. He used to be fat, but now he..... .
   a. hasn't b. doesn't c. don't d. isn't
2. Can you ..... my mother for me? - My phone is not working.
   a. taste b. text c. exit d. test
3. She feels ..... when some men take her father from their home.
   a. interesting b. pleased c. glad d. terrible
4. The house ..... we bought last year was very expensive.
   a. when b. who c. which d. where
5. The nurse works on the ..... for children.
   a. wrap b. award c. ward d. reward
6. Doctors used to use plants to help people with burns and to stop ..... .
   a. infections b. facts c. subjects d. activities



CamScanner

7. ..... aren't a complete building.
a. Castles b. Statues c. Arches d. Ruins

8. This chemical helps to keep ..... mosquitoes.
a. way b. away c. a way d. road

9. Don't play football here or you might ..... that car.
a. hurt b. injure c. damage d. repair

10. Many fish ..... in the sea near Port Said.
a. are caught b. is caught c. caught d. catch

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. He ..... (not wear) a jacket today because it is very hot.
2. My home city ..... (locate) near the Nile.
3. He likes reading as ..... (many) as he likes computer games.
4. When ice warms, it ..... (is melt).

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"How can we recycle rubbish at school?"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

## Exam 9 Bani Suif - Smesta

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Cleopatra's Needle is in ..... now.
a. London b. Cairo c. Paris d. Jordan

2. How high is Cleopatra's Needle? - It's more than ..... meters high.
a. 10 b. 20 c. 30 d. 40

3. They took it there on a large .....
a. metro b. bus c. ship d. train

4. The stone is very .....
a. light b. heavy c. small d. tiny





## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Omar is talking with Ramy at break.

Omar : Hello, Ramy. How are you?
Ramy : Hello, Omar ❶ .....
Omar : ❷ .....?
Ramy : I get up early at 6:30 am.
Omar : What's your favourite sport?
Ramy : ❸ .....
Omar : I also like football. ❹ .....?
Ramy : I play football three times a week.
Omar : Why don't we play football tomorrow?
Ramy : ❺ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Egypt is one of the most fantastic countries in the Middle East. **It** is located in the north-east of Africa. Cairo is its capital. Egypt is famous for its very old monuments such as the temples, the Pyramids, and the Sphinx. Millions of tourists come to Egypt every year to enjoy seeing those wonders. Moreover, they like to visit the Egyptian Museum to see some objects from the past. These objects help them understand what life was like many years ago. They spend most of their time on the Red Sea Coast where there are a lot of fantastic islands. These islands are all nature reserves. They are very important as they have coral reefs and lots of wildlife. As a result, the Ministry of Tourism does its best to protect them.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
.....
2. What's Egypt famous for?
.....
3. Do you think that tourists enjoy their visit to Egypt?
.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The word "....." means animals and plants that live in natural conditions.
a. wildlife b. pyramids c. monuments d. temples

5. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to .....
a. Cairo b. Egypt c. Africa d. the Museum

6. ..... of tourists visit Egypt every year.
a. Hundreds b. Thousands c. Millions d. Billions



CamScanner

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. ..... from cars is bad for the environment. It damages it.
   a. Pollution b. Milk c. Juice d. Water
2. Deaf people communicate with each other in ..... language.
   a. foreign b. sign c. music d. English
3. A ..... does operations and helps people who are ill.
   a. teacher b. farmer c. surgeon d. patron
4. I love ..... places like Karnak Temple in Luxor.
   a. modern b. historic c. new d. history
5. My grandpa has a big house with a/an ..... garden. It's beautiful.
   a. attractive b. bad c. ugly d. sad
6. My friends live in a block of .....
   a. doors b. boats c. flats d. drawers
7. Nadia never ..... to music on her way to school.
   a. listen b. listening c. listened d. listens
8. Lots of cotton is ..... in Minia.
   a. grown b. grew c. grows d. growing
9. While he was ..... TV, the light went out.
   a. watch b. watches c. watching d. watched
10. A person whose age is between 13 and 19 is called a/an .....
    a. baby b. teenager c. old d. elderly

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. The child is laughing ..... (happy).
2. I used to ..... (reading) books in the library.
3. You ..... (has to) wear a uniform.
4. Tennis is a sport ..... (who) we play every week.

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"Your typical day"





# Exam 10 Al Menia - El Edwa

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Who is speaking?
   a. A teacher b. A student c. A worker d. A nurse
2. How much money does he/ she get from his /her father every day?
   a. five pounds b. six pounds c. three pounds d. one pound
3. What did he /she buy?
   a. A sandwhich b. A cake c. A pizza d. An ice cream
4. Who does he /she give the left two pounds?
   a. A poor man b. His father c. His mother d. His brother

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

A tourist is asking Ahmed some questions.

Tourist : Excuse me, can I ask you some questions?
Ahmed : ①.....
Tourist : ②.....?
Ahmed : Karnak Temple is in Luxor.
Tourist : How can I go there?
Ahmed : ③.....
Tourist : Can I visit other places in Luxor?
Ahmed : ④.....
Tourist : ⑤.....?
Ahmed : Yes, you will enjoy the weather there.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

My hero is not a famous footballer or a famous singer. My hero is my father. He is a simple farmer. He didn't have the chance to go to school when he was young, but he always encourages me to work hard at school as **he** thinks farming is a good job, but a hard one. He also keeps sheep and cows. He works hard for us. He gives me all the money I need. He is honest and kind. He can't read or write, but he is a wise man. Although my father is poor, I am proud of him.



CamScanner

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think the father wants the boy to be a farmer? Why? Why not?

.....

2. What do you think of the son?

.....

3. Why can't the father read or write?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The father is..... .
   a. rich b. lazy c. wise d. cowardly
5. "Poor" is the opposite of .....
   a. careful b. rich c. clever d. good
6. The underlined word "**he**" refers to..... .
   a. the father b. the son c. the farm d. the sheep

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I ..... the same room with my brother.
   a. share b. shade c. shave d. check
2. My neighbour is a street food..... .
   a. sailor b. seller c. teller d. tailor
3. What did he use to ..... when he was young?
   a. does b. did c. doing d. do
4. You should ..... politely with your friends.
   a. behave b. behalf c. behaviour d. half
5. Roqaia was a ..... for the Red Crescent.
   a. voluntary b. tourist c. volunteer d. scientist
6. My father works..... a teacher. It's the best job.
   a. so b. as c. us d. at
7. Rubbish in the river .....the wildlife.
   a. stores b. damages c. protects d. produces
8. Teenagers need enough .....to feel happy.
   a. stress b. noise c. worry d. sleep
9. A man..... doesn't work won't succeed.
   a. where b. which c. who d. where
10. The dishes ..... every day.
    a. are washed b. is washed c. washed d. washes





**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. My house is ..... (as small) Ali's.
2. Radwa sings ..... (good).
3. While ..... (read), I heard a bang.
4. Does Ali ..... (walks) to school?

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"A visit to the Museum"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Exam 11 Assiut - Manfalout

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. When did you visit the Citadel?
   a. Last Monday b. Last year c. Last week d. Last month
2. How are its towers?
   a. short b. tall c. fat d. slim
3. Who built it?
   a. Salah al-Din b. The king c. The queen d. The teacher
4. How log did it take to complete?
   a. three years b. eight years c. nine years d. ten years

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Heba is telling Rahma about her last weekend.

Heba : Where did you go last Friday?

Rahma : 1 .....



CamScanner

Heba : ② .....?

Rahma : I went to my uncle's farm by car.

Heba : ③ .....?

Rahma : I helped my uncle with his work.

Heba : How long did you stay there?

Rahma : ④ .....

Heba : Did you enjoy there?

Rahma : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Mrs. Saleh had two children. Samy was seven years old, and his sister Nora was four. Samy went to school, but Nora did not. When Samy was at home, he often played with Nora while their mother was cooking or washing or cleaning. Their mother was usually free to do her work quietly because Samy was very nice to his small sister. One Friday morning, the two children were playing in the garden while their mother was cooking lunch. They were quite happy until Nora suddenly began to cry **loudly** because Samy broke her toy when Nora hit him on the head with it.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. How old was Samy's sister?

.....

2. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

3. Why do you think Samy broke the toy?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "**loudly**" means .....
   a. calmly b. noisily c. kindly d. quietly
5. When Nora cried, her mother was in the .....
   a. garden b. bedroom c. school d. kitchen
6. Samy ..... the toy.
   a. repaired b. cleaned c. broke d. bought





## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My ..... routine is the same every day.
   a. daily b. dairy c. sadly d. diary
2. I put my books on the .....
   a. bookshop b. bookstore c. bookshelf d. pocket
3. We ..... go to school on Fridays.
   a. never b. always c. usually d. sometimes
4. Swimming and ..... are water sports.
   a. handball b. football c. sailing d. basketball
5. What ..... doing at the moment?
   a. they are b. are they c. they were d. were they
6. Mr. Ahmed speaks English .....
   a. bad b. good c. will d. well
7. A/An ..... is a doctor who does operations.
   a. surgeon b. oculist c. farmer d. engineer
8. ..... is a type of paper that was used in ancient Egypt.
   a. Papyrus b. Wooden c. Ink d. Oil
9. The Red ..... is one of the most important charities in the world.
   a. Team b. Crescent c. Village d. Coach
10. When there is no rain for a long time. This is a .....
    a. flood b. rain c. volcano d. drought

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. No one in class is ..... (tallest) than Walid.
2. A good friend is someone..... (which) helps others.
3. While Mona ..... (play) tennis, she hurt her arm.
4. What ..... (do) you visit last week?

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"Your hero"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



CamScanner

# Exam 12 Qena - Dishna

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Last ..... , Samy travelled to England.
   a. winter b. summer c. spring d. autumn
2. Samy wanted to learn ..... .
   a. maths b. science c. English d. Arabic
3. Samy went to a language ..... in London.
   a. center b. class c. university d. school
4. Samy had a ..... time in England.
   a. wonderful b. long c. sad d. bad

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Hend is asking Manal about her daily routine.

Hend : Can I ask you about your daily routine, Manal?
Manal : ① .....
Hend : ② ..... ?
Manal : I get up at 6: 30 in the morning.
Hend : Do you make your breakfast?
Manal : ③ .....
Hend : ④ ..... ?
Manal : My mum always makes it for me.
Hend : How do you go to school every day?
Manal : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Dr Magdy Yacoub is one of the world's most famous heart surgeons. He was born in 1935 in Belbeis, Sharqia. His family used to travel to many places because his father was an important doctor. At the age of 15, Magdy Yacoub joined Cairo University. He studied medicine **there**. Then he moved to London and achieved a great success as a heart surgeon. He loves his country very much. He came back to Egypt to help





Egyptian children with heart problems. In 2009, he started a charity, called "Aswan Heart Center" for ill children in Aswan. This charity helps thousands of ill children and makes them live healthy lives. For this reason, we should all be proud of him.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   .....
2. Why do you think Magdy Yacoub came back to Egypt?
   .....
3. What did Magdy Yacoub do in 2009?
   .....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Magdy Yacoub was born in ..... .
   a. London b. Cairo c. Sharqia d. Aswan
5. The underlined word "**ill**" in the passage means ..... .
   a. sick b. rich c. clever d. strong
6. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ..... .
   a. Aswan b. Cairo University c. Belbeis d. Luxor

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. ..... are boys or girls from thirteen to nineteen.
   a. Babies b. Teenagers c. Volunteers d. Adults
2. The ..... take in air and help us to breathe.
   a. brains b. hearts c. lungs d. legs
3. You shouldn't ..... up late. It's bad for you.
   a. stayed b. stay c. staying d. stays
4. This is the bag ..... I bought last week.
   a. when b. where c. who d. which
5. The building is very tall, but we can go in the ..... .
   a. lift b. left c. stairs d. attic
6. Adel is ..... and never puts his books away.
   a. messy b. cruel c. serious d. tidy
7. My parents ..... money to charity which helps disabled people.
   a. win b. buy c. finish d. donate



CamScanner

8. Karim is ..... , but he can understand people using sign language.
a. blind b. brave c. deaf d. healthy

9. A ..... is the person who asks people for money as he/ she is poor.
a. volunteer b. sports couch c. beggar d. farmer

10. Where did your parents ..... ?
a. lived b. used to live c. use to live d. living

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. It is important to drive ..... (careful) when it is raining.
2. Cotton clothes ..... (sell) all over the world.
3. She ..... (take) a photo at the moment.
4. The Egyptian handball team ..... (win) the competition last year.

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"A historic place you visited"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

# Exam 13 Luxor - Luxor

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. What is Salwa's job?
a. An engineer b. A nurse c. A scientist d. A teacher

2. What kind of job is it?
a. Busy b. Easy c. Boring d. Ugly

3. What kind of ward does she work in?
a. Children's ward b. Men's ward
c. Women's ward d. Girls' ward

4. Why is Salwa looking forward to going home?
a. To text friends b. To read c. To eat d. To have a rest





## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Hany and Mazin are talking about their past habits.

Mazin : Hello, Hany. How are you?
Hany : ① .....
Mazin : ② .....
Hany : I used to live in Giza.
Mazin : How did you use to go to school?
Hany : ③ .....
Mazin : I used to ride a bike, too. What about you?
Hany : ④ .....
Mazin : Yes, I used to go to the club. Did you use to play video games?
Hany : ⑤ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. The museum is further from my home than our school. We travelled for a long time. We arrived at 10:30 am. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. My favourite was the statue of Ramses. There were also rings and necklaces that once belonged to rich Egyptian families. There were a lot of small coins from the same time, too. The museum had some very old objects. My favourite objects were the metal bowls from the fourteenth century. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools. Some were made of metal and some were made of stone. While I was reading the information, my friend found a tool that was 10,000 years old.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Which is further, the school or the museum?
.....
2. How old was the tool that the friend found?
.....
3. When was the trip to Luxor?
.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. They saw rings and necklaces that belonged to ..... Egyptian families.
a. poor b. rich c. ugly d. messy

5. The writer's favourite objects were the metal bowls from the ..... century.
a. 11th b. 17th c. 12th d. 14th

6. Some were made of "metal". This means they were made of .....
a. wood b. stone c. iron d. ice



CamScanner

in 1957. His father died in 1958. In 1962, he moved to London and the USA to work there. Before he stopped working in 2001, at the age of 65, Magdy used to help to give people new hearts for the first time. In 2009 Magdy Yacoub started a charity, called Aswan Heart Centre, for ill children in Aswan. Very ill children didn't use to live long lives, but many ill children can now live healthy lives.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What's this passage mainly about?

.....

2. What does the underlined word **"there"** refer to?

.....

3. What do you think of Sir Magdy Yacoub?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Magdy Yacoub started the Aswan Heart Center in .....

a. 1995 b. 2001 c. 2009 d. 1962

5. He became a doctor at the age of .....

a. 12 b. 20 c. 21 d. 22

6. Yacoub started a charity in Aswan to help ill .....

a. youth b. teenagers c. woman d. children

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. You must buy your ..... before you enter the theatre.

a. scarf b. mask c. ticket d. paper

2. Hala is very ..... and leaves her toys all over the floor.

a. tidy b. dirty c. missed d. messy

3. You can see yourself in a/an .....

a. armchair b. wardrobe c. mirror d. basin

4. These bowls are made of .....

a. flour b. air c. clay d. oil

5. Karim is a happy person and always has a ..... on his face.

a. tablet b. smile c. knife d. pencil case

6. Don't play football here or you might ..... that car.

a. hurt b. damage c. tab d. keep

7. My uncle has a ..... in his garden and he uses it to water his plants.

a. cap b. tap c. tab d. map





8. ..... your father got a computer?

a. Has b. Shall c. Do d. Have

9. On Saturday, I usually ..... time with my cousins.

a. spend b. spends c. spending d. am spending

10. My grandfather ..... working in 2015.

a. stopping b. stop c. stopped d. stops

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. How did you ..... (using) to go to school?
2. As Mr Badr ..... (walks) to work, he met an old friend.
3. Does Nader ..... (has) to get up early?
4. This is the museum ..... (who) the school visited last year.

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"Climate change"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Exam 15 The Red Sea - Hurghada

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. What does Mohamed do? - He is a/an .....

a. doctor b. teacher c. engineer d. farmer

2. He works in .....

a. Egypt b. Saudi Arabia c. Japan d. Morocco

3. He is taller than his .....

a. wife b. son c. daughter d. brother

4. He goes to work by .....

a. car b. bike c. bus d. train



CamScanner

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Jasmin and Mohamed are talking about historical places.

Jasmin : Do you like historical places?
Mohamed : ❶ .....?
Jasmin : ❷ .....
Mohamed : My favourite places are the awesome Temples of Abydos.
Jasmin : ❸ .....?
Mohamed : It is in Upper Egypt, Sohag.
Jasmin : How can I visit it?
Mohamed : ❹ .....
Jasmin : Thanks.
Mohamed : ❺ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Cities are very busy places. Many people live and work in **them** and there are always lots of traffic and noise, that's why the environment there is polluted. So some people feel worried and unhappy. It is a good idea to go outside the cities to experience natural places in many different ways. This makes them feel calm and relaxed. Some people like visiting nature **reserves** in Ras Mohamed or Sinai National Park. They practice many activities like; snorkeling, swimming and diving to see different things that live under the water, such as sea animals, fish and coral reefs.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1 What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

2 Why do people feel worried and unhappy?

.....

3 How do people make themselves feel calm and relaxed?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4 What do you think the word **"reserves"** means?
a protected b relaxed c different d polluted

5 The underlined pronoun **"them"** refers to
a people b cities c traffic d sea animals

6 Ras Mohamed is a ..... in Sinai.
a national park b sea animal c nature reserve d coral reef





## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We do the same things every day, that is our daily .....
a. routine b. exercise c. curtain d. wedding
2. Their families don't have enough money so they are .....
a. rich b. strong c. poor d. messy
3. " ..... "means people who live in a certain area in a city or a town.
a. Village b. Country c. Community d. Distance
4. This charity has got a lot of ..... from rich people.
a. pollution b. development c. donation d. education
5. Bikes are a/an ..... form of transport.
a. fuel b. oil c. green d. petrol
6. ..... is a global problem that we should care about.
a. Climate change b. Environment c. Kindness d. Charity
7. Many countries try ..... rubbish to keep our environment clean.
a. cycling b. damaging c. throwing d. recycling
8. We ..... go to school on Fridays.
a. never b. always c. usually d. sometimes
9. Our house is ..... comfortable than this hotel.
a. more b. most c. much d. little
10. The people ..... live next door are very friendly.
a. where b. which c. who d. when

**5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:**

1. I ..... (has to) go to school today. It's Friday.
2. While Mona ..... (play) tennis, she hurt her arm.
3. Students must ..... (are) polite to their teachers.
4. My parents ..... (not) like fish.

## E Writing

**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"How to keep our environment clean"



CamScanner

# Test 1

## A Listening

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال فى آخر الكتاب

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. When the speaker's ..... were younger, they lived in Luxor.
   a brothers  b sisters  c grandfathers  d parents
2. The speaker's parents moved to Port Said in .....
   a 1991  b 1990  c 1993  d 1992
3. They lived in a ..... flat from 2005 to 2006.
   a small  b big  c large  d high
4. They moved to a bigger ..... a year later.
   a house  b flat  c park  d school

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Hoda:** When do you get up at the weekend?

**Fahd :** At the weekend, I usually get up early.

**Hoda:** What ❶ ..... you do at the weekend?

**Fahd :** I always go out with my family.

**Hoda:** ❷ ..... are you going this weekend?

**Fahd :** We ❸ ..... visiting my uncle and aunt.

**Hoda:** Who do you spend time with?

**Fahd :** I usually spend time with my cousins.

**Hoda:** What ❹ ..... do you go to bed at the weekend?

**Fahd :** ❺ ..... about ten o'clock.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for **enjoyment**: just to feel happy and spend a nice time. **Others** read as a job. Students read for their study or research. All of us

read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails, and letters that we receive.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. How is reading a good thing?

.....

2. Why do you think you need to read in a quiet place?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. What do you think the word "**Others**" refers to? .....

a goals b people c points d glasses

4. The underlined word "**enjoyment**" means .....

a discussion b mysteries c sadness d pleasure

5. Many people like to read about the .....

a research b language c weather d friends

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My mum bought some fruits and vegetables ..... her way home.

a on b at c in d for

2. Please put your ..... in the bin. Don't drop it on the ground.

a fuel b drought c rubbish d flood

3. I think the two teams will play the final match in Cairo .....

a Arch b Castle c Museum d Stadium

4. My parents are at work and I am looking..... my little sister.

a up b after c for d at

5. My mum bought a ..... machine to make us some clothes.

a sewing b writing c printing d studying

6. Sugar cane is ..... in Upper Egypt.

a grown b growing c grew d grows

7. I visited the Citadel two years .....

a since b ago c for d when

8. We..... all tell the truth.

a must b can't c mustn't d have

9. Miss Mona ..... teaches us maths is very friendly.

a which b where c who d when

10. The cheetah is the ..... animal in the world.

a fast b fastest c faster d as fast

**5 ➤ Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- There **was** many people in the club yesterday. (.....)

2- Who **use** to take you to school when you were young? (.....)

3- Egypt is **visit** by tourists from around the world. (.....)

4- I used to **being** fat when I was young. (.....)

## E Writing

**6 ➤ Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"What you and your family usually do in the holidays"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 2

## A Listening

**1 ➤ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. They're going on a boat _____ today.
   a) trip  b) ride  c) swim  d) drive
2. It's going to be _____.
   a) fun  b) cold  c) hot  d) warm
3. They have to wear sunglasses and a _____.
   a) cap  b) hat  c) boot  d) shoe
4. Boats are fun but they can be _____.
   a) safe  b) bad  c) well  d) dangerous

## B Language Functions

**2 ➤ Complete the following dialogue:**

**Amr** : What's your name?

**Raj** : My name's Raj.

**Amr** : Where are you ① .....?

**Raj** : I'm from India.

**Amr** : ② .....do you live?

**Raj** : I live in a village with my parents.

Amr : How many ❸ .....

Raj : I have one brother and two ❹ .....and sisters do you have?

Amr : What jobs do you do in the house?

Raj : I ❺ .....the chickens.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Shahd is a nice girl. She has no brothers or sisters. Her parents love her very much. She has kind grandparents who live in the next street.

Today, Shahd is visiting her grandparents. She loves them very much because they are very kind. Ezzat is Shahd's grandfather. He loves his granddaughter. He always tells her stories. At this moment, she is sitting on his knee. She is listening to a new story. She is smiling. She loves her grandfather's stories. Right now, he is holding her hands. They are sitting in the living room. Zeinab is Shahd's grandmother. At this moment, Zeinab is in the kitchen. **She** is baking cookies for Ezzat and Shahd. She is also listening to Ezzat's story.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1- Where is Shahd sitting at the moment? Why?

.....

2- What does the underlined pronoun "**She**" refer to?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- Shahd's grandmother is ..... at the moment.

a telling a story
b cleaning the house
c baking cookies
d sitting

4- .....is/are listening to Ezzat's story.

a Only Zeinab
b Zeinab and Shahd
c No one
d Only Shahd

5- Shahd and her grandfather are in the .....

a kitchen
b bedroom
c living room
d hall

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I'm learning ..... to improve my handwriting.

a photography  b sewing  c parking  d calligraphy

2nd prep. Booklet

2. Our National Football Team won the first ..... Algeria.
   a drove  b about  c against  d for

3. The Great Pyramid ..... a thousands of years ago.
   a dates  b comes back  c keeps  d emerges

4. When I get up at 7 every day, I have to tidy ..... my bedroom.
   a for  b up  c at  d off

5. Many students passed as it is shown on the ..... in the line graph.
   a x-box  b x-ray  c x-files  d x-axis

6. Samir is my best friend, so I ..... sit next to him.
   a always  b never  c don't  d doesn't

7. A: When ..... you start this job?
   B: In 2016.
   a do  b have  c are  d did

8. The children ..... ice cream while they were watching TV.
   a are eating  b eat  c were eating  d eats

9. Should I ..... the truth?
   a tells  b tell  c told  d telling

10. Hamza is ..... as Mohmed.
   a as tall  b taller  c tall  d tallest

## 5 ➤ Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Suzan is good at languages. She speak three languages very well. (.....)

2- How long did it took the workers to complete the building? (.....)

3- This is the village which I live. (.....)

4- Sinai is locate in north-east of Egypt. (.....)

## E Writing

## 6 ➤ Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"Your city in the past and today"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 3

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The speaker is looking after _____ at a hospital.
   a pupils  b friends  c patients  d boys
2. The speaker is looking after children in children's _____.
   a house  b flat  c school  d ward
3. The speaker is feeling _____ tonight
   a happy  b sad  c tired  d glad
4. The speaker is looking forward to going home and having a _____.
   a drink  b food  c fruit  d rest

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Emy : My mother is an important nurse, Mrs Soad Ramadan, but her life used to be difficult.

Rasha: Where did your mother (1) _____ to be a nurse?

Emy : At Cairo University.

Rasha: What does she (2) _____ now?

Emy : She is a (3) _____ at a big hospital in Cairo.

Rasha: A manager?

Emy : Yes, she helps to teach younger nurses.

Rasha: I think she is a hero because she studied and worked very (4) _____ to get an important job.

Emy : You are right and now she helps people every day.

Rasha: I'm (5) _____ of your mother and I want to be like her.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Most people have three meals every day; breakfast, lunch and dinner. They eat these meals at fixed times; in the morning, in the afternoon and in the evening. But, in fact, most of <u>them</u> don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very important, and people should eat lots of fruit and vegetables. People should

not eat too many cakes. Doctors advise people to drink a lot of water and milk every day and not to have too many fizzy drinks. To keep healthy, doctors advise people not to stay at home all the time. They should go for walks, do exercise or do sports.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What should people eat and drink to keep healthy?

.....

2. How many meals do most people have every day?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ..... .

a doctors b people c fruit d meals

4. ..... people care about what they should eat for each meal.

a All b Many c Few d No

5. ..... can advise people about their health.

a Teachers b Doctors c Workers d Engineers

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Bikes are a ..... form of transport because they use no fuel.

a blue b yellow c black d green

2. Ahmed looks forward ..... the full mark in the science exam.

a to get b to getting c get d getting

3. This writer was the first one ..... for children.

a to writing b write c to write d writing

4. When will the train arrive ..... the station?

a in b before c at d on

5. My sister Yara always ..... up after every meal.

a gives b takes c washes d looks

6. The ..... shows how many people died in the last disaster.

a car chart b far chart c bar chart d jar chart

7. Dalida ..... first in the school races.

a usually come b usually comes c come usually d comes usually

8. Our friends Noha and Ahmed ..... married last week.

a got b get c gets d are getting

9. The students were playing in the playground when the bell ..... .

a rings b to ring c is ringing d rang

10. Tomorrow is a holiday. You ..... get up early.

a have to b don't have to c has to d doesn't have to

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- There was a hole **in front to** the car, so we stopped. (.....)
2- A year **for**, I bought a new car. (.....)
3- The man **where** is tall, is my cousin. (.....)
4- The whale is **biggest** than the dolphin. (.....)

## E Writing

**6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"The importance of water"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

# Test 4

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people used ..... .
   a mirrors  b pens  c pots  d tins
2. They used to .....around their eyes.
   a draw  b paint  c see  d clean
3. This helped them to protect their eyes from the .....
   a smoke  b moon  c sun  d dust
4. The paint kept away ..... .
   a cats  b flies  c bees  d insects

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Yasmin : Do you like historic places?
Mariam : ① ....., I do.
Yasmin : Which ② ..... do you like most?
Mariam : I like Petra.
Yasmin : ③ ..... is it?

**Mariam :** It's in Jordan.

**Yasmin :** How old is it?

**Mariam :** It dates to around 300 BCE, so it is more than 2,000 (4) ..... old!

**Yasmin :** How can I visit it?

**Mariam :** You must buy a (5) ..... to visit it. It's an amazing place.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Mr Tawfeek's family lives in a village. They were very happy because Mr Tawfeek bought a new a car. It isn't new, but they liked it very much. They never had a car before they bought their first car. Before they bought it, they used buses, trains and taxis. They never owned anything so expensive before they bought the car.

The children were very excited about their car. The children never rode in a car before their parents bought one. They only saw a few cars when they went to town for shopping. But nobody they knew **owned** a car before that day. They felt very lucky.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1- Why was the family very happy?

.....

2- Would you like to have a car? Why / Why not?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- The family's car isn't .....

a old  b big  c new  d fast

4- The underlined word "**owned**" means .....

a drove  b had  c cleaned  d bought

5- They didn't see..... cars in the town.

a many  b few  c a lot of  d much

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I will meet the manager tomorrow. - Me .....

a two  b to  c too  d toe

2. The nurses and the doctor went to the children's ..... to check the sick babies.

a word  b ward  c company  d street

3. I played for Al Ahly football ..... team when I was under-19.

a junior  b normal  c senior  d final

4. When the earthquake happened, the city became _____ in minutes.
a walls b temples c guides d ruins

5. Climate _____ means it's getting warmer around the world.
a change b bridge c orange d stage

6. How _____ do you visit your grandparents? - Always.
a deep b many c often d much

7. Did you use _____ your friends every day in the past?
a met b to meet c meets d is met

8. People were trying to put out the fire _____ the fire fighters arrived.
a when b as c while d on

9. Before you take the train, you _____ buy a ticket.
a shouldn't b aren't c should d doesn't have to

10. Modern mobile phones are _____ than old ones.
a good b good as c best d better

## 5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- **Have** we go out now? (_____)

2- **Does** Sameh use to give money to charities? (_____)

3- I **have to** get up early. It's a holiday. (_____)

4- English is easier **that** maths. (_____)

## E Writing

## 6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"A description of your bedroom"

# Test 5

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The speaker lives with his / her family in .....
   a Tanta  b London  c Australia  d Cairo
2. The speaker and his/her family ..... go on trips around Egypt.
   a always  b never  c usually  d sometimes
3. They like going to .....
   a the Giza Zoo  b Al Azhar Park  c the cinema  d the High Dam
4. They always have ..... there.
   a lunch  b fun  c headache  d breakfast

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Rawan** : Who do you live with?
**Sherifa** : I ❶.....with my parents and my two brothers.
**Rawan** : How do you and your brothers get to school?
**Sherifa** : I walk to school with my brothers.
**Rawan** : What's your ❷.....subject?
**Sherifa** : My favourite subject is English.
**Rawan** : How ❸.....do you listen to music?
**Sherifa** : I sometimes ❹.....to music.
**Rawan** : What do you do in the evenings?
**Sherifa** : I usually ❺.....a book on a sofa.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Mohamed Salah is my favourite sports star. He plays football for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. Mohamed Salah is one of Egypt's most famous footballers. He is admired for his speed and ability to score goals. In 2017, he scored the goal to send Egypt to the World Cup finals since 1990.

He is a kind person. Salah is famous for his kind and generous donations to charities in Egypt. He donated money to his hometown of Nagrig to build a school, and he helped a children's cancer hospital in Cairo. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans. Salah's desire to help others is because he wants to give young people a chance to succeed. He is a role model for millions of Egyptians.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1- When did Mohamed Salah score the goal to send Egypt to the World Cup?

.....

2- What is Mohamed Salah admired for?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- Mohamed Salah gives young people a hope to .....

a fail b eat c play d succeed

4- Mohamed Salah is famous for his kind .....

a money b donations c schools d hospitals

5- Mohamed Salah plays for a good team in .....

a Africa b America c Europe d Australia

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. That architect designed a block of ..... all over the country.

a flags b flats c rooms d flies

2. **A:** What are you doing? **B:** I am ..... everything ready for the trip.

a getting b travelling c coming d taking

3. This hospital has the best ..... in the whole country.

a coaches b goals c farmers d surgeons

4. I showed my pen friend..... old Cairo when he came to Egypt.

a about b round c over d under

5. There was no rain for a long time and that caused a serious .....

a wave b storm c flood d drought

6. "..... to the radio every day?" "Yes, I always listen to the radio."

a Do you listen b Are you listening c Did you listen d Are you listen

7. Hala ..... a diet, but now she does.

a had b doesn't have

c didn't use to have d used to have

8. You.....drive fast here; there is a school nearby.

a have b must c aren't d mustn't

9. This is the office ..... my father works.

a when b which c where d who

10. The lion is one of the ..... dangerous animals.

a more b most c bad d worse

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- **Does** you play the piano? (.....)

2- Why are you walking **slow**? Are you tired? (.....)

3- While we **had** the picnic, it started to rain. (.....)

4- Bugatti is **the more** expensive car in the world. (.....)

## E Writing

**6 ➤ Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"How you can help people in your community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 6

## A Listening

**1 ➤ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Port Said is located in the north ..... of Egypt.
   a east  b west  c south  d near
2. The city is known for its .....
   a cars  b planes  c boats  d ships
3. Port Said is connected to ..... by the Suez Canal.
   a Sohag  b Minya  c Suez  d Tanta
4. Many fish are caught in the sea ..... Port Said.
   a near  b next to  c above  d on

## B Language Functions

**2 ➤ Complete the following dialogue:**

**Amal :** Where are you from?

**Judy :** I'm from El Faiyoum, in Egypt.

**Amal :** How do you describe your ❶.....?

**Judy :** It's a large city, with beautiful nature reserves nearby.

**Amal :** Do you live with your grandparents?

**Judy :** No, I ❷.....with my parents and my brother in a flat. My grandparents live in a flat downstairs.

**Amal :** ❸.....do you like studying at school?

**Judy :** My favourite subjects are maths and English.

**Amal :** What do you ❹.....in the afternoons?

**Judy :** I ❺.....my friends or play computer games with my brother.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

The Suez Canal is very important to Egypt. It is the longest canal in the world. Many ships travel through it each year. All the ships pay money to use the canal. We earn a lot of money from the canal. The Suez Canal is important because it shortens the way between the east and the west. It is quicker to travel through the canal than to travel round Africa. Long ago, the Egyptians dug the Suez Canal and now are proud that they did something very useful. Now the Suez Canal helps many countries to send their goods to other places in short times and with less money than sending them through other canals.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why is the Suez Canal important to Egypt?

.....

2. Who dug the Suez Canal?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. The Suez Canal is the..... canal in the world.

a long b longer c longest d short

4. Many countries send their..... to other places on ships.

a money b goods c farms d factories

5. All the ships pay..... to use the canal.

a travel b advice c ideas d money

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Omayma is a clever girl. She always helps her mum ..... dinner.

a do b feed c make d hurt

2. My grandfather took part in three wars. He is a real .....

a scientist b hero c enemy d champion

3. Tourists like to visit ..... places in Egypt.

a chemical b musical c plastic d historic

4. ..... help a lot of people to live a better life.

a Parks b Charities c Schools d Houses

5. ..... is a long period when there is little or no rain.

a Drought b Rubbish c Flood d Wildlife

6. "_____to the radio now?" "No, you can turn it off."

a Do you listen b Are you listening d Did you listen b you listen

7. My family _____ have a party every month five years ago.

a used b use to c used to d is used to

8. Mona _____when an earthquake happened.

a sleeps b was sleeping c slept d to sleep

9. October is the month _____ I was born.

a when b where c which d who

10. Corona Virus is _____ dangerous than the flu.

a most b best c more d better

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- **Is** Osman live in a house or a flat? (_____)

2- I got up **lately** this morning. (_____)

3- You **should** eat lots of sweets if you want to lose some weight. (_____)

4- It's very sunny today, you **don't have** to wear sunglasses. (_____)

## E Writing

**6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"School rules"

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

# Test 7

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The speaker usually gets up at _____.

a 6 b 7 c 8 d 6.30

2. The speaker helps _____ make breakfast.

a sister b dad a mum b brother

3. The speaker's _____ starts work very early.

a brother b mum c son d dad

4. The speaker's dad doesn't have _____with his / her family.

a breakfast b lunch c dinner d supper

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Dina : We should all be proud of Magdy Yacoub. He is an important ❶ .....

Ramy : When was he ❷ .....?

Dina : He was born in 1935, in Bilbeis.

Ramy : Where did he ❸ ..... in the past?

Dina : He worked in a special ❹ ..... in London.

Ramy : How did he help people at this hospital?

Dina : He helped to give people new hearts for the first time.

Ramy : What else did he do?

Dina : He started a ❺ ..... to help children with heart problems.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

I like pets very much. I like dogs best. I have a nice dog. The name of my dog is Jack. It is black in colour. It is four years old. Jack is a great fun. It does everything I ask it to do. It keeps cats away from my house. If it sees a cat, it runs after <u>it</u>. It barks when it sees a stranger in my house. It never bites. It eats everything my mother gives it. But, it likes to eat meat most. Whenever I come back from school, it runs towards me. After I finish my homework, Jack and I play together. Sometimes, it jumps and runs after me. I love my dog. My dog also loves me very much.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1- What does the writer like?

.....

2- What's good about Jack?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- Jack ..... when it sees a stranger.

a barks  b runs  c hides  d sleeps

4- The underlined pronoun **"it"** refers to .....

a Jack  b a cat  c a stranger  d the house

5- Jack likes to eat ..... most.

a everything  b fish  c meat  d cats

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 ➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Omar has a lot of money, that's ..... he helps poor people a lot.
   a when b why c what d whose
2. A/An ..... speaks to people on the phone. He/She helps them with their problems.
   a police officer b call-centre worker
   a computer engineer b street-food seller
3. I hope I will win the school swimming ..... this year.
   a competition b treatment c charity d experiment
4. We had a school trip to Qaitbey ..... in Alexandria last week.
   a Guide b Castle c Ticket d Race
5. When you have a lot of food, you should ..... it with poor people.
   a play b look c share d chair
6. We usually grow vegetables in our garden but this year we ..... any.
   a don't grow b aren't growing
   c am not growing d doesn't grow
7. I ..... use to get high marks when I was at school.
   a don't b didn't c do d doesn't
8. ..... I was staying in Alexandria, I went to the beach many times.
   a which b As c Where d That
9. We are late. We ..... take a taxi.
   a has to b doesn't have to c don't have to d have to
10. Muhammad is the ..... man in the town.
    a old b as old c older d oldest

**5 ➤ Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- Have they **get** two beautiful children? (.....)
2- Your French isn't good, but you speak English **good**. (.....)
3- **When** time does your dad come from work? (.....)
4- Shahd is not as successful **than** her brother. (.....)

## E Writing

**6 ➤ Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"People and jobs"

.....

.....

.....

# Test 8

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The British made a special ship for the Cleopatra's _____.
   a Needle  b Statue  c Temple  d Jewellary
2. While the ship was travelling to _____, it sank.
   a Cairo  b Paris  c London  d Dubai
3. The ship sank in a _____.
   a well  b wave  c wind  d storm
4. Another _____ helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.
   a storm  b plane  c ship  d truck

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Hazem :** Do you know Jerash?

**Salma :** No. (1) _____ is Jerash?

**Hazem :** Jerash is a Roman city in Jordan.

**Salma :** A Roman city? How (2) _____ is it?

**Hazem :** It is more than 2,000 years old!

**Salma :** What (3) _____ the Romans do there?

**Hazem :** They (4) _____ a stadium.

**Salma :** What did they use to watch at the stadium?

**Hazem :** They used to watch the Roman horse (5) _____.

**Salma :** That's amazing! I must visit this city.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Once there was a very rich lady whose husband died after leaving her a lot of money. She was eighty years old so she was too old to live alone and look after herself. The lady went to live in a very expensive hotel and she took her dogs with her. She had a pair of ugly dogs which used to make a lot of noise. The lady loved her two dogs so much although nobody else did.

After six months, a waiter came to work at the hotel and began to do everything to help the woman. He did that only because he expected her to leave him some money after caring about her and her dogs. Two years later, the woman died and in her will she said that the waiter was so kind to her that she wanted him to take the things which she loves best. Can you guess what did she leave for the waiter? Her two ugly dogs!

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why did the old lady live in the hotel?

.....

2. What did she leave for the waiter?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. The lady died when she was about ..... years old.
   a 78 b 80 c 82 d 70
4. The two dogs were very .....
   a beautiful b noisy c quiet d cheap
5. The hotel was not .....
   a cheap b expensive c comfortable d wide

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. On a ..... day , I study for five hours.
   a careful b typical c helpful d famous
2. I will drive dad to the ..... He is travelling to the USA tomorrow.
   a university b nursery c airport d wedding
3. Sally had a problem in her ..... because she ate something bad.
   a stomach b heart c leg d brain
4. A/An ..... is jewellery you wear around your neck.
   a boot b ring c earring d necklace
5. We all should try to ..... the problem of pollution.
   a hurt b reuse c remind d solve
6. Mariam is in London at the moment. She ..... at a famous hotel.
   a stay b is staying c staying d stayed
7. ..... your uncle use to plant in the past?
   a Do b Does c Done d Did
8. You ..... take medicine without asking the doctor.
   a are b mustn't c should d must
9. ..... he have to get up early?
   a Do b is c Does d Are
10. This car is faster ..... the other electric cars on the market.
    a then b than c the d that

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- Do they <u>coming</u> from London? (.....)
2- He looked at me <u>angry</u> when I shouted at my son. (.....)
3- My father <u>did</u> use to smoke, but now he does. (.....)
4- We <u>mustn't</u> get a ticket to enter the cinema. (.....)

## E Writing

**6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"The Random Acts of Kindness"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 9

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The girl came into the speaker's ..... shop today.
   a baker's  b flower's  c book  d shoe
2. The girl was a .....
   a teacher  b nurse  c doctor  d servant
3. She didn't have very new .....
   a clothes  b shoes  c bags  d pens
4. The money that she had was enough to buy a few .....
   a buns  b fruits  c cakes  d apples

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Muhammad** : Which room do you like best?
**Mustafa** : I like my bedroom.
**Muhammad** : Do you ① ..... any brothers and sisters?
**Mustafa** : ② ....., I do. I have one brother and one sister.
**Muhammad** : Do you share a ③ ..... with your brother?
**Mustafa** : Yes, I do.

**Muhammad** : How ④ ..... beds are there in your bedroom?

**Mustafa** : There are two beds.

**Muhammad** : Where is your ⑤ .....?

**Mustafa** : My bed is under the window.

## C Reading Comprehension

### 3 ➤ Read the following, then answer the questions:

My family lives in a small house. It's simple but pretty. It has a garden. I like to work in the garden and collect the vegetables which my father plants. My sister hates to work in the garden. She prefers to read.

I give all of the vegetables to mum. She cooks in our small kitchen. I like eating vegetables but my sister doesn't. My family always has breakfast and dinner together. Then my sister washes up. At night, dad likes to listen to music. Mum works on the computer. I watch television and my sister reads. Soon we go to bed.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1- Who doesn't enjoy working in the garden?

.....

2- What does the sister like to do?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- There are ..... members in the family.

a two b three c four d five

4- At night, dad likes to .....

a play football b listen to music c wash up d cook

5- The family lives in a ..... house.

a big b sad c small d large

## D Vocabulary and Structure

### 4 ➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went into the kitchen and washed my hands under the .....

a top b tap c tape d trick

2. The heart is in your .....

a head b stomach c mouth d body

3. The workers found a box of gold ..... in the old site.

a coins b papers c views d times

4. They had a small ..... with close friends and family yesterday.

a lesson b wedding c weeding d ending

5. When I was in Alexandria, I helped to clean the beach and ..... up the rubbish.
a put b give c wash d pick

6. Mariam always ..... at a famous hotel when she's in London.
a stay b stays c staying d is staying

7. What did you eat for lunch .....?
a yesterday b tomorrow c now d next week

8. What ..... Hussein doing when the light went out last night?
a does b is c can d was

9. You should always ..... polite.
a am b be c is d are

10. The environment is ..... by many scientists.
a studied b studies c study d studying

## 5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- She fell and hurt herself **bad**. (.....)
2- This **is** my way to school when I was young. (.....)
3- I was listening to music, so I **don't** hear the fire alarm. (.....)
4- I work for a charity **where** looks after animals. (.....)

## E Writing

## 6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"What you do at the weekend"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 10

## A Listening

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker's home city is .....
a Minya b Tanta c Cairo d Alexandria

2. It is located near the .....
a beach b sea c Nile d lake

3. The city is known for its delicious .....

a 'black honey' b white honey c fruit d vegetables

4. Many ..... monuments and buildings are found in the city

a new b old c ancient d modern

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Rawan** : What is handball?

**Magda** : It's a sport with seven players in a team.

**Rawan** : How do they ❶ .....?

**Magda** : They score by throwing the ball into a ❷ .....

**Rawan** : Did Egypt win any ❸ ..... in handball?

**Magda** : Yes, Egypt won many competitions in handball.
Do you know that Egypt has a junior team and a senior team?

**Rawan** : Really! What did the Egyptian junior ❹ ..... win?

**Magda** : In 2019, the junior team won the under-19 World Cup Final against Germany.

**Rawan** : Did the Egyptian senior team win any cups?

**Magda** : Yes, they won the handball Africa Cup of Nations in Tunisia
❺ ..... 2020.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

My name is Amany. I'm 14 years old. I go to preparatory school. I'm in class 2B. I usually get up at 7 o'clock. I have a shower and wear my school uniform. I have breakfast at 7:30 with my family. I usually drink a glass of milk. After breakfast, I brush my teeth and then my dad drives me to school. I have classes from 8:30 a.m. to 3:30 p.m. and I always have lunch at break.

After classes, I go home by bus. I do my homework and at 5 o'clock I have a snack - yogurt and a cheese sandwich. Then I watch TV. My parents come home at 7 o'clock and we have dinner at 8. I usually study till 10 o'clock, then I go to bed.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Which school does Amany go to?

.....

2. Who does she have breakfast with?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. Amany goes to school _____.

a by car b on foot c by bus d by bike

4. Amany wears a school _____.

a bag b dress c shoe d uniform

5. Amany has classes for _____ hours.

a seven b six c four d eight

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My baby sister was crying and mum was _____ her.

a eating b hurting c studying d feeding

2. Omnia picked up her large _____ and walked towards the ticket office.

a suitcase b pencil case c boat d cooker

3. You should _____ those tomato plants in the garden.

a draw b work c plant d design

4. I turned on the TV to see what was _____.

a off b on c for d in

5. You should help people who are _____.

a rich b happy c disabled d funny

6. Rubbish in the river damages the _____.

a wildlife b rubbish c drought d disaster

7. I usually finish work at 5.00, but this week I _____ until 6.00.

a work b working c works d am working

8. We _____ throw away the rubbish in the streets.

a should b have to c shouldn't d has to

9. Where _____ you use to live in the past?

a do b did c were d are

10. Mersa Matrouh is _____ than Alexandria.

a farthest b far c farther d far as

**5 ➤ Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- The water **boils** now. Can you turn it off? (.....)
2- Mr Osman used to **taught** us maths at school. (.....)
3- They picked up the rubbish **when** the people left behind. (.....)
4- The door **are** opened by Mariam. (.....)

## E Writing

**6 ➤ Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"Helping parents at home"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 11

## A Listening

**1 ➤ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The speaker visited ..... with his / her family last year.
   a Athens  b Britain  c France  d America
2. The speaker saw Roman....., temples and museums there.
   a schools  b theatres  c houses  d parks
3. The speaker isn't usually very interested in .....
   a music  b art  c math  d history
4. The places in Athens are .....
   a awesome  b bad  c nice  d terrible

## B Language Functions

**2 ➤ Complete the following dialogue:**

Ramy : I have some information about Cleopatra's Needle.
Amr : What is Cleopatra's Needle?
Ramy : It (1) ..... a large and important stone with beautiful designs on it.
Amr : Who (2) ..... it?
Ramy : The Ancient Egyptians made it.
Amr : Is it in Egypt?

Ramy : ❸ ..... , it is in England.
Amr : Where can I ❹ ..... it in England?
Ramy : You can see it next to the River Thames in London.
Amr : I will ❺ ..... it one day.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Noura is a musician. She works in a studio. She plays the piano. Every day, she gets up at nine o'clock in the morning. She takes a shower and gets dressed. She drinks a cup of tea and eats some toast. At ten o'clock, she takes a taxi to the studio.

In the studio, Noura plays the piano. She writes new songs and makes CDs. At one o'clock, she goes to a nearby restaurant. She eats lunch with her friends. At three o'clock, she goes to the studio again. She plays more music and sings. At six o'clock, she goes home and has dinner. She goes to the concert hall at eight o'clock. She plays music for lots of people. They like her songs. She goes home at eleven o'clock. She is very tired when she goes to bed.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1- What does Noura do at night?

.....

2- How does Noura go to the studio?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- People like Noura's .....

a CD's  b piano  c songs  d clothes

4- Noura goes to the studio ..... a day.

a twice  b once  c three times  d five times

5- Noura goes to the concert hall at .....o'clock.

a 5  b 4  c 8  d 9

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The police put the young man in ..... after he killed two children.

a school  b prison  c hospital  d bed

2. There were many ..... at the wedding party yesterday.

a buyers  b sellers  c guests  d animals

3. The furniture in this house _____ very old.

a is b were c are d does

4. Leila wears sunglasses to protect her eyes _____ the sun.

a of b for c from d under

5. The small area and the people in our village are called a _____.

a team b group c community d country

6. Dina _____ to bed very early last night because she was very tired.

a go b goes c gone d went

7. We didn't go out because it was raining _____

a heavy b heavily c hardly d carelessly

8. In a messy classroom, students _____ tidy it up.

a should b shouldn't c don't have to d has to

9. Glass is _____ from sand.

a make b makes c making d made

10. I used to be active when I _____ young.

a am b was c were d been

## 5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- I like tennis but I **doesn't** like football. (_____)

2- I'm busy. I **clean** the house. (_____)

3- Why **did** you do your homework? The teacher will be angry with you. (_____)

4- That is the seller **where** we talked to. (_____)

## E Writing

## 6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"What is a hero?"

# Test 12

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Marwa always gets up at ..... in the morning.
   a 7 b 8 c 6:30 d 7:30
2. Marwa's ..... always makes breakfast.
   a father b sister c aunt d mum
3. Marwa's parents work at the .....
   a hospital b school c workshop d university
4. Marwa often helps to make .....
   a lunch b supper c dinner d breakfast

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Hend :** What do you do?

**Amal :** I'm a ❶.....

**Hend :** What ❷..... do you do?

**Amal :** I ❸.....after patients at a hospital.

**Hend :** ❹..... you like your job?

**Amal :** Yes, I like my job but I'm feeling tired tonight.

**Hend :** Why are you ❺.....tired?

**Amal :** Because the hospital is very busy.

**Hend :** If you are tired, why don't you have a rest?

**Amal :** That's a good idea!

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Tarek wakes up at 7 o'clock. He has a bath and gets dressed. He has breakfast at home. He leaves home at about 8 o'clock and goes to school on foot. His parents go to work earlier. He arrives at school at 8:20. He starts classes at half past eight every morning. He has lunch in the school canteen.

Tarek is a very good student and he always has very good grades. He studies very hard. His classes finish at 3 o'clock. After classes, he comes home, does his homework and studies. Sometimes he plays football with his friends. He helps his mother cook lunch when she comes home late. After dinner, he watches TV and goes to bed at 9:30.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What time does Tarek wake up?

.....

2. How does Tarek go to to school?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. Tarek is very _____ at home.

a lazy  b careless  c helpful  d helpless

4. Tarek likes playing _____.

a chess  b computer games  c tennis  d football

5. Tarek is a _____ student.

a clever  b lazy  c stupid  d poor

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. All the students are still _____ the research which the teacher asked for.

a making  b doing  c taking  d repairing

2. This photo shows some children and a tree _____ the left.

a on  b in  c for  d with

3. This good man always gives a lot of money to a _____.

a team  b charity  c game  d century

4. The ancient Egyptians used to put _____ on their dead kings' faces.

a masks  b arches  c pyramids  d temples

5. **A:** How _____ do you watch TV at night?

**B:** Never.

a often  b many  c deep  d far

6. The _____ in Australia is becoming hotter and drier.

a rubbish  b chart  c graph  d climate

7. Our team lost the game because we played _____

a bad  b badly  c good  d well

8. Does she _____ wash up?

a have to  b has to  c have  d has

9. Spanish is not _____ in China.

a speaks  b spoken  c speak  d speaking

10. Mona isn't as _____ as Sara.

a beautiful  b more beautiful  c most beautiful  d the most beautiful

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- Shall you got a modern phone? ( . . . . . )
2- Hassan is a pilot. He **is knowing** everything about flying. ( . . . . . )
3- I use to be fat when I was young. ( . . . . . )
4- At midnight, we **was** still driving through the desert. ( . . . . . )

## E Writing

**6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"How to be polite to your friends"

. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .

# Test 13

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Magdy Yacoub is a . . . . . .
   a doctor  b teacher  c farmer  d vet
2. His . . . . . was an important doctor.
   a brother  b sister  c father  d mother
3. Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in . . . . . .
   a Cairo  b Tanta  c Alex  d Aswan
4. Many . . . . . children can now live healthy lives.
   a bad  b ill  c clever  d good

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

Hazem : Do you have to walk to school?
Mo'men : No, I don't. I take the bus, but my best friend doesn't.
Hazem : What (1) . . . . . your best friend have to do?
Mo'men : He has to walk to school.
Hazem : Why does he have to walk to school?

Mo'men : (3) the school isn't far from his house.

Hassan : What sort of jobs do you (2) to do at home?

Mo'men : I have to (4) after my little brother, take out the rubbish and do my homework

Hassan : How much (1) do you have to do this evening?

Mo'men : I have to do much homework for English and maths.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 ▸ Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Mr and Mrs Taha have one son and one daughter. The son's name is Essam. The daughter's name is Sarah.

The family lives in a house. They have a living room. They watch TV in the living room. The mother cooks food in the kitchen. They eat in the dining room. The house has two bedrooms. They sleep in the bedrooms. There is one bathroom. They brush their teeth in the bathroom.

The house has a garden. Essam and Sarah play in the garden. They have a cat. Essam and Sarah like to play with it.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1- How many children do Mr and Mrs Taha have?

2- Where does the family eat?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- Essam and Sarah ..... in the garden.

[a] play [b] plant [c] sit [d] wait

4- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .....

[a] garden [b] bathroom [c] cat [d] house

5- The house has more than one .....

[a] bedroom [b] living room [c] kitchen [d] bathroom

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 ▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. There is a bank ..... the end of the street where I live.

[a] off [b] at [c] from [d] for

2. I can see a boy and a girl in the _____ of the photo.
a medal b metal c moon d middle

3. The _____ take air into the body.
a ears b teeth c lungs d eyes

4. I put fresh flowers in this _____ every morning.
a bin b vase c pool d stone

5. My brother writes about his interests on his _____ on the internet.
a blog b log c fog d book

6. You're speaking very _____. I can't hear you.
a quietly b quiet c slow d well

7. This is the flat _____ my father bought.
a where b which c who d when

8. _____ coffee served here?
a Are b Do c Is d Have

9. You _____ get up early in the holidays.
a don't have to b have to c must d has to

10. Ahmed used to study hard. Now he _____.
a isn't b doesn't c didn't d don't

**5) Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- At the moment, the children **isn't watching** TV. (_____)

2- He **mustn't** be careful when he uses a knife. (_____)

3- It never **shining** in winter in my country. (_____)

4- You **should** eat lots of sweets if you want to be healthy. (_____)

## E Writing

**6) Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"A person that you are proud of (your hero)"

# Test 14

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. ..... students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank.
   a Eight  b Seven  c Six  d Nine
2. The river was near the city .....
   a star  b centre  c bank  d library
3. The students collected 15 ..... of rubbish.
   a bottles  b tins  c bags  d cans
4. Students were ..... to find so much rubbish.
   a happy  b glad  c nice  d sad

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Muhammad :** Last weekend, some students were volunteers and they collected rubbish.
**Mustafa** : What ❶ ..... the students clean?
**Muhammad :** They cleaned up the part of the riverbank.
**Mustafa** : How ❷ ..... students helped?
**Muhammad :** Ten students.
**Mustafa** : How much rubbish did they ❸ .....?
**Muhammad :** They collected 15 bags of rubbish.
**Mustafa** : ❹ ..... type of rubbish did they find?
**Muhammad :** There were lots of plastic bags and bottles.
**Mustafa** : I think ❺ ..... in the river will damage the wildlife.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Last week, mum baked a cake for my birthday party. I wanted a chocolate cake. Mum was happy to cook it.

First, mum mixed the ingredients in a big bowl. Next, she poured the cake into a baking pan. She put the pan in the oven. Finally, she baked the cake for 30 minutes. After the cake cooled, mum covered **it** with chocolate. She wrote my name on top with white chocolate. She put seven candles in the cake.

On Sunday, mum brought me the cake. I loved it! It was a lovely day. All my friends, cousins and neighbours came to our house.
I had many presents for my birthday. But, I said that mum's cake was the best of them all!

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. What did the writer's mum use to write the name on the cake?

.....

2. How old was the writer?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3. The underlined pronoun **"it"** refers to the .....
   a party  b cake  c chocolate  d oven
4. The writer's mum baked the cake for .....
   a an hour  b two hours  c 20 minutes  d half an hour
5. The writer had many ..... for his/her birthday.
   a cakes  b cousins  c presents  d postcards

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Tourists like to buy wonderful ..... from that market.
   a souvenirs  b trees  c clouds  d mountains
2. The ..... shirt which you bought is really fantastic. Everyone likes it.
   a spoken  b frozen  c boiled  d striped
3. My sister passed all her exams with good marks, and we are very ..... of her.
   a proud  b sad  c interesting  d afraid
4. Please, close this window to keep ..... insects.
   a in  b of  c way  d away
5. My elder brother works as a ..... at El Nahda school.
   a such as  b a  c like  d that
6. Aswan is ..... in the south of Egypt.
   a thrown  b donated  c located  d stayed
7. Hossam smiled ..... at the camera.
   a happy  b happily  c sad  d good
8. This is the city ..... I live.
   a what  b who  c when  d where

9. TV ..... in the evening.

a is watched  b watches  c watching  d watch

10. She reads English as ..... as she reads Arabic.

a good  b better  c well  d bad

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- I sometimes **goes** to the cinema. (.....)

2- We **make** our beds now. (.....)

3- Samy **waiting** for us when we got off the plane. (.....)

4- You **should to** tell the truth. (.....)

## E Writing

**6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"Charites in our community"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 15

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The speaker works as a volunteer for a .....

a school  b park  c charity  d hospital

2. At the weekend, the speaker goes to the .....

a hospital  b house  c farm  d beach

3. The speaker picks up the .....

a apples  b rubbish  c flowers  d dates

4. The speaker ..... pick up lots of plastic bottles.

a often  b sometimes  c always  d never

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Sara** : Did you hear about the Random Acts of Kindness Day?

**Marwa** : No, I didn't. What (1) ..... it?

Sara : It is a ❷..... thing that you do for someone, for no reason.

Marwa : What do you ❸.....

Sara : I mean you can do random acts of kindness for people you know or you don't know.....?

Marwa : Why do people want to do that?

Sara : Because they want to see a ❹..... on a person's face.

Marwa : Do you think people should always do random acts of kindness?

Sara : I think people ❺..... do kind things to each other.

Marwa : I agree with that.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Australia is the smallest continent of the seven continents. Some consider Australia as the largest island in the world. **It** is surrounded by the Indian Ocean and the Pacific Ocean. It is sometimes known as the 'island continent'. Australia is also the driest continent of the world. Australia is the sixth largest country in the world, after Russia, Canada, USA, China and Brazil. The capital city of Australia is called Canberra. The largest cities in Australia are Sydney and Melbourne. Most of Australia's population live in the eastern and southern parts of the country along the coast. A desert area known as the 'outback' covers much of the land.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1- What is 'Australia' sometimes known as?

---

2- What are the largest cities in Australia?

---

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- The world has _____ continents.

a six b five c seven d four

4- The capital city of Australia is _____.

a Canada b China c Brazil d Canberra

5- The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to _____.

a Australia b Brazil c USA d Russia

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The woman sat in a big ..... and looked at her son.
   a armchair  b curtain  c mirror  d chest of drawers
2. If you helped me, I would be so .....
   a natural  b harmful  c bored  d grateful
3. Are you ..... this money is yours?
   a busy  b sorry  c sure  d necessary
4. The Roman Theatre in Alexandria is an important ..... place.
   a historic  b moral  c general  d total
5. My aunt is a scientist. She works in a/an .....
   a baker's  b butcher's  c laboratory  d field
6. This book is fantastic, you ..... read it.
   a shouldn't  b should  c don't have to  d has to
7. The apples are ..... by me.
   a eat  b eating  c ate  d eaten
8. Where ..... you buy this shirt?
   a does  b have  c did  d are
9. There's the office ..... you can buy the tickets.
   a which  b where  c when  d who
10. Do you know how Koushari is .....?
    a made  b to make  c making  d make

**5 Read and correct the underlined words:**

1- Gamil **is having** four cars. All of them are expensive. (.....)
2- They were waiting for the bus when the accident **was happening**. (.....)
3- You **should** eat too much bread. It's not healthy. (.....)
4- Should I read this story **who** you lent me? (.....)

## E Writing

**6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"How life used to be different in ancient Egypt"

.....

.....

.....

# Test 16

## A Listening

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Tanta is located in the _____ of Egypt.
   a north  b south  c east  d west
2. Lots of _____ is grown in the area.
   a fruit  b vegetables  c cotton  d trees
3. Tanta is known for its delicious _____.
   a cakes  b buns  c bread  d sweets
4. Tanta has a beautiful _____ called Al-Ahmadi.
   a mosque  b university  c school  d park

## B Language Functions

**2) Complete the following dialogue:**

Teacher : The ice is melting on top of Mount Kilimanjaro.

Student : What is Mount Kilimanjaro?

Teacher : It is Africa's highest mountain.

Student : (1) _____ is happening to Mount Kilimanjaro?

Teacher : The warmer weather is (2) _____ the ice on top of it.

Student : That means there was more ice on the mountain. Now, there is less ice around Mount Kilimanjaro (3) _____ before.

Teacher : You are (4) _____.

Student : It's bad news! (5) _____ there good news?

Teacher : Yes, the good news is that ice is not melting as fast as before.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3) Read the following, then answer the questions:**

I live in a nice city. In my city, there is a post office where people mail letters. On Monday, I go to work. I work at the post office. Everyone goes shopping at the supermarket. They also eat at the restaurant. The restaurant serves pizza and ice cream.

My friends and I go to the park. We like to play football at the park. On Fridays, we go to the cinema to see a movie. Children don't go to school in the weekend. Each day, people go to the hospital when they are sick. The doctors and nurses take care of them. The police keep everyone safe. I am happy to live in my city.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Where does the writer work?

.....

2. When does the writer go to the cinema?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- The writer feels ..... about his city.

a happy b bored c sad d unsafe

4- People buy food at the .....

a hospital b park c cinema d supermarket

5- Who keeps everyone safe?

a The nurses b The children c The police d The doctors

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. People use ..... to keep light out.

a carpets b curtains c mirrors d wardrobes

2. It is quite ..... for children to be afraid of the dark.

a grateful b pleased c friendly d normal

3. This brave man made ..... efforts to save the child from fire.

a heroic b terrible c quiet d delicious

4. A big storm..... the ship and it sank in the sea.

a mixed b damaged c managed d completed

5. We put rubbish in .....

a phones b pencil cases c bowls d bins

6. History is a subject ..... I find interesting, but difficult.

a where b who c which d when

7. Food ..... in a fridge not to become bad.

a keeps b is kept c is keeping d keep

8. While Shady ..... out of the classroom, he fell down.

a ran b is running c runs d was running

9. We ..... keep our money and jewellery in a safe place.

a mustn't b have c must d shouldn't

10. What kind of food .....this restaurant serve?

a do b does c is d was

**Read and correct the underlined words:**

1. Mona **listens** to the radio now. (_____)
2. While John **slept** last night, someone stole his car. (_____)
3. You **shouldn't** study hard to get better at English. (_____)
4. 1st July is the day **which** I was born. (_____)

## E Writing

**Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:**

"A description of a historic place you visited"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 17

## A Listening

**Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The speaker's mother is an important _____.
   a teacher  b nurse  c doctor  d vet
2. She studied to be a nurse at _____ University.
   a Cairo  b Alexandria  c Ain Shams  d Benha
3. She got a job at a big _____ in Cairo.
   a school  b workshop  c factory  d hospital
4. She is also a manager and she helps to teach _____ nurses.
   a younger  b older  c taller  d shorter

## B Language Functions

**Complete the following dialogue:**

Student : Hello, my teacher.

Teacher : Hello, my dear student.

Student : I have a problem and I want you to solve it for me.

Teacher : What ❶ _____ it?

Student : My friends found a ❷ _____ in the playground at break.

**Teacher :** And then?

**Student :** We didn't ❸ ..... whose bag it was.

**Teacher :** They ❹ ..... look inside the bag to find the owner's name and address.

**Student :** We did that and knew his name, but he left the playground.

**Teacher :** Someone should ❺ ..... after him and give the bag back.

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 ➤ Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Nowadays, there are many environment problems like water and air problems. One of the main sources of these problems is rubbish. The rubbish increases every day. We can find many types of rubbish everywhere. Rubbish may consist of food, plastic and many other things. This rubbish comes from many places, such as, houses, schools, factories, and so on.

We can reduce our paper use by using both sides of the paper when we write. We must reduce using plastic bags. We have to reuse our old plastic bags at home, because plastic is one of the difficult things to end up. We can recycle our own useless things to be something useful. We must reduce, reuse and recycle rubbish to solve its problems.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1- What is the main source of the environment problems?

.....

2- Where does the rubbish come from?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- We have to ..... our old plastic bags at home.

a cycle  b reuse  c increase  d print

4- We can reduce our ..... use by using both sides of the paper.

a food  b air  c water  d paper

5- We can recycle our ..... things to solve rubbish problems.

a useless  b hopeless  c endless  d homeless

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 ➤ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I have a ..... who lives in London. I send him a letter weekly.

a worker  b penfriend  c baby  d waiter

2. A ..... is a young person between the ages of 13 and 19.

a baby  b teenager  c child  d police officer

5. At last we have a good _____ for our company.
a) professor b) headmaster c) farmer d) manager

4. A _____ is the daughter of a king or queen.
a) prince b) beggar c) princess d) farmer

5. Everyone _____ do a random act of kindness sometimes.
a) have to b) should c) shouldn't d) mustn't

6. The young woman put the chest of drawers in front _____ the bed.
a) to b) in c) on d) of

7. What subject _____ you use to like when you were young?
a) do b) did c) does d) has

8. Hamada and Salah always _____ their books on that bookshelf.
a) keep b) keeps c) keeping d) are keeping

9. My bedroom _____ every day by my mum.
a) cleans b) is clean c) is cleaned d) is cleaning

10. It's is a famous charity _____ we donate money to.
a) who b) where c) which d) whose

## Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Ola visited her sister in London **next** year. (_____)

2- Football is **most** exciting than volleyball. (_____)

3- We should **are** kind to poor people. (_____)

4- Dina **don't** clean the house alone, her sister helped her. (_____)

## E Writing

## Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"An object in your home"

# Test 18

## A Listening

**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. ..... people play chess.
   a Four  b Three  c Two  d Five
2. Each person has got white or ..... pieces.
   a red  b yellow  c orange  d black
3. Chess is not a/an ..... game.
   a bad  b good  c easy  d fat
4. Some people play it for ..... hours or more.
   a six  b seven  c eight  d nine

## B Language Functions

**2 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Malak** : I feel that famous people should work for a charity at the weekend.
**Rawia** : I'm not ❶ ..... Some of them work very hard.
**Malak** : Do you mean they don't need to work for a charity?
**Rawia** : Yes, I think so.
**Malak** : Why do you ❷ ..... that?
**Rawia** : I think it would be better if they gave some money to a charity.
**Malak** : I think that it's important for them to ❸ ..... money, but I also think it's important to work for the charity, too.
**Rawia** : OK, but when? They don't have much time. Some of them work every day.
**Malak** : I see ❹ ..... you mean. Perhaps they can help for a day or two in their holidays.
**Rawia** : Good ❺ .....

## C Reading Comprehension

**3 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

George and his father are at the pet store. They want to get a pet for George's birthday. First, George sees dogs and cats. Baby dogs are called puppies. Baby cats are called kittens. George likes them because they are easy to take care of and can play a lot but they will get bigger. George wants a small pet. George sees a parrot.

He likes it, but he doesn't want to clean the cage. George sees animals in tanks. The tanks full of water have fish and turtles in them. George decides he wants to get a turtle for his birthday. He buys a book on how to take care of a turtle and a list of what types of turtles the store has.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why does George go to the pet store?

.....

2. What are baby cats called?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

3- Fish and turtles are put in a .....

a cage  b tank  c hut  d tent

4- The underlined word **"it"** refers to the .....

a parrot  b turtle  c fish  d cat

5- To know how to take care of a turtle, George .....

a asks the seller  b buys a book

c watched a video  d went online

## D Vocabulary and Structure

**4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We like to eat by the light of the .....

a mirror  b lamp  c lamb  d carpet

2. You shouldn't leave your little sister ..... in the house.

a alive  b alone  c awake  d abroad

3. I'm ..... to fly in an airplane.

a scared  b dear  c scary  d heavy

4. Drinking milk is good ..... our teeth and bones.

a to  b from  c in  d for

5. I can fly a kite ..... I can't ride a bike.

a because  b so  c but  d not

6. You ..... pass your exams to go to university.

a should  b don't have to  c have to  d shouldn't

7. Hossam didn't ..... to study well when he was young.

a use  b uses  c using  d is used

8. Nouran never draws but these days she _____ a lot.

a draws b drawing c is drawing d draw

9. Mayar is more careful _____ Sara.

a than b as c the d most

10. Ali is the manager _____ we all like.

a where b when c what d who

## 5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- Habiba always **help** her mum clean the kitchen. (_____)

2- While I was walking home, I **meet** Huda. (_____)

3- This theatre **is used to** show wonderful plays in the past. (_____)

4- This jacket is **make** in China. (_____)

## E Writing

## 6 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"What we can do to protect the environment"

# Test 19 الأزهر الشريف

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Mona:** Do you like ①.....?

**Heba :** Yes, I do.

**Mona:** Where do you have your science ②.....?

**Heba :** We have our science lessons in the ③.....?

**Mona:** Where is it?

**Heba :** It's ④..... to the library.

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

**1- Amr** :.....?

**Tamer** : Matrouh is located in the north-west of Egypt.

**2- Mustafa :** What sports do you like?

**Hamza** :.....

**3 Read and match:**

| A | B |
|---|---|
| ① Flood | ⓐ is a building where you can pray. |
| ② Mosque | ⓑ is a plant used for making clothes. |
| ③ What time | ⓒ is animals and plants that live in natural conditions. |
| ④ Cotton | ⓓ is large amount of water that covers an area that was dry before. |
| ⑤ Wildlife | ⓔ do you go to bed at the weekend? |
| | ⓕ something you buy to remember a holiday. |

**Answer** 1..... 2..... 3..... 4..... 5.....

**4 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

Everyone should visit the historical places in Egypt. That helps us to know more about our beautiful country. I visited the Citadel in Cairo. It's an important monument. It has very tall towers. I saw them from a long way away. Salah al-Din built it to protect Cairo. It took eight years to complete. I visited many museums and mosques there. I hope to visit it again one day.

## A. Answer the following questions:

1. What should everyone visit?

.....

2. Where is the Citadel?

.....

3. Why did Salah al-Din build the Citadel?

.....

.....

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You ..... do your homework at the same time every day.

a has to  b aren't  c have to  d don't have to

2. We should do more efforts to stop air and water .....

a pollution  b project  c experience  d race

3. I was doing my homework when my friend .....

a was calling  b calls  c called  d call

4. Thank you ..... coming to the party.

a on  b for  c at  d in

5. That is the house ..... my grandfather was born.

a who  b which  c where  d when

## 6 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- We sleep in the **bathroom**. (.....)

2- I didn't **liked** swimming when I was young. (.....)

3- I'm looking **before** my brother when is mum away. (.....)

4- Ahmed is cleverer **then** Sameh. (.....)

5- This museum is **visiting** by tourists every day. (.....)

## 7 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"a charity which helps poor people"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Test 20 الأزهر الشريف

**1 Complete the following dialogue:**

**Mustafa** : What's your name?

**Tourist** : ① .....

**Mustafa** : ② ..... name's Lino.

**Tourist** : I'm from Italy. ..... are you from?

**Mustafa** : How ③ ..... brothers and sisters do you have?

**Tourist** : I ④ ..... two brothers and one sister.

**2 Supply the missing parts in the following two mini-dialogues:**

**1- Taher** : .....?

**Ramy** : You can take a taxi to go to the bank.

**2- Sameh** : What's your favourite subject?

**Muhammad** : .....

**3 Read and match:**

| A | B |
|---|---|
| ① What | a a bedroom with my brother. |
| ② Souvenir | b is looking after patients at a hospital. |
| ③ The doctor | c used to live in the countryside. |
| ④ You should | d is something you buy to remember a holiday. |
| ⑤ My grandfather | e be kind to strangers. |
| | f do you do in your free time? |

**Answer** 1. ..... 2. ..... 3. ..... 4. ..... 5. .....

**4 Read the following, then answer the questions:**

I work far from my home, almost 50 kilometres away. I have to wake up early every morning. There's never enough time for a breakfast. At exactly 6:00 a.m., I get into my car and start the long drive. The drive to work takes about one hour. Going back home in the evening after work takes even longer, maybe around 70 minutes. I think about trying to take the train to work instead of driving. That way, I could still listen to my music with headphones, and even read a novel at the same time.

## A. Answer the following questions:

1. When does the writer wake up every morning?

2. What does the writer think he/she could do if he/she took a train to work?

3. Do you prefer to go to your work in your car or by train? Why?

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like my job, _____ I'm feeling tired tonight.
   a) but  b) because  c) so  d) for
2. I visited the Karnak Temple and saw the _____ monuments.
   a) modern  b) new  c) ancient  d) cheap
3. In a museum, you _____ touch the objects.
   a) mustn't  b) must  c) are  d) have
4. A _____ is a large area of land with few plants and little water.
   a) dessert  b) desert  c) river  d) valley
5. You _____ spend too much time on social media.
   a) should  b) has to  c) have to  d) shouldn't

## 6 Read and correct the underlined words:

1- What **are** your father doing? (_____)
2- I **does** my homework every day. (_____)
3- Mr Muhammad speaks English **good**. (_____)
4- While I was **studied**, the phone rang. (_____)
5- Please, give me back the pen **who** I lent you. (_____)

## 7 Write two paragraphs of FIFTY words each (100 words in total) on:

"Your favourite place in Egypt"

# Listening material

## Unit 1

My grandmother and grandfather live in Alex. They live next to the beach. They have a beautiful house. We go and visit them; but it's a long way. It takes twelve hours.

## Unit 2

I am a nurse. I look after patients at a hospital. I look after children in children's ward. I am feeling tired tonight. I'm looking forward to going home and having a rest.

## Unit 3

When my parents were younger, they lived in Luxor. Then they moved to Port Said in 1990. My father got a job in Cairo 15 years ago. They lived in a small flat from 2005 to 2006. They moved to a bigger flat a year later when I was born.

## Review A

I used to work as an engineer. Then I saw a job advertisement for engineers to work in a big factory for a year and I thought it looked interesting.

## Unit 4

Cleopatra's Needle is a large and important stone. It has beautiful designs on it. You can see it next to the River Thames in London.

## Unit 5

One day, Eman found some money. She went to the baker's to buy some cakes. When she came out, she saw a beggar and gave the begger most of her cakes.

## Unit 6

Tanta is located in the north of Egypt. Lots of cotton is grown in the area. The city is known for its delicious sweets. Tanta's beautiful Al-Ahmadi mosque is visited by thousands of people every year.

## Review B

Last week, I went to Luxor Museum with my class. We arrived at 10.30 a.m. As we were walking into the museum, we saw some big statues. The museum has some very old objects. The oldest objects in the museum were the tools.

## End of term practice

My name's Aya. My father goes out for work every morning. He's a street-food seller. I must stay at home to look after my brothers and sisters. I have to go to the shops in the evenings to do the shopping. When I get home I feel tired but grateful.

## Test 1

When my parents were younger, they lived in Luxor. Then they moved to Port Said in 1990. My father got a job in Cairo 15 years ago. They lived in a small flat from 2005 to 2006. They moved to a bigger flat a year later when I was born.

## Test 2

We're going on a boat trip today. It's going to be hot, so you have to wear sunglasses and a hat. Boats are fun but they can be dangerous. You should be careful.

## Test 3

I'm looking after patients at a hospital. It's very busy. I'm looking after children in children's ward. I like my job but I'm feeling tired tonight. I'm looking forward to going home and having a rest.

## Test 4

In Ancient Egypt, many people used mirrors to help them paint around their eyes. This was not just to make them look good: the paint helped to protect their eyes from the sun and kept away insects.

## Test 5

I live with my family in Cairo. My family and I always go on trips around Egypt. We like going to Al Azhar Park. We always have fun there.

## Test 6

Port Said is located in the north -east of Egypt. The city is known for its ships, which come and go from around the world. Port Said is connected to Suez by the Suez Canal. Many fish are caught in the sea near Port Said.

## Test 7

I usually get up at 6.30 and help mum make breakfast. My brothers help, too. My dad starts work very early. That is why he does not have breakfast with us. He eats when he gets to work.

## Test 8

The British made a special ship for the Cleopatra's Needle in 1877. While the ship was travelling to London, it nearly sank in a storm. Another ship helped the stone to arrive in England a year later.

## Test 9

The girl who came into my baker's shop today was a servant, because she didn't have very new clothes. The money that she had was enough to buy a few cakes.

## Test 10

My home city is Minya. It is located near the Nile. Lots of food is grown in the local area, like potatoes, wheat and sugar. The city is known for its delicious 'black honey'. Many ancient monuments and buildings are found in the city.

## Test 11

I visited Athens with my family last year. There was so much to see: Roman theatres, temples and museums! I'm not usually very interested in history, but these places are awesome!

## Test 12

I'm Marwa. I always get up at 6.30 in the morning. My mum always makes my breakfast. I go to school by bus. My parents work at the hospital. They get home late, so I often help to make dinner.

## Test 13

We should all be proud of Magdy Yacoub. He was born in 1935, in Bilbeis. His father was an important doctor. Magdy also became a doctor. Before he stopped working in 2001, Magdy Yacoub started a charity for ill children in Aswan. Many ill children can now live healthy lives.

## Test 14

Last weekend, eight students from Class 7 helped clean up the part of the riverbank near the city centre. The students collected 15 bags of rubbish. Their teacher, Mr Hassan, said the students were sad to find so much rubbish.

## Test 15

I work as a volunteer for a charity. At the weekend, I go to the beach and pick up the rubbish that people left behind. I always pick up lots of plastic bottles.

## Test 16

Tanta is located in the north of Egypt. Lots of cotton is grown in the area. The city is known for its delicious sweets. Tanta's has a beautiful mosque called AI-Ahmadi.

## Test 17

My mother is an important nurse. She studied to be a nurse at Ain Shams University. She got a job at a big hospital in Cairo. She became one of the most important nurses in Cairo. She is also a manager and she helps to teach younger nurses.

## Test 18

Two people play chess. Each person has got white or black pieces. It is not an easy game. Some people play it for six hours or more.